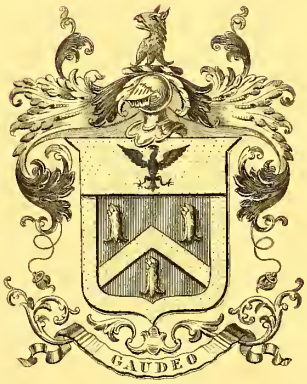

John Carter Brown
Library
Brown University

Lawson's Hist. of Carolina

Sam Heath Catalogue, III. 927.
This copy does not have the
separate 30-page, not 31
page, The Siouan Dictionary
which there described as intended
for the Stevens collection of
voyages.
Sabin no. 39451

Col. of Travel.

A NEW VOYAGE TO CAROLINA;

CONTAINING THE

Exact Description and *Natural History*

OF THAT

COUNTRY:

Together with the *Present State* thereof.

AND

A JOURNAL

Of a Thousand Miles, Travel'd thro' several Nations of *INDIANS*.

Giving a particular Account of their Customs, Manners, &c.

By JOHN LAWSON, Gent. Surveyor-General of *North-Carolina*.

LONDON:
Printed in the Year 1709.

A NEW

VOYAGE

TO

CAROLINA:

CONTAINING THE

Exact Description and Natural History

OF THAT

COUNTRY:

Together with the Present State thereof.

AND

A JOURNAL

Of a Thousand Miles, Travel'd thro' several Nations of INDIANS.

Giving a particular Account of their Customs, Manners, &c.

By John Lawson, Gent. Surveyor-General of North-Carolina.

LONDON:

Printed for the Author, 1709.

To His Excellency

WILLIAM Lord CRAVEN, Palatine;

The moſt Noble, HENRY Duke of BEAUFORT;

The Right Honble JOHN Lord CARTERET;

The Honble MAURICE ASHLEY, Eſq;

Sir JOHN COLLETON, Baronet,

JOHN DANSON, Eſq;

And the reſt of the True and Abſolute

LORDS-PROPRIETORS

OF THE

Province of *Carolina* in *America.*

MY LORDS,

AS Debts of Gratitude ought moſt punctually to be paid, ſo, where the Debtor is uncapable of Payment, Acknowledgments ought, at leaſt, to be made. I cannot, in the leaſt, pretend to retaliate *Your Lordſhips* Favours to me, but muſt farther intrude on that Goodneſs of which I have already had ſo good Experience, by laying theſe Sheets at *Your Lordſhips* Feet, where they beg Protection, as having nothing to recommend them, but Truth; a Gift which every Author may be Maſter of, if he will.

DEDICATION.

I here preſent *Your Lordſhips* with a Deſcription of your own Country, for the moſt part, in her Natural Dreſs, and therefore leſs vitiated with Fraud and Luxury. A Country, whoſe Inhabitants may enjoy a Life of the greateſt Eaſe and Satisfaction, and paſs away their Hours in ſolid Contentment.

Thoſe Charms of *Liberty* and *Right*, the Darlings of an *Engliſh* Nature, which *Your Lordſhips* grant and maintain, make you appear Noble Patrons in the Eyes of all Men, and we a happy People in a Foreign Country; which nothing leſs than Ingratitude and Baſeneſs can make us diſown.

As Heaven has been liberal in its Gifts, ſo are *Your Lordſhips* favourable Promoters of whatever may make us an eaſy People; which, I hope, *Your Lordſhips* will continue to us and our Poſterity; and that we and they may always acknowledge ſuch Favours, by baniſhing from among us every Principle which renders Men factious and unjuſt, which is the hearty Prayer of,

MY LORDS,

Your Lordſhips moſt obliged,

moſt humble,

and moſt devoted Servant,

JOHN LAWSON.

PREFACE.

'TIS *a great Misfortune, that moſt of our Travellers, who go to this vaſt Continent in* America, *are Perſons of the meaner Sort, and generally of a very ſlender Education; who being hir'd by the Merchants, to trade amongſt the* Indians, *in which Voyages they often ſpend ſeveral Years, are yet, at their Return, uncapable of giving any reaſonable Account of what they met withal in thoſe remote Parts; tho' the Country abounds with Curioſities worthy a nice Obſervation. In this Point, I think, the* French *outſtrip us.*

First, *By their Numerous Clergy, their Miſſionaries being obedient to their Superiors in the higheſt Degree, and that Obedience being one great Article of their Vow, and ſtrictly obſerv'd amongſt all their Orders.*

Secondly, *They always ſend abroad ſome of their Gentlemen in Company of the Miſſionaries, who, upon their Arrival, are order'd out into the Wilderneſs, to make Diſcoveries, and to acquaint themſelves with the Savages of* America; *and are oblig'd to keep a ſtrict Journal of all the Paſſages they meet withal, in order to preſent the ſame not only to their Governors and Fathers, but likewiſe to their Friends and Relations in* France; *which is induſtriouſly ſpread about that Kingdom, to their Advantage. For their Monarch being a very good Judge of Mens Deſerts, does not often let Money or Intereſt make Men of Parts give Place to others of leſs Worth. This breeds an Honourable Emulation amongſt them,*

them, to outdo one another, even in Fatigues, and Dangers; whereby they gain a good Correſpondence with the Indians, *and acquaint themſelves with their Speech and Cuſtoms; and ſo make conſiderable Diſcoveries in a ſhort time. Witneſs, their Journals from* Canada, *to the* Miſſiſipi, *and its ſeveral Branches, where they have effected great Matters, in a few Years.*

Having ſpent moſt of my Time, during my eight Years Abode in Carolina, *in travelling; I not only ſurvey'd the Sea-Coaſt and thoſe Parts which are already inhabited by the Chriſtians, but likewiſe view'd a ſpatious Tract of Land, lying betwixt the Inhabitants and the Ledges of Mountains, from whence our nobleſt Rivers have their Riſe, running towards the Ocean, where they water as pleaſant a Country as any in* Europe; *the Diſcovery of which being never yet made publick, I have, in the following Sheets, given you a faithful Account thereof, wherein I have laid down every thing with Impartiality, and Truth, which is indeed, the Duty of every* Author, *and preferable to a ſmooth Stile, accompany'd with Falſities and Hyperboles.*

Great Part of this pleaſant and healthful Country is inhabited by none but Savages, who covet a Chriſtian Neighbourhood, for the Advantage of Trade, and enjoy all the Comforts of Life, free from Care and Want.

But not to amuſe my Readers any longer with the Encomium of Carolina, *I refer 'em to my* Journal, *and other more particular Deſcription of that Country and its Inhabitants, which they will find after the* Natural Hiſtory *thereof, in which I have been very exact, and for Method's ſake, rang'd each Species under its diſtinct and proper Head.*

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION.

IN the Year 1700, when People flock'd from all Parts of the Chriſtian World, to ſee the Solemnity of the Grand Jubilee at *Rome*, my Intention, at that Time, being to travel, I accidentally met with a Gentleman, who had been Abroad, and was very well acquainted with the Ways of Living in both *Indies*; of whom, having made Enquiry concerning them, he aſſur'd me, that *Carolina* was the beſt Country I could go to; and, that there then lay a Ship in the *Thames*, in which I might have my Paſſage. I laid hold on this Opportunity, and was not long on Board, before we fell down the River, and ſail'd to *Cowes*; where, having taken in ſome Paſſengers, we proceeded on our Voyage, 'till we ſprung a-leak, and were forc'd into the Iſlands of *Scilly*. Here we ſpent about 10 Days in refitting; in which Time we had a great deal of Diverſion in Fiſhing and Shooting on thoſe rocky Iſlands. The Inhabitants were very courteous and civil, eſpecially the Governor, to whoſe good Company and Favour, we were very much oblig'd. There is a Town on one of theſe Iſlands, where is good Entertainment for thoſe that happen to come in, though the Land is but mean, and Fleſh-meat not Plenty. They have good Store of Rabbits, Quails, and Fiſh; and you ſee at the poor Peoples Doors great Heaps of Perriwinkle-ſhells, thoſe Fiſh being a great Part of their Food. On the 1ſt Day of *May*, having a fair Wind at *Eaſt*, we put to Sea, and were on the Ocean (without ſpeaking to any Veſſel, except a Ketch bound from *New England* to *Barbadoes*, laden with Horſes, Fiſh, and Proviſions) 'till the latter End of *July*, when the Winds hung ſo much *Southerly*, that we could not get to our Port, but put into *Sandybook-bay*, and went up to *New York*, after a pinching Voyage, caus'd by our long Paſſage. We found at the Wa-

tering-Place, a *French* Man of War, who had on Board Men and Neceſſaries to make a Colony, and was intended for the *Meſſiaſippi* River, there to ſettle. The Country of *New-York* is very pleaſant in Summer, but in the Winter very cold, as all the *Northern* Plantations are. Their chief Commodities are Proviſions, Bread, Beer, Lumber, and Fiſh in abundance; all which are very good, and ſome Skins and Furrs are hence exported. The City is govern'd by a Mayor, (as in *England*) is ſeated on an Iſland, and lies very convenient for Trade and Defence, having a regular Fort, and well mounted with Guns. The Buildings are generally of a ſmaller Sort of *Flemiſh* Brick, and of the *Dutch* Faſhion, (excepting ſome few Houſes:) They are all very firm and good Work, and conveniently plac'd, as is likewiſe the Town, which gives a very pleaſant Proſpect of the neighbouring Iſlands and Rivers. A good Part of the Inhabitants are *Dutch*, in whoſe Hands this Colony once was. After a Fortnight's Stay here, we put out from *Sandyhook*, and in 14 Days after, arriv'd at *Charles-Town*, the Metropolis of *South Carolina*, which is ſcituate in 32, 45 *North* Latitude, and admits of large Ships to come over their Bar up to the Town, where is a very commodious Harbour, about 5 Miles diſtant from the Inlet, and ſtands on a Point very convenient for Trade, being ſeated between two pleaſant and navigable Rivers. The Town has very regular and fair Streets, in which are good Buildings of Brick and Wood, and ſince my coming thence, has had great Additions of beautiful, large Brick-buildings, beſides a ſtrong Fort, and regular Fortifications made to defend the Town. The Inhabitants, by their wiſe Management and Induſtry, have much improv'd the Country, which is in as thriving Circumſtances at this Time, as any Colony on the Continent of *Engliſh America*, and is of more Advantage to the Crown of *Great Britain*, than any of the other more *Northerly* Plantations, (*Virginia* and *Maryland* excepted.) This Colony was at firſt planted by a genteel Sort of People, that were well acquainted with Trade, and had either Money or Parts, to make good Uſe of the Advantages that offer'd, as moſt of them have done, by raiſing themſelves to great Eſtates, and conſiderable Places of Truſt, and Poſts of Honour,

Honour, in this thriving Settlement. Since the first Planters, abundance of *French* and others have gone over, and rais'd themselves to considerable Fortunes. They are very neat and exact in Packing and Shipping of their Commodities; which Method has got them so great a Character Abroad, that they generally come to a good Market with their Commodities; when oftentimes the Product of other Plantations, are forc'd to be sold at lower Prizes. They have a considerable Trade both to *Europe*, and the *West Indies*, whereby they become rich, and are supply'd with all Things necessary for Trade, and genteel Living, which several other Places fall short of. Their co-habiting in a Town, has drawn to them ingenious People of most Sciences, whereby they have Tutors amongst them that educate their Youth a-la-mode.

Their Roads, with great Industry, are made very good and pleasant. Near the Town is built a fair Parsonage-house, with necessary Offices, and the Minister has a very considerable Allowance from his Parish. There is likewise a *French* Church in Town, of the Reform'd Religion, and several Meeting-houses for dissenting Congregations, who all enjoy at this Day an entire Liberty of their Worship; the Constitution of this Government, allowing all Parties of well-meaning Christians to enjoy a free Toleration, and possess the same Priviledges, so long as they appear to behave themselves peaceably and well: It being the Lords Proprietors Intent, that the Inhabitants of *Carolina* should be as free from Oppression, as any in the Universe; which doubtless they will, if their own Differences amongst themselves do not occasion the contrary.

They have a well-disciplin'd *Militia*; their Horse are most Gentlemen, and well mounted, and the best in *America*, and may equalize any in other Parts: Their Officers, both Infantry and Cavalry, generally appear in scarlet Mountings, and as rich as in most Regiments belonging to the Crown, which shews the Richness and Grandeur of this Colony. They are a Fronteer, and prove such troublesome Neighbours to the *Spaniards*, that they have once laid their Town of St. *Augustine* in Ashes, and drove away their Cattle; besides

many Encounters and Engagements, in which they have defeated them, too tedious to relate here. What the *French* got by their Attempt againſt *South Carolina*, will hardly ever be rank'd amongſt their Victories; their Admiral *Mouville* being glad to leave the Enterprize, and run away, after he had ſuffer'd all the Loſs and Diſgrace he was capable of receiving. They are abſolute Maſters over the *Indians*, and carry ſo ſtrict a Hand over ſuch as are within the Circle of their Trade, that none does the leaſt Injury to any of the *Engliſh*, but he is preſently ſent for, and puniſh'd with Death, or otherwiſe, according to the Nature of the Fault. They have an entire Friendſhip with the neighbouring *Indians* of ſeveral Nations, which are a very warlike People, ever faithful to the *Engliſh*, and have prov'd themſelves brave and true on all Occaſions; and are a great Help and Strength to this Colony. The Chief of the ſavage Nations have heretofore groan'd under the *Spaniſh* Yoke, and having experienc'd their Cruelty, are become ſuch mortal Enemies to that People, that they never give a *Spaniard* Quarter; but generally, when they take any Priſoners, (if the *Engliſh* be not near to prevent it) ſculp them, that is, to take their Hair and Skin of their Heads, which they often flea away, whilſt the Wretch is alive. Notwithſtanding the *Engliſh* have us'd all their Endeavours, yet they could never bring them to leave this Barbarity to the *Spaniards*; who, as they alledge, uſe to murder them and their Relations, and make Slaves of them to build their Forts and Towns.

This Place is more plentiful in Money, than moſt, or indeed any of the Plantations on the Continent; beſides, they build a conſiderable Number of Veſſels of Cedar, and other Wood, with which they trade to *Curaſſau*, and the *Weſt Indies*; from one they bring Money, and from the other the Produce of their Iſlands, which yields a neceſſary Supply of both to the Colony. Their Stocks of Cattle are incredible, being from one to two thouſand Head in one Man's Poſſeſſion: Theſe feed in the *Savannas*, and other Grounds, and need no Fodder in the Winter. Their Mutton and Veal is good, and their Pork is not inferior to any in *America*. As for Pitch and Tar, none of the Plantations are comparable for affording

the

the vaſt Quantities of Naval Stores, as this Place does. There have been heretofore ſome Diſcoveries of rich Mines in the mountanous Part of this Country; but being remote from the preſent Settlement, and the Inhabitants not well vers'd in ordering Minerals, they have been laid aſide 'till a more fit Opportunity happens. There are ſeveral noble Rivers, and ſpacious Tracts of rich Land in their Lordſhips Dominions, lying to the *Southward*, which are yet uninhabited, beſides *Port Royal*, a rare Harbour and Inlet, having many Inhabitants thereon, which their Lordſhips have now made a Port for Trade. This will be a moſt advantageous Settlement, lying ſo commodiouſly for Ships coming from the Gulph, and the Richneſs of the Land, which is reported to be there. Theſe more *Southerly* Parts will afford Oranges, Limons, Limes, and many other Fruits, which the *Northerly* Plantations yield not.

The Merchants of *Carolina*, are fair, frank Traders. The Gentlemen ſeated in the Country, are very courteous, live very nobly in their Houſes, and give very genteel Entertainment to all Strangers and others, that come to viſit them. And ſince the Produce of *South* and *North Carolina* is the ſame, unleſs Silk, which this Place produces great Quantities of, and very good, *North Carolina* having never made any Tryal thereof as yet, therefore I ſhall refer the natural Produce of this Country, to that Part which treats of *North Carolina*, whoſe Productions are much the ſame. The Chriſtian Inhabitants of both Colonies pretty equal, but the Slaves of *South Carolina* are far more in Number than thoſe in the *North*. I ſhall now proceed to relate my Journey thro' the Country, from this Settlement to the other, and then treat of the natural Hiſtory of *Carolina*, with other remarkable Circumſtances which I have met with, during my eight Years Abode in that Country.

A JOURNAL OF *A thouſand Miles Travel among the* Indians, *from* South *to* North Carolina.

Saturday. ON *December* the 28th, 1700, I began my Voyage (for *North Carolina*) from *Charles*-Town, being ſix *Engliſh*-men in Company, with three *Indian*-men, and one Woman, Wife to our *Indian*-Guide, having five Miles from the Town to the Breach we went down in a large Canoe, that we had provided for our Voyage thither, having the Tide of Ebb along with us; which was ſo far ſpent by that Time we got down, that we had not Water enough for our Craft to go over, although we drew but two Foot, or thereabouts. This Breach is a Paſſage through a Marſh lying to the *Northward* of *Sullivans* Iſland, the Pilot's having a Look out thereon, lying very commodious for Mariners (on that Coaſt) making a good Land-Mark in ſo level a Country, this Bar being difficult to hit, where an Obſervation hath been wanting for a Day or two; *North Eaſt* Winds bringing great Fogs, Miſts, and Rains; which, towards the cool Months of *October*, *November*, and until the latter End of *March*, often appear in theſe Parts. There are three Pilots to attend, and conduct Ships over the Bar. The Harbour where the Veſſels generally ride, is againſt the Town on *Cooper*'s River, lying within a Point which parts that and *Aſhley*-River, they being Land-lock'd almoſt on all Sides.

At

At 4 in the Afternoon, (at half Flood) we pass'd with our Canoe over the Breach, leaving *Sullivans* Island on our Starboard. The first Place we design'd for, was *Santee* River, on which there is a Colony of *French* Protestants, allow'd and encourag'd by the Lords Proprietors. At Night we got to *Bell*'s-Island, a poor Spot of Land, being about ten Miles round, where liv'd (at that Time) a *Bermudian*, being employ'd here with a Boy, to look after a Stock of Cattle and Hogs, by the Owner of this Island. One Side of the Roof of his House was thatch'd with Palmeto-leaves, the other open to the Heavens, thousands of Musketoes, and other troublesome Insects, tormenting both Man and Beast inhabiting these Islands. The Palmeto-trees, whose Leaves growing only on the Top of the Tree, in the Shape of a Fan, and in a Cluster, like a Cabbage; this Tree in *Carolina*, when at its utmost Growth, is about forty or fifty Foot in Height, and two Foot through: It's worth mentioning, that the Growth of the Tree is not perceiveable in the Age of any Man, the Experiment having been often try'd in *Bermudas*, and elsewhere, which shews the slow Growth of this Vegitable, the Wood of it being porous and stringy, like some Canes; the Leaves thereof the *Bermudians* make Womens Hats, Bokeets, Baskets, and pretty Dressing-boxes, a great deal being transported to *Pensilvania*, and other *Northern* Parts of *America*, (where they do not grow) for the same Manufacture. The People of *Carolina* make of the Fans of this Tree, Brooms very serviceable, to sweep their Houses withal. Palmeto-trees.

We took up our Lodging this Night with the *Bermudian*; our Entertainment was very indifferent, there being no fresh Water to be had on the Island.

The next Morning we set away thro' the Marshes; about Noon we reach'd another Island, call'd *Dix*'s Island, much like to the former, tho' larger; there liv'd an honest *Scot*, who gave us the best Reception his Dwelling afforded, being well provided of Oat-meal, and several other Effects he had found on that Coast; which Goods belong'd to that unfortunate Vessel, the *Rising Sun*, a *Scotch* Man of War, lately arriv'd from the *Isthmus* of *Darien*, and cast away near the Bar of *Ashley* River, the *September* before, Capt. *Gibson* of *Glasco* then commanding her,

who

who, with above an hundred Men then on Board her, were every Soul drown'd in that terrible Guſt which then happen'd; moſt of the Corps being taken up, were carefully interr'd by Mr. *Graham*, their Lieutenant, who happily was on Shore during the Tempeſt.

Septem. 5. 1700.

After Dinner, we left our *Scotch* Landlord, and went that Night to the *North Eaſt* Point of the Iſland: It being dark ere we got there, our Canoe ſtruck on a Sand near the Breakers, and were in great Danger of our Lives, but (by God's Bleſſing) got off ſafe to the Shore, where we lay all Night.

Monday. In the Morning we ſet forwards on our intended Voyage. About two a Clock we got to *Bulls* Iſland, which is about thirty Miles long, and hath a great Number of both Cattel and Hogs upon it; the Cattel being very wild, and the Hogs very lean. Theſe two laſt Iſlands belong to one Colonel *Cary*, an Inhabitant of *South Carolina*. Although it were Winter, yet we found ſuch Swarms of Muſketoes, and other troubleſome Inſects, that we got but little Reſt that Night.

Tueſday. The next Day we intended for a ſmall Iſland on the other Side of *Sewee*-Bay, which joining to theſe Iſlands, Shipping might come to victual or careen; but there being ſuch a Burden of thoſe Flies, that few or none cares to ſettle there; ſo the Stock thereon are run wild. We were gotten about half Way to *Racoon*-Iſland, when there ſprung up a tart Gale at *N. W.* which put us in ſome Danger of being caſt away, the Bay being rough, and there running great Seas between the two Iſlands, which are better than four Leagues aſunder, a ſtrong Current of a Tide ſetting in and out, which made us turn Tail to it, and got our Canoe right before the Wind, and came ſafe into a Creek that is joining to the *North* End of *Bulls* Iſland. We ſent our *Indians* to hunt, who brought us two Deers, which were very poor, and their Maws full of large Grubs.

Wedneſday On the Morrow we went and viſited the *Eaſtermoſt* Side of this Iſland, it joining to the Ocean, having very fair ſandy Beeches, pav'd with innumerable Sorts of curious pretty Shells, very pleaſant to the Eye. Amongſt the reſt, we found the *Spaniſh* Oyſter-Shell, whence come the Pearls. They are very large, and of a different Form from other Oyſters; their

Colour

Colour much reſembles the Tortoiſe-Shell, when it is dreſs'd. There was left by the Tide ſeveral ſtrange Species of a muciligmous ſlimy Subſtance, though living, and very aptly mov'd at their firſt Appearance; yet, being left on the dry Sand, (by the Beams of the Sun) ſoon exhale and vaniſh.

At our Return to our Quarters, the *Indians* had kill'd two more Deer, two wild Hogs, and three Racoons, all very lean, except the Racoons. We had great Store of Oyſters, Conks, and Clanns, a large Sort of Cockles. Theſe Parts being very well furniſh'd with Shell-Fiſh, Turtle of ſeveral Sorts, but few or none of the green, with other Sorts of Salt-water Fiſh, and in the Seaſon, good Plenty of Fowl, as Curleus, Gulls, Gannets, and Pellicans, beſides Duck and Mallard, Geeſe, Swans, Teal, Widgeon, *&c.*

On *Thurſday* Morning we left *Bulls* Iſland, and went thro' the Creeks, which lie between the Bay and the main Land. At Noon we went on Shore, and got our Dinner near a Plantation, on a Creek having the full Proſpect of *Sewee*-Bay: We ſent up to the Houſe, but found none at Home, but a Negro, of whom our Meſſenger purchas'd ſome ſmall Quantity of Tobacco and Rice. We came to a deſerted *Indian* Reſidence, call'd *Avendaugh-bough*, where we reſted that Night. *Thurſday.*

The next Day we enter'd *Santee*-River's Mouth, where is freſh Water, occaſion'd by the extraordinary Current that comes down continually. With hard Rowing, we got two Leagues up the River, lying all Night in a ſwampy Piece of Ground, the Weather being ſo cold all that Time, we were almoſt frozen ere Morning, leaving the Impreſſions of our Bodies on the wet Ground. We ſet forward very early in the Morning, to ſeek ſome better Quarters. *Friday.*

As we row'd up the River, we found the Land towards the Mouth, and for about ſixteen Miles up it, ſcarce any Thing but Swamp and Percoarſon, affording vaſt Ciprus-Trees, of which the *French* make Canoes, that will carry fifty or ſixty Barrels. After the Tree is moulded and dug, they ſaw them in two Pieces, and ſo put a Plank between, and a ſmall Keel, to preſerve them from the Oyſter-Banks, which are innumerable in the Creeks and Bays betwixt the *French* Settlement and *Charles*-Town. They carry two Maſts, and Bermudas Sails, *Saturday.*

Percoarſon, a Sort of low Land.

Sails, which makes them very handy and fit for their Purpose; for although their River fetches its first Rise from the Mountains, and continues a Current some hundreds of Miles ere it disgorges it self, having no sound Bay or Sand-Banks betwixt the Mouth thereof, and the Ocean. Notwithstanding all this, with the vast Stream it affords at all Seasons, and the repeated Freshes it so often allarms the Inhabitants with, by laying under Water great Part of their Country, yet the Mouth is barr'd, affording not above four or five Foot Water at the Entrance. As we went up the River, we heard a great Noise, as if two Parties were engag'd against each other, seeming exactly like small Shot. When we approach'd nearer the Place, we found it to be some *Sewee Indians* firing the Canes Swamps, which drives out the Game, then taking their particular Stands, kill great Quantities of both Bear, Deer, Turkies, and what wild Creatures the Parts afford.

Sewee Indians.

These *Sewees* have been formerly a large Nation, though now very much decreas'd, since the *English* hath seated their Land, and all other Nations of *Indians* are observ'd to partake of the same Fate, where the *Europeans* come, the *Indians* being a People very apt to catch any Distemper they are afflicted withal; the Small-Pox has destroy'd many thousands of these Natives, who no sooner than they are attack'd with the violent Fevers, and the Burning which attends that Distemper, fling themselves over Head in the Water, in the very Extremity of the Disease; which shutting up the Pores, hinders a kindly Evacuation of the pestilential Matter, and drives it back; by which Means Death most commonly ensues; not but in other Distempers which are epidemical, you may find among 'em Practitioners that have extraordinary Skill and Success in removing those morbifick Qualities which afflict 'em, not often going above 100 Yards from their Abode for their Remedies, some of their chiefest Physicians commonly carrying their Compliment of Drugs continually about them, which are Roots, Barks, Berries, Nuts, *&c.* that are strung upon a Thread. So like a *Pomander*, the Physician wears them about his Neck. An *Indian* hath been often found to heal an *English*-man of a Malady, for the Value of a Match-Coat; which the ablest of our *English* Pretenders in *America*, after repeated

repeated Applications, have deſerted the Patient as incurable; God having furniſh'd every Country with ſpecifick Remedies for their peculiar Diſeaſes.

Rum, a Liquor now ſo much in Uſe with them, that they will part with the deareſt Thing they have, to purchaſe it; and when they have got a little in their Heads, are the impatients Creatures living, 'till they have enough to make 'em quite drunk; and the moſt miſerable Spectacles when they are ſo, ſome falling into the Fires, burn their Legs or Arms, contracting the Sinews, and become Cripples all ther Life-time; others from Precipices break their Bones and Joints, with abundance of Inſtances, yet none are ſo great to deter them from that accurs'd Practice of Drunkenneſs, though ſenſible how many of them (are by it) hurry'd into the other World before their Time, as themſelves oftentimes will confeſs. The *Indians*, I was now ſpeaking of, were not content with the common Enemies that leſſen and deſtroy their Country-men, but invented an infallible Stratagem to purge their Tribe, and reduce their Multitude into far leſs Numbers. Their Contrivance was thus, as a Trader amongſt them inform'd me. *Rum.*

They ſeeing ſeveral Ships coming in, to bring the *Engliſh* Supplies from *Old England*, one chief Part of their Cargo being for a Trade with the *Indians*, ſome of the craftieſt of them had obſerv'd, that the Ships came always in at one Place, which made them very confident that Way was the exact Road to *England*; and ſeeing ſo many Ships come thence, they believ'd it could not be far thither, eſteeming the *Engliſh* that were among them, no better than Cheats, and thought, if they could carry the Skins and Furs they got, themſelves to *England*, which were inhabited with a better Sort of People than thoſe ſent amongſt them, that then they ſhould purchaſe twenty times the Value for every Pelt they ſold Abroad, in Conſideration of what Rates they ſold for at Home. The intended Barter was exceeding well approv'd of, and after a general Conſultation of the ableſt Heads amongſt them, it was, *Nemine Contradicente*, agreed upon, immediately to make an Addition of their Fleet, by building more Canoes, and thoſe to be of the beſt Sort, and biggeſt Size, as fit for their intended Diſcovery. Some *Indians* were employ'd about ma-

king the Canoes, others to hunting, every one to the Poſt he was moſt fit for, all Endeavours tending towards an able Fleet and Cargo for *Europe*. The Affair was carry'd on with a great deal of Secrecy and Expedition, ſo as in a ſmall Time they had gotten a Navy, Loading, Proviſions, and Hands ready to ſet Sail, leaving only the Old, Impotent, and Minors at Home, 'till their ſucceſsful Return. The Wind preſenting, they ſet up their Mat-Sails, and were ſcarce out of Sight, when there roſe a Tempeſt, which it's ſuppos'd carry'd one Part of theſe *Indian* Merchants, by Way of the other World, whilſt the others were taken up at Sea by an *Engliſh* Ship, and ſold for Slaves to the Iſlands. The Remainder are better ſatisfy'd with their Imbecilities in ſuch an Undertaking, nothing affronting them more, than to rehearſe their Voyage to *England*.

They never hearing more of their Fleet.

There being a ſtrong Current in *Santee*-River, caus'd us to make ſmall Way with our Oars. With hard Rowing, we got that Night to Monſ. *Eugee*'s Houſe, which ſtands about fifteen Miles up the River, being the firſt Chriſtian dwelling we met withal in that Settlement, and were very courteouſly receiv'd by him and his Wife.

Many of the *French* follow a Trade with the *Indians*, living very conveniently for that Intereſt. There is about ſeventy Families ſeated on this River, who live as decently and happily, as any Planters in theſe *Southward* Parts of *America*. The *French* being a temperate induſtrious People, ſome of them bringing very little of Effects, yet by their Endeavours and mutual Aſſiſtance amongſt themſelves, (which is highly to be commended) have out-ſtript our *Engliſh*, who brought with 'em larger Fortunes, though (as it ſeems) leſs endeavour to manage their Talent to the beſt Advantage. 'Tis admirable to ſee what Time and Induſtry will (with God's Bleſſing) effect. *Carolina* affording many ſtrange Revolutions in the Age of a Man, daily Inſtances preſenting themſelves to our View, of ſo many, from deſpicable Beginnings, which in a ſhort Time arrive to very ſplended Conditions. Here Propriety hath a large Scope, there being no ſtrict Laws to bind our Privileges. A Queſt after Game, being as freely and peremptorily enjoy'd by the meaneſt Planter, as he that is the higheſt in Dignity,

nity, or wealthieſt in the Province. Deer, and other Game that are naturally wild, being not immur'd, or preſerv'd within Boundaries, to ſatisfy the Apppetite of the Rich alone. A poor Labourer, that is Maſter of his Gun, *&c.* hath as good a Claim to have continu'd Coarſes of Delicacies crouded upon his Table, as he that is Maſter of a greater Purſe.

We lay all that Night at Monſ. *Fugee*'s, and the next Morning ſet out farther, to go the Remainder of our Voyage by Land: At ten a Clock we paſs'd over a narrow, deep Swamp, having left the three *Indian* Men and one Woman, that had pilotted the Canoe from *Aſhly*-River, having hir'd a *Sewee-Indian*, a tall, luſty Fellow, who carry'd a Pack of our Cloaths, of great Weight; notwithſtanding his Burden, we had much a-do to keep pace with him. At Noon we came up with ſeveral *French* Plantations, meeting with ſeveral Creeks by the Way, the *French* were very officious in aſſiſting with their ſmall Dories to paſs over theſe Waters, (whom we met coming from their Church) being all of them very clean and decent in their Apparel; their Houſes and Plantations ſuitable in Neatneſs and Contrivance. They are all of the ſame Opinion with the Church of *Geneva*, there being no Difference amongſt them concerning the *Punctilio's* of their Chriſtian Faith; which Union hath propagated a happy and delightful Concord in all other Matters throughout the whole Neighbourhood; living amongſt themſelves as one Trible, or Kindred, every one making it his Buſineſs to be aſſiſtant to the Wants of his Country-man, preſerving his Eſtate and Reputation with the ſame Exactneſs and Concern as he does his own; all ſeeming to ſhare in the Misfortunes, and rejoyce at the Advance, and Riſe, of their Brethren.

Towards the Afternoon, we came to Monſ. *L'Jandro*, where we got our Dinner; there coming ſome *French* Ladies whilſt we were there, who were lately come from *England*, and Monſ. *L'Grand*, a worthy *Norman*, who hath been a great Sufferer in his Eſtate, by the Perſecution in *France*, againſt thoſe of the Proteſtant Religion: This Gentleman very kindly invited us to make our Stay with him all Night, but we being intended farther that Day, took our Leaves, returning Acknowledgments of their Favours.

About

About 4 in the Afternoon, we paſs'd over a large *Cipreſs* run in a ſmall Canoe; the *French* Doctor ſent his Negro to guide us over the Head of a large Swamp; ſo we got that Night to Monſ. *Gallian*'s the elder, who lives in a very curious contriv'd Houſe, built of Brick and Stone, which is gotten near that Place. Near here comes in the Road from *Charles-Town*, and the reſt of the *Engliſh* Settlement, it being a very good Way by Land, and not above 36 Miles, altho' more than 100 by Water; and I think the moſt difficult Way I ever ſaw, occaſion'd by Reaſon of the multitude of Creeks lying along the Main, keeping their Courſe thro' the Marſhes, turning and winding like a Labyrinth, having the Tide of Ebb and Flood twenty Times in leſs than three Leagues going.

Monday. The next Morning very early, we ferry'd over a Creek that runs near the Houſe; and, after an Hour's Travel in the Woods, we came to the River-ſide, where we ſtay'd for the *Indian*, who was our Guide, and was gone round by Water in a ſmall Canoe, to meet us at that Place wereſted at. He came after a ſmall Time, and ferry'd us in that little Veſſel over *Santee* River 4 Miles, and 84 Miles in the Woods, which the over-flowing of the Freſhes, which then came down, had made a perfect Sea of, there running an incredible Current in the River, which had caſt our ſmall Craft, and us, away, had we not had this *Sewee Indian* with us; who are excellent Artiſts in managing theſe ſmall Canoes.

Santee River, at this Time, (from the uſual Depth of Water) was riſen perpendicular 36 Foot, always making a Breach from her Banks, about this Seaſon of the Year: The general Opinion of the Cauſe thereof, is ſuppos'd to proceed from the overflowing of freſh Water-Lakes that lie near the Head of this River, and others, upon the ſame Continent: But my Opinion is, that theſe vaſt Inundations proceed from the great and repeated Quantities of Snow that falls upon the Mountains, which lie at ſo great a Diſtance from the Sea, therefore they have no Help of being diſſolv'd by thoſe ſaline, piercing Particles, as other adjacent Parts near the Ocean receive; and therefore lies and increaſes to a vaſt Bulk, until ſome mild *Southerly* Breezes coming on a ſudden, continue to unlock theſe frozen Bodies, congeal'd by the *North-Weſt* Wind, diſſipating

ting

ting them in Liquids; and coming down with Impetuosity, fills those Branches that feed these Rivers, and causes this strange Deluge, which oft-times lays under Water the adjacent Parts on both Sides this Current, for several Miles distant from her Banks; tho' the *French* and *Indians* affir'm'd to me, they never knew such an extraordinary Flood there before.

We all, by God's Blessing, and the Endeavours of our *Indian* Pilot, pass'd safe over the River, but was lost in the Woods, which seem'd like some great Lake, except here and there a Knowl of high Land, which appear'd above Water.

We intended for Monsr. *Gallia*r's *jun*r, but was lost, none of us knowing the Way at that Time, altho' the *Indian* was born in that Country, it having receiv'd so strange a *Metamorphosis*. We were in several Opinions concerning the right Way, the *Indian* and my self, suppos'd the House to bear one Way, the rest thought to the contrary; we differing, it was agreed on amongst us, that one half should go with the *Indian* to find the House, and the other part to stay upon one of these dry Spots, until some of them return'd to us, and inform'd us where it lay.

My self and two more were left behind, by Reason the Canoe would not carry us all; we had but one Gun amongst us, one Load of Ammunition, and no Provision. Had our Men in the Canoe miscarry'd, we must (in all Probability) there have perish'd.

In about six Hours Time, from our Mens Departure, the *Indian* came back to us in the same Canoe he went in, being half drunk, which assur'd us they had found some Place of Refreshment. He took us three into the Canoe, telling us all was well: Padling our Vessel several Miles thro' the Woods, being often half full of Water; but at length we got safe to the Place we sought for, which prov'd to lie the same Way the *Indian* and I gues's'd it did.

When we got to the House, we found our Comrades in the same Trim the *Indian* was in, and several of the *French* Inhabitants with them, who treated us very courteously, wondering at our undertaking such a Voyage, thro' a Country inhabited by none but Savages, and them of so different Nations and Tongues.

After we had refresh'd our selves, we parted from a very kind,

kind, loving, and affable People, who wiſh'd us a ſafe and proſperous Voyage.

Hearing of a Camp of *Santee Indians* not far of, we ſet out intending to take up our Quarters with them that Night. There being a deep Run of Water in the Way, one of our Company being top-heavy, and there being nothing but a ſmall Pole for a Bridge, over a Creek, fell into the Water up to the Chin; my ſelf laughing at the Accident, and not taking good Heed to my Steps, came to the ſame Misfortune: All our Bedding was wet. The Wind being at *N. W.* it froze very hard, which prepar'd ſuch a Night's Lodging for me, that I never deſire to have the like again; the wet Bedding and freezing Air had ſo qualify'd our Bodies, that in the Morning when we awak'd, we were nigh frozen to Death, until we had recruited our ſelves before a large Fire of the *Indians*.

Tueſday. Tueſday Morning we ſet towards the *Congerees*, leaving the *Indian* Guide *Scipio* drunk amongſt the *Santee-Indians*. We went ten Miles out of our Way, to head a great Swamp, the Freſhes having fill'd them all with ſuch great Quantities of Water, that the uſual Paths were render'd unpaſſable. We met in our Way with an *Indian* Hut, where we were entertain'd with a fat, boil'd Gooſe, Veniſon, Racoon, and ground Nuts. We made but little Stay; about Noon, we paſs'd by ſeveral large Savannah's, wherein is curious Ranges for Cattel, being green all the Year; they were plentifully ſtor'd with Cranes, Geeſe, *&c.* and the adjacent Woods with great Flocks of Turkies. This Day we travell'd about 30 Miles, and lay all Night at a Houſe which was built for the *Indian* Trade, the Maſter thereof we had parted with at the *French* Town, who gave us Leave to make uſe of his Manſion. Such Houſes are common in theſe Parts, and eſpecially where there is *Indian* Towns, and Plantations near at hand, which this Place is well furniſh'd withal.

Theſe *Santee-Indians* are a well-humour'd and affable People; and living near the *Engliſh*, are become very tractable. They make themſelves Cribs after a very curious Manner, wherein they ſecure their Corn from Vermin; which are more frequent in theſe warm Climates, than Countries more diſtant from the Sun. Theſe pretty Fabricks are commonly

ſup-

ſupported with eight Feet or Poſts, about ſeven Foot high from the Ground, well daub'd within and without upon Laths, with Loom or Clay, which makes them tight, and fit to keep out the ſmalleſt Inſect, there being a ſmall Door at the gable End, which is made of the ſame Compoſition, and to be remov'd at Pleaſure, being no bigger, than that a ſlender Man may creep in at, cementing the Door up with the ſame Earth, when they take Corn out of the Crib, and are going from Home, always finding their Granaries in the ſame Poſture they left them; Theft to each other being altogether unpractis'd, never receiving Spoils but from Foreigners.

Hereabouts the Ground is ſomething higher than about *Charles*-Town, there being found ſome Quarries of brown free Stone, which I have ſeen made Uſe of for Building, and hath prov'd very durable and good. The Earth here is mix'd with white Gravel, which is rare, there being nothing like a Stone to be found, of the natural Produce, near to *Aſhly*-River.

The next Day about Noon we came to the Side of a great Swamp, where we were forc'd to ſtrip our ſelves to get over it, which, with much Difficulty, we effected. Hereabouts the late Guſt of Wind, which happen'd in *September* laſt, had torn the large Ciprus-Trees and Timbers up by the Roots, they lying confuſedly in their Branches, did block up the Way, making the Paſſage very difficult. *Wedneſday Septem.* 5. 1700.

This Night we got to one *Scipio*'s Hutt, a famous Hunter: There was no Body at Home; but we having (in our Company) one that had us'd to trade amongſt them, we made our ſelves welcome to what his Cabin afforded, (which is a Thing common) the *Indians* allowing it practicable to the *Engliſh* Traders, to take out of their Houſes what they need in their Abſence, in Lieu whereof they moſt commonly leave ſome ſmall Gratuity of Tobacco, Paint, Beads, *&c.* We found great Store of *Indian* Peas, (a very good Pulſe) Beans, Oyl, Think-apin Nuts, Corn, barbacu'd Peaches, and Peach-Bread; which Peaches being made into a Quiddony, and ſo made up into Loves like Barley-Cakes, theſe cut into thin Slices, and diſſolv'd in Water, makes a very grateful Acid, and extraordinary beneficial in Fevers, as hath often been try'd, and approv'd on by our *Engliſh* Practitioners. The Wind being at

N. W. with cold Weather, made us make a large Fire in the *Indian*'s Cabin; being very intent upon our Cookery, we ſet the Dwelling on Fire, and with much ado, put it out, tho' with the Loſs of Part of the Roof.

Thurſday. The next Day we travell'd on our Way, and about Noon came up with a Settlement of *Santee Indians*, there being Plantations lying ſcattering here and there, for a great many Miles. They came out to meet us, being acquainted with one of our Company, and made us very welcome with fat barbacu'd Veniſon, which the Woman of the Cabin took and tore in Pieces with her Teeth, ſo put it into a Mortar, beating it to Rags, afterwards ſtews it with Water, and other Ingredients, which makes a very ſavoury Diſh.

At theſe Cabins came to viſit us the King of the *Santee* Nation. He brought with him their chief Doctor or Phyſician, who was warmly and neatly clad with a Match-Coat, made of Turkies Feathers, which makes a pretty Shew, ſeeming as if it was a Garment of the deepeſt ſilk Shag. This Doctor had the Misfortune to loſe his Noſe by the Pox, which Diſeaſe the *Indians* often get by the *Engliſh* Traders that uſe amongſt them; not but the Natives of *America* have for many Ages (by their own Confeſſion) been afflicted with a Diſtemper much like the *Lues Venerea*, which hath all the Symptoms of the Pox, being different in this only; for I never could learn, that this Country-Diſtemper, or Yawes, is begun or continu'd with a Gonorrhœa; yet is attended with nocturnal Pains in the Limbs, and commonly makes ſuch a Progreſs, as to vent Part of the Matter by Botches, and ſeveral Ulcers in the Body, and other Parts; oftentimes Death enſuing. I have known mercurial Unguents and Remedies work a Cure, following the ſame Methods as in the Pox; ſeveral white People, but chiefly the *Criolo*'s, loſing their Palates and Noſes by this devouring Vulture.

It is epidemical, viſiting theſe Parts of *America*, which is often occaſion'd thro' the immoderate drinking of Rum, by thoſe that commonly drink Water at other Times, cold Nights Lodging, and bad open Houſes, and more chiefly by often wetting the Feet, and eating ſuch Quantities of Pork as they do, which is a groſs Food, and a great Propagator of ſuch

Juices

Juices as it often meets withal in human Bodies, once tainted with this Malady; which may differently (in some Respects) act its Tragedy; the Change being occasion'd by the Difference of Climates and Bodies, as in *Europe*. We being well enough assur'd that the Pox had its first Rise (known to us) in this new World, it being caught of the *Indian* Women, by the *Spaniſh* Soldiers that follow'd *Columbus* in one of his Expeditions to *America*; who after their Arrival in *Old Spain*, were hasten'd to the Relief of *Naples*, at that Time besieg'd by the *French*. Provisions growing scarce, the useless People were turn'd out of the City, to lessen the Mouths; amongst these, the *Curtesans* were one Part, who had frequently embrac'd the *Spaniards*, being well fraught with Riches by their new Discovery. The Leager Ladies had no sooner lost their *Spaniſh* Dons, but found themselves as well entertain'd by the *French*, whose Camp they traded in, giving the Mounsieurs as large a Share of the pocky Spoils within their own Lines, as the *Spaniards* had, who took the Pains to bring it in their Breeches as far as from *America*; the large Supplies of Swines Flesh, which that Army was chiefly victuall'd withal, made it rage. The Siege was rais'd; the *French* and *Spaniards* retreating to *Flanders*, which was s Parrade of all Nations; by which Means, this filthy Distemper crowded it self into most Natious of the known World.

Now to return to our Doctor, who in the Time of his Affliction withdrew himself (with one that labour'd under the same Distemper) into the Woods. These two perfected their Cures by proper Vegitables, *&c.* of which they have Plenty, and are well acquainted with their specifick Virtue.

I have seen such admirable Cures perform'd by these Savages, which would puzzle a great many graduate Practitioners to trace their Steps in Healing, with the same Expedition, Ease, and Succes; using no racking Instruments in their Chirurgery, nor nice Rules of Diet and Physick, to verify the Saying, *qui Medice vivit, misere vivit.* In Wounds which penetrate deep, and seem mortal, they order a spare Diet, with drinking Fountain-water; if they perceive a white Matter, or Pus to arise, they let the Patient more at large, and presently cure him.

After these two had perform'd their Cures at no easier Rate than the Expence of both their Noses, coming again amongst their old Acquaintance so disfigur'd, the *Indians* admir'd to see them metamorphos'd after that manner; enquir'd of them where they had been all that Time, and what were become of their Noses? They made Answer, That they had been conversing with the white Man above, (meaning God Almighty) how they were very kindly entertain'd by that Great Being; he being much pleas'd with their Ways, and had promis'd to make their Capacities equal with the white People in making Guns, Ammunition, *&c.* in Retalliation of which, they had given him their Noses. The Verity of which, they yet hold, the *Indians* being an easy, credulous People, and most notoriously cheated by their Priests and Conjurers, both Trades meeting ever in one Person, and most commonly a Spice of Quackship added to the other two Ingredients, which renders that cunning Knave the Impostor to be more rely'd upon; thence a fitter Instrument to cheat these ignorant People; the Priest and Conjurers being never admitted to their Practice, 'till Years and the Experience of repeated Services hath wrought their Esteem amongst the Nations they belong to.

The *Santee* King, who was in Company with this Nonos'd Doctor, is the most absolute *Indian* Ruler in these Parts, although he is Head but of a small People, in Respect to some other Nations of *Indians*, that I have seen: He can put any of his People to Death that hath committed any Fault which he judges worthy of so great a Punishment. This Authority is rarely found amongst these Savages, for they act not (commonly) by a determinative Voice in their Laws, towards any one that hath committed Murder, or such other great Crime, but take this Method; him to whom the Injury was done, or if dead, the neareſt of his Kindred prosecutes by Way of an actual Revenge, being himself, if Opportunity serves his Intent, both Judge and Executioner, performing so much Mischief on the Offender, or his neareſt Relation, until such Time that he is fully satisfy'd: Yet this Revenge is not so infallible, but it may be bought off with Beads, Tobacco, and such like Commodities that are

useful

uſeful amongſt them, though it were the moſt ſable Villany that could be acted by Mankind.

Some that attended the King, preſented me with an odoriferous, balſamick Root, of a fragrant Smell and Taſte, the Name I know not; they chew it in the Mouth, and by that ſimple Application, heal deſperate Wounds, both green and old; that ſmall Quantity I had, was given inwardly to thoſe troubl'd with the Belly-ach, which Remedy fail'd not to give preſent Help, the Pain leaving the Patient ſoon after they had taken the Root.

Near to theſe Cabins are ſeveral Tombs made after the manner of theſe *Indians*; the largeſt and the chiefeſt of them was the Sepulchre of the late *Indian* King of the *Santees*, a Man of great Power, not only amongſt his own Subjects, but dreaded by the neighbouring Nations for his great Valour and Conduct, having as large a Prerogative in his Way of Ruling, as the preſent King I now ſpoke of.

The manner of their Interment, is thus: A Mole or Pyramid of Earth is rais'd, the Mould thereof being work'd very ſmooth and even, ſometimes higher or lower, according to the Dignity of the Perſon whoſe Monument it is. On the Top thereof is an Umbrella, made Ridge-ways, like the Roof of an Houſe; this is ſupported by nine Stakes, or ſmall Poſts, the Grave being about ſix or eight Foot in Length, and four Foot in Breadth; about it is hung Gourds Feathers, and other ſuch like Trophies, plac'd there by the dead Man's Relations, in Reſpect to him in the Grave. The other Part of the Funeral-Rites are thus, As ſoon as the Party is dead, they lay the Corps upon a Piece of Bark in the Sun, ſeaſoning or embalming it with a ſmall Root beaten to Powder, which looks as red as Vermilion; the ſame is mix'd with Bear's Oil, to beautify the Hair, and preſerve their Heads from being louſy, it growing plentifully in theſe Parts of *America*. After the Carcaſs has laid a Day or two in the Sun, they remove and lay it upon Crotches cut on purpoſe for the Support thereof from the Earth; then they anoint it all over with the fore-mention'd Ingredients of the Powder of this Root, and Bear's Oil. When it is ſo done, they cover it very exactly over with Bark of the Pine or Cyprus Tree, to prevent any Rain to fall upon it,

ſweeping

ſweeping the Ground very clean all about it. Some of his neareſt of Kin brings all the temporal Eſtate he was poſſeſs'd of at his Death, as Guns, Bows, and Arrows, Beads, Feathers, Match-coat, *&c.* This Relation is the chief Mourner, being clad in Moſs, and a Stick in his Hand, keeping a mournful Ditty for three or four Days, his Face being black with the Smoak of Pitch, Pine, mingl'd with Bear's Oil. All the while he tells the dead Man's Relations, and the reſt of the Spectators, who that dead Perſon was, and of the great Feats perform'd in his Life-time; all what he ſpeaks, tending to the Praiſe of the Defunct. As ſoon as the Fleſh grows mellow, and will cleave from the Bone, they get it off, and burn it, making all the Bones very clean, then anoint them with the Ingredients aforeſaid, wrapping up the Skull (very carefully) in a Cloath artificially woven of Poſſums Hair. (Theſe *Indians* make Girdles, Saſhes, Garters, *&c.* after the ſame Manner.) The Bones they carefully preſerve in a wooden Box, every Year oiling and cleanſing them: By theſe Means preſerve them for many Ages, that you may ſee an *Indian* in Poſſeſſion of the Bones of his Grand-father, or ſome of his Relations of a larger Antiquity. They have other Sorts of Tombs; as where an *Indian* is ſlain, in that very Place they make a Heap of Stones, (or Sticks, where Stones are not to be found;) to this Memorial, every *Indian* that paſſes by, adds a Stone, to augment the Heap, in Reſpect to the deceas'd Hero.

We had a very large Swamp to paſs over near the Houſe, and would have hir'd our Landlord to have been our Guide, but he ſeem'd unwilling; ſo we preſs'd him no farther about it. He was the talleſt *Indian* I ever ſaw, being ſeven Foot high, and a very ſtrait compleat Perſon, eſteem'd on by the King for his great Art in Hunting, always carrying with him an artificial Head to hunt withal: They are made of the Head of a Buck, the back Part of the Horns being ſcrapt and hollow, for Lightneſs of Carriage. The Skin is left to the ſetting on of the Shoulders, which is lin'd all round with ſmall Hoops, and flat Sort of Laths, to hold it open for the Arm to go in. They have a Way to preſerve the Eyes, as if living. The Hunter puts on a Match-coat made of Deer's Skin, with the Hair on, and a Piece of the white Part of a Deer's Skin, that

that grows on the Breaſt, which is faſten'd to the Neck-End of this ſtalking Head, ſo hangs down. In theſe Habiliments an *Indian* will go as near a Deer as he pleaſes, the exact Motions and Behaviour of a Deer being ſo well counterfeited by 'em, that ſeveral Times it hath been known for two Hunters to come up with a ſtalking Head together, and unknown to each other, ſo that they have kill'd an *Indian* inſtead of a Deer, which hath happen'd ſometimes to be a Brother, or ſome dear Friend; for which Reaſon they allow not of that Sort of Practice, where the Nation is populous.

Within half a Mile of the Houſe, we paſs'd over a prodigious wide and deep Swamp, being forc'd to ſtrip ſtark-naked, and much a-do to ſave our ſelves from drowning in this Fatiegue. We, with much a-do, got thro', going that Day about five Miles farther, and came to three more *Indian* Cabins, call'd in the *Indian* Tongue, *Hickerau*, by the *Engliſh* Traders, the *black Houſe*, being pleaſantly ſeated on a high Bank, by a Branch of *Santee*-River. One of our Company, that had traded amongſt theſe *Indians*, told us, That one of the Cabins was his Father's-in-Law; he call'd him ſo, by Reaſon the old Man had given him a young *Indian* Girl, that was his Daughter, to lie with him, make Bread, and to be neceſſary in what ſhe was capable to aſſiſt him in, during his Abode amongſt them.

When we came thither firſt, there was no Body at Home, ſo the Son made bold to ſearch his Father's Granary for Corn, and other Proviſions. He brought us ſome *Indian* Maiz and Peas, which are of a reddiſh Colour, and eat well, yet colour the Liquor they are boil'd in, as if it were a *Lixivium* of red Tartar. After we had been about an Hour in the Houſe, where was Millions of Fleas, the *Indian* Cabins being often fuller of ſuch Vermin, than any Dog-Kennel, the old Man came in to us, and ſeem'd very glad to ſee his Son-in-Law.

This *Indian* is a great Conjurer, as appears by the Sequel. The *Seretee* or *Santee Indians* were gone to War againſt the *Hooks* and *Backhooks* Nations, living near the Mouth of *Winy-an*-River. Thoſe that were left at Home, (which are commonly old People and Children) had heard no News a long Time of their Men at Arms. This Man, at the Entreaty of theſe

these People, (being held to be a great Sorcerer amongst 'em) went to know what Posture their fighting Men were in. His Exorcism was carry'd on thus: He dress'd himself in a clean white dress'd Deer-Skin; a great Fire being made in the Middle of the Plantation, the *Indians* sitting all round it, the Conjurer was blind-folded, then he surrounded the Fire several Times, I think thrice; leaving the Company, he went into the Woods, where he stay'd about half an Hour, returning to them, surrounded the Fire as before; leaving them, went the second Time into the Woods; at which Time there came a huge Swarm of Flies, very large, they flying about the Fire several Times, at last fell all into it, and were visibly consum'd. Immediately after the *Indian*-Conjurer made a huge Lilleloo, and howling very frightfully, presently an *Indian* went and caught hold of him, leading him to the Fire. The old Wizard was so feeble and weak, being not able to stand alone, and all over in a Sweat, and as wet as if he had fallen into the River. After some Time he recover'd his Strength, assuring them, that their Men were near a River, and could not pass over it 'till so many Days, but would, in such a Time, return all in Safety, to their Nation. All which prov'd true at the *Indians* Return, which was not long after. This Story the *English*-man, his Son-in-Law, affirm'd to me.

The old Man stay'd with us about two Hours, and told us we were welcome to stay there all Night, and take what his Cabin afforded; then leaving us, went into the Woods, to some Hunting-Quarter not far off.

Friday. The next Morning early we pursu'd our Voyage, finding the Land to improve it self in Pleasantness and Richness of Soil. When we had gone about ten Miles, one of our Company tir'd, being not able to travel any farther; so we went forward, leaving the poor dejected Traveller with Tears in his Eyes, to return to *Charles*-Town, and travel back again over so much bad Way, we having pass'd thro' the worst of our Journey, the Land here being high and dry, very few Swamps, and those dry, and a little Way through. We travell'd about twenty Miles, lying near a Savanna that was over-flown with Water; where we were very short of Victuals, but finding the Woods newly burnt, and on fire in many Places, which gave us great Hopes that *Indians* were not far of.

Next

Next Morning very early, we waded thro' the Savanna, the Path lying there; and about ten a Clock came to a hunting Quarter, of a great many *Santees*; they made us all welcome; ſhewing a great deal of Joy at our coming, giving us barbacu'd Turkeys, Bear's Oil, and Veniſon. *Saturday* 20 *Miles.*

Here we hir'd *Santee Jack* (a good Hunter, and a well-humour'd Fellow) to be our Pilot to the *Congeree Indians*; we gave him a Stroud-water-Blew, to make his Wife an *Indian* Petticoat, who went with her Huſband. After two Hours Refreſhment, we went on, and got that Day about twenty Miles; we lay by a ſmall ſwift Run of Water, which was pav'd at the Bottom with a Sort of Stone much like to Tripoli, and ſo light, that I fancy'd it would precipitate in no Stream, but where it naturally grew. The Weather was very cold, the Winds holding *Northerly*. We made our ſelves as merry as we could, having a good Supper with the Scraps of the Veniſon we had given us by the *Indians*, having kill'd 3 Teal and a Poſſum; which Medly all together made a curious Ragoo.

This Day all of us had a Mind to have reſted, but the *Indian* was much againſt it, alledging, That the Place we lay at, was not good to hunt in; telling us, if we would go on, by Noon, he would bring us to a more convenient Place; ſo we mov'd forwards, and about twelve a Clock came to the moſt amazing Proſpect I had ſeen ſince I had been in *Carolina*; we travell'd by a Swamp-ſide, which Swamp I believe to be no leſs than twenty Miles over, the other Side being as far as I could well diſcern, there appearing great Ridges of Mountains, bearing from us *W. N. W.* One Alp with a Top like a Sugar-loaf, advanc'd its Head above all the reſt very conſiderably; the Day was very ſerene, which gave us the Advantage of ſeeing a long Way; theſe Mountains were cloth'd all over with Trees, which ſeem'd to us to be very large Timbers. *Sunday* 15 *Miles.*

At the Sight of this fair Proſpect, we ſtay'd all Night; our *Indian* going about half an Hour before us, had provided three fat Turkeys e'er we got up to him.

The Swamp I now ſpoke of, is not a miry Bog, as others generally are, but you go down to it thro' a ſteep Bank, at the Foot of which, begins this Valley, where you may go dry for perhaps 200 Yards, then you meet with a ſmall Brook,

or Run of Water, about 2 or 3 Foot deep, then dry Land for ſuch another Space, ſo another Brook, thus continuing. The Land in this Percoarſon, or Valley, being extraordinary rich, and the Runs of Water well ſtor'd with Fowl. It is the Head of one of the Branches of *Santee*-River; but a farther Diſcovery Time would not permit; only one Thing is very remarkable, there growing all over this Swamp, a tall, lofty Bay-tree, but is not the ſame as in *England*, theſe being in their Verdure all the Winter long; which appears here, when you ſtand on the Ridge, (where our Path lay) as if it were one pleaſant, green Field, and as even as a Bowling-green to the Eye of the Beholder; being hemm'd in on one Side with theſe Ledges of vaſt high Mountains.

Viewing the Land here, we found an extraordinary rich, black Mould, and ſome of a Copper-colour, both Sorts very good; the Land in ſome Places is much burthen'd with Iron, Stone, here being great Store of it, ſeemingly very good: The eviling Springs, which are many in theſe Parts, iſſuing out of the Rocks, which Water we drank of, it colouring the Excrements of Travellers (by its chalybid Quality) as black as a Coal. When we were all aſleep, in the Beginning of the Night, we were awaken'd with the diſmall'ſt and moſt hideous Noiſe that ever pierc'd my Ears: This ſudden Surprizal incapacitated us of gueſſing what this threatning Noiſe might proceed from; but our *Indian* Pilot (who knew theſe Parts very well) acquainted us, that it was cuſtomary to hear ſuch Muſick along that Swamp-ſide, there being endleſs Numbers of Panthers, Tygers, Wolves, and other Beaſts of Prey, which take this Swamp for their Abode in the Day, coming in whole Droves to hunt the Deer in the Night, making this frightful Ditty 'till Day appears, then all is ſtill as in other Places.

Monday. The next Day it prov'd a ſmall drifly Rain, which is rare, there happening not the tenth Part of Foggy-falling Weather towards theſe Mountains, as viſits thoſe Parts. Near the Sea-board, the *Indian* kill'd 15 Turkeys this Day; there coming out of the Swamp, (about Sun-riſing) Flocks of theſe Fowl, containing ſeveral hundreds in a Gang, who feed upon the Acrons, it being moſt Oak that grow in theſe Woods. There are but very few Pines in thoſe Quarters.

Early

Early the next Morning, we ſet forward for the *Congeree-Indians*, parting with that delicious Proſpect. By the Way, our Guide kill'd more Turkeys, and two Polcats, which he eat, eſteeming them before fat Turkeys. Some of the Turkeys which we eat, whilſt we ſtay'd there, I believe, weigh'd no leſs than 40 Pounds.

The Land we paſs'd over this Day, was moſt of it good, and the worſt paſſable. At Night we kill'd a Poſſum, being cloy'd with Turkeys, made a Diſh of that, which taſted much between young Pork and Veal; their Fat being as white as any I ever ſaw.

Our *Indian* having this Day kill'd good Store of Proviſion with his Gun, he always ſhot with a ſingle Ball, miſſing but two Shoots in above forty; they being curious Artiſts in managing a Gun, to make it carry either Ball, or Shot, true. When they have bought a Piece, and find it to ſhoot any Ways crooked, they take the Barrel out of the Stock, cutting a Notch in a Tree, wherein they ſet it ſtreight, ſometimes ſhooting away above 100 Loads of Ammunition, before they bring the Gun to ſhoot according to their Mind. We took up our Quarters by a Fiſh-pond-ſide; the Pits in the Woods that ſtand full of Water, naturally breed Fiſh in them, in great Quantities. We cook'd our Supper, but having neither Bread, or Salt, our fat Turkeys began to be loathſome to us, altho' we were never wanting of a good Appetite, yet a Continuance of one Diet, made us weary.

The next Morning, *Santee Jack* told us, we ſhould reach the *Indian* Settlement betimes that Day; about Noon, we paſs'd by ſeveral fair Savanna's, very rich and dry; ſeeing great Copſes of many Acres that bore nothing but Buſhes, about the Bigneſs of Box-trees; which (in the Seaſon) afford great Quantities of ſmall Black-berries, very pleaſant Fruit, and much like to our Blues, or Huckle-berries, that grow on Heaths in *England*. Hard by the Savanna's we found the Town, where we halted; there was not above one Man left with the Women, the reſt being gone a Hunting for a Feaſt. The Women were very buſily engag'd in Gaming: The Name or Grounds of it, I could not learn, tho' I look'd on above two Hours. Their Arithmetick was kept with a Heap of *Indian* *Wedneſday*

Grain. When their Play was ended, the King, or *Cassetta*'s Wife, invited us into her Cabin. The *Indian* Kings always entertaining Travellers, either *English*, or *Indian*; taking it as a great Affront, if they pass by their Cabins, and take up their Quarters at any other *Indian*'s House. The Queen set Victuals before us, which good Compliment they use generally as soon as you come under their Roof.

The Town consists not of above a dozen Houses, they having other straggling Plantations up and down the Country, and are seated upon a small Branch of *Santee*-River. Their Place hath curious dry Marshes, and Savanna's adjoining to it, and would prove an exceeding thriving Range for Cattle, and Hogs, provided the *English* were seated thereon. Besides, the Land is good for Plantations.

These *Indians* are a small People, having lost much of their former Numbers, by intestine Broils; but most by the Small-pox, which hath often visited them, sweeping away whole Towns; occasion'd by the immoderate Government of themselves in their Sickness; as I have mention'd before, treating of the *Sewees*. Neither do I know any Savages that have traded with the *English*, but what have been great Losers by this Distemper.

We found here good Store of Chinkapin-Nuts, which they gather in Winter great Quantities of, drying them; so keep these Nuts in great Baskets for their Use; likewise Hickerie-Nuts, which they beat betwixt two great Stones, then sift them, so thicken their Venison-Broath therewith; the small Shells precipitating to the Bottom of the Pot, whilst the Kernel in Form of Flower, mixes it with the Liquor. Both these Nuts made into Meal, makes a curious Soop, either with clear Water, or in any Meat-Broth.

From the Nation of *Indians*, until such Time as you come to the *Turkeiruros* in *North Carolina*, you will see no long Moss upon the Trees; which Space of Ground contains above five hundred Miles. This seeming Miracle in *Nature*, is occasion'd by the Highness of the Land, it being dry and healthful; for tho' this most bears a Seed in a Sort of a small Cod, yet it is generated in or near low swampy Grounds.

The

The *Congerees* are kind and affable to the *Engliſh*, the Queen being very kind, giving us what Rarities her Cabin afforded, as Loblolly made with *Indian* Corn, and dry'd Peaches. Theſe *Congerees* have abundance of Storks and Cranes in their Savannas. They take them before they can fly, and breed 'em as tame and familiar as a Dung-hill Fowl. They had a tame Crane at one of theſe Cabins, that was ſcarce leſs than ſix Foot in Height, his Head being round, with a ſhining natural Crimſon Hue, which they all have. Theſe are a very comely Sort of *Indians*, there being a ſtrange Difference in the Proportion and Beauty of theſe Heathens. Altho' their Tribes or Nations border one upon another, yet you may diſcern as great an Alteration in their Features and Diſpoſitions, as you can in their Speech, which generally proves quite different from each other, though their Nations be not above 10 or 20 Miles in Diſtance. The Women here being as handſome as moſt I have met withal, being ſeveral fine-finger'd Brounetto's amongſt them. Theſe Laſſes ſtick not upon Hand long, for they marry when very young, as at 12 or 14 Years of Age. The *Engliſh* Traders are ſeldom without an *Indian* Female for his Bed-fellow, alledging theſe Reaſons as ſufficient to allow of ſuch a Familiarity. Firſt, They being remote from any white People, that it preſerves their Friendſhip with the Heathens, they eſteeming a white Man's Child much above one of their getting, the *Indian* Miſtreſs ever ſecuring her white Friend Proviſions whilſt he ſtays amongſt them. And laſtly, This Correſpondence makes them learn the *Indian* Tongue much the ſooner, they being of the *French*-man's Opinion, how that an *Engliſh* Wife teaches her Huſband more *Engliſh* in one Night, than a School-maſter can in a Week.

We ſaw at the *Caſſetta*'s Cabin the ſtrangeſt Spectacle of Antiquity I ever knew, it being an old *Indian* Squah, that, had I been to have gueſs'd at her Age by her Aſpect, old *Parr*'s Head (the *Welch Methuſalem*) was a Face in Swadling-Clouts to hers. Her Skin hung in Reaves like a Bag of Tripe. By a fair Computation, one might have juſtly thought it would have contain'd three ſuch Carcaſſes as hers then was. She had one of her Hands contracted by ſome Accident in the Fire, they

ſleeping

ſleeping always by it, and often fall into ſad Diſaſters, eſpecially in their drunken Moods. I made the ſtricteſt Enquiry that was poſſible, and by what I could gather, ſhe was conſiderably above 100 Years old, notwithſtanding ſhe ſmoak'd Tobacco, and eat her Victuals, to all Appearance, as heartily as one of 18. One of our Company ſpoke ſome of their Language, and having not quite forgotten his former Intrigues with the *Indian* Laſſes, would fain have been dealing with ſome of the young Female Fry; but they refus'd him, he having nothing that theſe Girls eſteem'd. At Night we were laid in the King's Cabin, where the Queen and the old Squah pig'd in with us: The former was very much diſfigur'd with Tettars, and very reſerv'd, which diſappointed our fellow Traveller in his Intrigues.

The Women ſmoak much Tobacco, (as moſt *Indians* do.) They have Pipes, whoſe Heads are cut out of Stone, and will hold an Ounce of Tobacco, and ſome much leſs. They have large wooden Spoons, as big as ſmall Ladles, which they make little Uſe of, lading the Meat out of the Bowls with their Fingers.

Thurſday. In the Morning we roſe before Day, having hir'd a Guide over Night to conduct us on our Way; but it was too ſoon for him to ſtir out, the *Indians* never ſetting forward 'till the Sun is an Hour or two high, and hath exhall'd the Dew from the Earth. The Queen got us a good Breakfaſt before we left her; ſhe had a young Child, which was much afflicted with the Cholick; for which Diſtemper ſhe infus'd a Root in Water, which was held in a Goard; this ſhe took into her Mouth, and ſpurted it into the Infant's, which gave it eaſe. After we had eaten, we ſet out (with our new Guide) for the *Wateree Indians*. We went over a great deal of indifferent Land this Day. Here begins to appear very good Marble, which continues more and leſs for the Space of 500 Miles. We lay all Night by a Run of Water, as we always do, (if poſſible) for the Convenience of it. The Weather was very cold. We went this Day about 30 Miles from the *Congerees*.

Friday. In the Morning we made no Stay to get our Breakfaſt, but haſted on our Voyage, the Land increaſing in Marble and Richneſs

Richneſs of Soil. At Noon we halted, getting our Dinner upon a Marble-Stone, that roſe it ſelf half a Foot above the Surface of the Earth, and might contain the Compaſs of a Quarter of an Acre of Land, being very even, there growing upon it in ſome Places a ſmall red Berry, like a Salmon-Spawn, there boiling out of the main Rock curious Springs of as delicious Water, as ever I drank in any Parts I ever travell'd in.

Theſe Parts likewiſe affords good free Stone, fit for Building, and of ſeveral Sorts. The Land here is pleaſantly ſeated, with pretty little Hills and Valleys, the riſing Sun at once ſhewing his glorious reflecting Rays on a great many of theſe little Mountains. We went this Day about 20 Miles, our Guide walking like a Horſe, 'till we had ſadl'd him with a good heavy Pack of ſome Part of our Cloaths and Bedding; by which Means we kept Pace with him.

This Night we lay by a Run-ſide, where I found a fine yellow Earth, the ſame with Bruxels-Sand, which Goldſmiths uſe to caſt withal, giving a good Price in *England*, and other Parts. Here is likewiſe the true Blood-Stone, and conſiderable Quantities of Fullers-Earth, which I took a Proof of, by ſcouring great Spots out of Woollen, and it prov'd very good.

As we were on our Road this Morning, our *Indian* ſhot at a Tyger, that croſs'd the Way, he being a great Diſtance from us. I believe he did him no Harm, becauſe he ſat on his Breech afterwards, and look'd upon us. I ſuppoſe he expected to have had a Spaniel Bitch, that I had with me, for his Breaſtfaſt, who run towards him, but in the Midway ſtopt her Career, and came ſneaking back to us with her Tail betwixt her Legs. *Saturday.*

We ſaw in the Path a great many Trees blown up by the Roots, at the Bottom whereof ſtuck great Quantities of fine red Bole; I believe nothing inferior to that of *Venice* or *Lemma*. We found ſome Holes in the Earth, which were full of a Water as black as Ink. I thought that Tincture might proceed from ſome Mineral, but had not Time to make a farther Diſcovery. About Noon we paſs'd over a pleaſant

ſtony

ſtony Brook, whoſe Water was of a bluiſh Caſt, as it is for ſeveral hundreds of Miles towards the Heads of the Rivers, I ſuppoſe occaſion'd by the vaſt Quantities of Marble lying in the Bowels of the Earth. The Springs that feed theſe Rivulets, lick up ſome Potions of the Stones in the Brooks; which Diſſolution gives this Tincture, as appears in all, or moſt of the Rivers and Brooks of this Country, whoſe rapid Streams are like thoſe in *Yorkſhire*, and other *Northern* Counties of *England*. The *Indians* talk of many Sorts of Fiſh which they afford, but we had not Time to diſcover their Species.

I ſaw here had been ſome *Indian* Plantations formerly, there being ſeveral pleaſant Fields of clear'd Ground, and excellent Soil, now well ſpread with fine bladed Graſs, and Strawberry-Vines.

The Mould here is exceſſive rich, and a Country very pleaſing to the Eye, had it the Convenience of a navigable River, as all new Colonies (of Neceſſity) require. It would make a delightful Settlement.

We went eight Miles farther, and came to the *Wateree Chickanee Indians*. The Land holds good, there being not a Spot of bad Land to be ſeen in ſeveral Days going.

The People of this Nation are likely tall Perſons, and great Pilferers, ſtealing from us any Thing they could lay their Hands on, though very reſpectful in giving us what Victuals we wanted. We lay in their Cabins all Night, being dark ſmoaky Holes, as ever I ſaw any *Indians* dwell in. This Nation is much more populous than the *Congerees*, and their Neighbours, yet underſtand not one anothers Speech. They are very poor in *Engliſh* Effects, ſeveral of them having no Guns, making Uſe of Bows and Arrows, being a lazy idle People, a Quality incident to moſt *Indians*, but none to that Degree as theſe, as I ever met withal.

Their Country is wholly free from Swamps and Quagmires, being high dry Land, and conſequently healthful, producing large Corn-Stalks, and fair Grain.

Next Morning, we took off our Beards with a Razor, the *Indians* looking on with a great deal of Admiration. They told us, they had never ſeen the like before, and that our Knives cut far better than thoſe that came amongſt the *Indians*. They would fain have borrow'd our Razors, as they had our Knives, Sciſſors, and Tobacco-Tongs, the day before, being as ingenious at picking of Pockets, as any, I believe, the World affords; for they will ſteal with their Feet. Yeſterday, one of our Company, not walking ſo faſt as the reſt, was left behind. He being out of Sight before we miſs'd him, and not coming up to us, tho' we ſtaid a conſiderable time on the Road for him, we ſtuck up Sticks in the Ground, and left other Tokens to direct him which way we were gone: But he came not to us that Night, which gave us Occaſion to fear ſome of the Heathens had kill'd him, for his Cloaths, or the ſavage Beaſts had devour'd him in the Wilderneſs, he having nothing about him to ſtrike Fire withal. As we were debating which way we ſhould ſend to know what was become of him, he overtook us, having a *Waxſaw Indian* for his Guide. He told us, he had miſs'd the Path, and got to another Nation of *Indians*, but 3 Miles off, who at that time held great Feaſting. They had entertain'd him very reſpectfully, and ſent that *Indian* to invite us amongſt them, wondring that we would not take up our Quarters with them, but make our Abode with ſuch a poor Sort of *Indians*, that were not capable of entertaining us according to our Deſerts: We receiv'd the Meſſenger with a great many Ceremonies, acceptable to thoſe ſort of Creatures. Bidding our *Waterree* King adieu, we ſet forth towards the *Waxſaws*, going along clear'd Ground all the Way. Upon our Arrival, we were led into a very large and lightſome Cabin, the like I have not met withal. They laid Furs and Deer-Skins upon Cane Benches for us to ſit or lie upon, bringing (immediately) ſtewed Peaches and green Corn, that is preſerv'd in their Cabins before it is ripe, and ſodden and boil'd when they uſe it, which is a pretty ſort of Food, and a great Increaſer of the Blood. *Sunday.*

Theſe *Indians* are of an extraordinary Stature, and call'd by their Neighbours flat Heads, which ſeems a very ſuitable Name for them. In their Infancy, their Nurſes lay the Back-part of their Children's Heads on a Bag of Sand, (ſuch

as Engravers uſe to reſt their Plates upon.) They uſe a Roll, which is placed upon the Babe's Forehead, it being laid with its Back on a flat Board, and ſwaddled hard down thereon, from one End of this Engine, to the other. This Method makes the Child's Body and Limbs as ſtraight as an Arrow. There being ſome young *Indians* that are perhaps crookedly inclin'd, at their firſt coming into the World, who are made perfectly ſtraight by this Method. I never ſaw an *Indian* of a mature Age, that was any ways crooked, except by Accident, and that way ſeldom; for they cure and prevent Deformities of the Limbs, and Body, very exactly. The Inſtrument I ſpoke of before, being a ſort of a Preſs, that is let out and in, more or leſs, according to the Diſcretion of the Nurſe, in which they make the Child's Head flat, it makes the Eyes ſtand a prodigious Way aſunder, and the Hair hang over the Forehead like the Eves of a Houſe, which ſeems very frightful: They being ask'd the Reaſon why they practis'd this Method, reply'd, the *Indian*'s Sight was much ſtrengthened and quicker, thereby, to diſcern the Game in hunting at larger Diſtance, and ſo never miſs'd of becoming expert Hunters, the Perfection of which they all aim at, as we do to become experienced Soldiers, learned School-Men, or Artiſts in Mechanicks: He that is a good Hunter never miſſes of being a Favourite amongſt the Women; the prettieſt Girls being always beſtow'd upon the chiefeſt Sports-Men, and thoſe of a groſſer Mould, upon the uſeleſs *Lubbers*. Thus they have a Graduation amongſt them, as well as other Nations. As for the Solemnity of Marriages amongſt them, kept with ſo much Ceremony as divers Authors affirm, it never appear'd amongſt thoſe many Nations I have been withal, any otherwiſe than in the Manner I have mention'd hereafter.

The Girls at 12 or 13 Years of Age, as ſoon as Nature prompts them, freely beſtow their Maidenheads on ſome Youth about the ſame Age, continuing her Favours on whom ſhe moſt affects, changing her Mate very often, few or none of them being conſtant to one, till a greater Number of Years has made her capable of managing domeſtick Affairs, and ſhe hath try'd the Vigour of moſt of the Nation ſhe belongs to; Multiplicity of Gallants never being a Stain to a Female's Reputation, or the leaſt Hindrance of her Advancement,

vancement, but the more *Whoriſh*, the more *Honourable*, and they of all moſt coveted, by thoſe of the firſt Rank, to make a Wife of. The *Flos Virginis*, ſo much coveted by the *Europeans*, is never valued by theſe Savages. When a Man and Woman have gone through their Degrees, (there being a certain Graduation amongſt them) and are allow'd to be Houſe-Keepers, which is not till they arrive at ſuch an Age, and have paſt the Ceremonies practis'd by their Nation, almoſt all Kingdoms differing in the Progreſs thereof, then it is that the Man makes his Addreſſes to ſome one of theſe thorough-paced Girls, or other, whom he likes beſt. When ſhe is won, the Parents of both Parties, (with Advice of the King) agree about the Matter, making a Promiſe of their Daughter, to the Man, that requires her, it often happening that they converſe and travel together, for ſeveral Moons before the Marriage is publiſh'd openly; After this, at the leaſt Diſlike the Man may turn her away, and take another; or if ſhe diſapproves of his Company, a Price is ſet upon her, and if the Man that ſeeks to get her, will pay the Fine to her Husband, ſhe becomes free from Him: Likewiſe ſome of their War Captains, and great Men, very often will retain 3 or 4 Girls at a time for their own Uſe, when at the ſame time, he is ſo impotent and old, as to be incapable of making Uſe of one of them; ſo that he ſeldom miſſes of wearing greater Horns than the Game he kills. The Husband is never ſo enrag'd as to put his Adultereſs to Death; if ſhe is caught in the Fact, the Rival becomes Debtor to the cornuted Husband, in a certain Quantity of Trifles valuable amongſt them, which he pays as ſoon as diſcharg'd, and then all Animoſity is laid aſide bewixt the Husband, and his Wife's Gallant. The Man proves often ſo good humour'd as to pleaſe his Neighbour and gratify his Wife's Inclinations, by letting her out for a Night or two, to the Embraces of ſome other, which perhaps ſhe has a greater Liking to, tho' this is not commonly practis'd.

They ſet apart the youngeſt and prettieſt Faces for trading Girls; theſe are remarkable by their Hair, having a particular Tonſure by which they are known, and diſtinguiſh'd from thoſe engag'd to Husbands. They are mercenary, and whoever makes Uſe of them, firſt hires them, the greateſt Share of the Gain going to the King's Purſe, who is the chief Bawd, exerciſing his Perogative over all the Stews of his Nation, and

his own Cabin (very often) being the chiefeſt Brothel-Houſe. As they grow in Years, the hot Aſſaults of Love grow cooler; and then they commonly are ſo ſtaid, as to engage themſelves with more Conſtancy to each other. I have ſeen ſeveral Couples amongſt them, that have been ſo reſerv'd, as to live together for many Years, faithful to each other, admitting none to their Beds but ſuch as they own'd for their Wife or Husband: So continuing to their Life's end.

At our *Waxſaw* Landlord's Cabin, was a Woman employ'd in no other Buſineſs than Cookery; it being a Houſe of great Reſort. The Fire was ſurrounded with Roaſt-meat, or *Barbakues*, and the Pots continually boiling full of Meat, from Morning till Night. This She-Cook was the cleanlieſt I ever ſaw amongſt the Heathens of *America*, waſhing her Hands before ſhe undertook to do any Cookery; and repeated this unuſual Decency very often in a day. She made us as White-Bread as any *Engliſh* could have done, and was full as neat, and expeditious, in her Affairs. It happen'd to be one of their great Feaſts, when we were there: The firſt day that we came amongſt them, arriv'd an Ambaſſador from the King of *Sapona*, to treat with theſe *Indians* about ſome important Affairs. He was painted with Vermillion all over his Face, having a very large Cutlaſs ſtuck in his Girdle, and a Fuſee in his Hand. At Night, the Revels began where this Foreign *Indian* was admitted; the King, and War Captain, inviting us to ſee their Maſquerade: This Feaſt was held in Commemoration of the plentiful Harveſt of Corn they had reap'd the Summer before, with an united Supplication for the like plentiful Produce the Year enſuing. Theſe Revels are carried on in a Houſe made for that purpoſe, it being done round with white Benches of fine Canes, joining along the Wall; and a place for the Door being left, which is ſo low, that a Man muſt ſtoop very much to enter therein. This Edifice reſembles a large Hay-Rick; its Top being Pyramidal, and much bigger than their other Dwellings, and at the Building whereof, every one aſſiſts till it is finiſh'd. All their Dwelling-Houſes are cover'd with Bark, but this differs very much; for, it is very artificially thatch'd with Sedge and Ruſhes: As ſoon as finiſh'd, they place ſome one of their chiefeſt Men to dwell therein, charging him with the diligent Preſervation thereof, as a Prince commits the Charge

and

and Government of a Fort or Caſtle, to ſome Subject he thinks worthy of that Truſt. In theſe State-Houſes is tranſacted all Publick and Private Buſineſs, relating to the Affairs of the Government, as the Audience of Foreign Ambaſſadors from other *Indian* Rulers, Conſultation of waging and making War, Propoſals of their Trade with neighbouring *Indians*, or the *Engliſh*, who happen to come amongſt them. In this Theater, the moſt Aged and Wiſeſt meet, determining what to Act, and what may be moſt convenient to Omit, Old Age being held in as great Veneration amongſt theſe Heathens, as amongſt any People you ſhall meet withal in any Part of the World.

Whenſoever an Aged Man is ſpeaking, none ever interrupts him, (the contrary Practice the *Engliſh*, and other *Europeans*, too much uſe) the Company yielding a great deal of Attention to his Tale, with a continued Silence, and an exact Demeanour, during the Oration. Indeed, the *Indians* are a People that never interrupt one another in their Diſcourſe; no Man ſo much as offering to open his Mouth, till the Speaker has utter'd his Intent: When an *Engliſh*-Man comes amongſt them, perhaps every one is acquainted with him, yet, firſt, the King bids him Welcome, after him the War-Captain, ſo on gradually from High to Low; not one of all theſe ſpeaking to the White Gueſt, till his Superiour has ended his Salutation. Amongſt Women, it ſeems impoſſible to find a Scold; if they are provok'd, or affronted, by their Husbands, or ſome other, they reſent the Indignity offer'd them in ſilent Tears, or by refuſing their Meat. Would ſome of our *European* Daughters of Thunder ſet theſe *Indians* for a Pattern, there might be more quiet Families found amongſt them, occaſion'd by that unruly Member, the Tongue.

Feſtination proceeds from the Devil, (*ſays a Learned* Doctor) a Paſſion the *Indians* ſeem wholly free from; they determining no Buſineſs of Moment, without a great deal of Deliberation and Warineſs. None of their Affairs appear to be attended with Impetuoſity, or Haſte, being more content with the common Accidents incident to humane Nature, (as Loſſes, contrary Winds, bad Weather, and Poverty) than thoſe of more civilized Countries.

Now, to return to our State-Houſe, whither we were invited by the Grandees: As ſoon as we came into it, they plac'd

our

our *Engliſhmen* near the King; it being my Fortune to ſit next him, having his great General, or War-Captain, on my other Hand. The Houſe is as dark as a Dungeon, and as hot as one of the *Dutch*-Stoves in *Holland*. They had made a circular Fire of ſplit Canes in the middle of the Houſe. It was one Man's Employment to add more ſplit Reeds to the one end as it conſum'd at the other, there being a ſmall Vacancy left to ſupply it with Fewel. They brought in great ſtore of Loblolly, and other Medleys, made of *Indian* Grain, ſtewed Peaches, Bear-Veniſon, *&c.* every one bringing ſome Offering to enlarge the Banquet, according to his Degree and Quality. When all the *Viands* were brought in, the firſt Figure began with kicking out the Dogs, which are ſeemingly Wolves, made tame with ſtarving and beating; they being the worſt Dog-Maſters in the World; ſo that it is an infallible Cure for Sore-Eyes, ever to ſee an *Indian*'s Dog fat. They are of a quite contrary Diſpoſition to Horſes; ſome of their Kings having gotten, by great chance, a Jade, ſtolen by ſome neighbouring *Indian*, and tranſported farther into the Country, and ſold; or bought ſometimes of a *Chriſtian*, that trades amongſt them. Theſe Creatures they continually cram, and feed with Maiz, and what the Horſe will eat, till he is as fat as a Hog; never making any farther uſe of him than to fetch a Deer home, that is killed ſomewhere near the *Indian*'s Plantation.

After the Dogs had fled the Room, the Company was ſummon'd by Beat of Drum; the Muſick being made of a dreſs'd Deer's Skin, tied hard upon an Earthen Porridge-Pot. Preſently in came five Men dreſs'd up with Feathers, their Faces being covered with Vizards made of Gourds; round their Ancles and Knees, were hung Bells of ſeveral ſorts, having Wooden Falchions in their Hands, (ſuch as Stage-Fencers commonly uſe;) in this Dreſs they danced about an Hour, ſhewing many ſtrange Geſtures, and brandiſhing their Wooden Weapons, as if they were going to fight each other; oftentimes walking very nimbly round the Room, without making the leaſt Noiſe with their Bells, (a thing I much admired at;) again, turning their Bodies, Arms and Legs, into ſuch frightful Poſtures, that you would have gueſs'd they had been quite raving mad: At laſt, they cut two or three high Capers, and left the Room. In their ſtead, came in a par-

cel

cel of Women and Girls, to the Number of Thirty odd; every one taking place according to her Degree of Stature, the talleſt leading the Dance, and the leaſt of all being plac'd laſt; with theſe they made a circular Dance, like a Ring, repreſenting the Shape of the Fire they danced about: Many of theſe had great Horſe-Bells about their Legs, and ſmall Hawk's Bells about their Necks. They had Muſicians, who were two Old Men, one of whom beat a Drum, while the other rattled with a Gourd, that had Corn in it, to make a Noiſe withal: To theſe Inſtruments, they both ſung a mournful Ditty; the Burthen of their Song was, in Remembrance of their former Greatneſs, and Numbers of their Nation, the famous Exploits of their Renowned Anceſtors, and all Actions of Moment that had (in former Days) been perform'd by their Forefathers. At theſe Feſtivals it is, that they give a Traditional Relation of what hath paſs'd amongſt them, to the younger Fry. Theſe verbal Deliveries being always publiſh'd in their moſt Publick Aſſemblies, ſerve inſtead of our Traditional Notes, by the uſe of Letters. Some *Indians*, that I have met withal, have given me a very curious Deſcription of the great Deluge, the Immortality of the Soul, with a pithy Account of the Reward of good and wicked Deeds in the Life to come; having found, amongſt ſome of them, great Obſervers of Moral Rules, and the Law of Nature; indeed, a worthy Foundation to build Chriſtianity upon, were a true Method found out, and practis'd, for the Performance thereof.

Their way of Dancing, is nothing but a ſort of ſtamping Motion, much like the treading upon Founders Bellows. This Female-Gang held their Dance for above ſix Hours, being all of them of a white Lather, like a Running Horſe that has juſt come in from his Race. My Landlady was the Ring-leader of the *Amazons*, who, when in her own Houſe, behav'd herſelf very diſcreetly, and warily, in her Domeſtick Affairs; yet, Cuſtom had ſo infatuated her, as to almoſt break her Heart with Dancing amongſt ſuch a confuſed Rabble. During this Dancing, the Spectators do not neglect their Buſineſs, in working the Loblolly-Pots, and the other Meat that was brought thither; more or leſs of them being continually Eating, whilſt the others were Dancing. When the Dancing was ended, every Youth that was ſo diſpoſed, catch'd

hold

hold of the Girl he liked beſt, and took her that Night for his Bed-Fellow, making as ſhort Courtſhip and expeditious Weddings, as the Foot-Guards us'd to do with the *Trulls* in *Salisbury-Court*.

Next we ſhall treat of the Land hereabouts, which is a Marl as red as Blood, and will lather like Soap. The Town ſtands on this Land, which holds conſiderably farther in the Country, and is in my Opinion, ſo durable that no Labour of Man, in one or two Ages, could make it poor. I have formerly ſeen the like in *Leiceſterſhire*, bordering upon *Rutland*. Here were Corn-Stalks in their Fields as thick as the Small of a Man's Leg, and they are ordinarily to be ſeen.

We lay with theſe *Indians* one Night, there being by my Bed-ſide one of the largeſt Iron Pots I had ever ſeen in *America*, which I much wondred at, becauſe I thought there might be no navigable Stream near that Place. I ask'd them, where they got that Pot? They laugh'd at my Demand, and would give me no Anſwer, which makes me gueſs it came from ſome Wreck, and that we were nearer the Ocean, or ſome great River, than I thought.

Monday. The next day about Noon, we accidentally met with a *Southward Indian*, amongſt thoſe that us'd to trade backwards and forwards, and ſpoke a little *Engliſh*, whom we hir'd to go with us to the *Eſaw Indians*, a very large Nation containing many thouſand People. In the Afternoon we ſet forward, taking our Leaves of the *Wiſack Indians*, and leaving them ſome Trifles. On our Way, we met with ſeveral Towns of *Indians*, each Town having its Theater or State Houſe, ſuch Houſes being found all along the Road, till you come to *Sapona*, and then no more of thoſe Buildings, it being about 170 Miles. We reach'd 10 Miles this day, lying at another Town of the *Wiſacks*. The Man of the Houſe offer'd us Skins to ſell, but they were too heavy Burdens for our long Voyage.

Tueſday. Next Morning we ſet out early, breaking the Ice we met withal, in the ſtony Runs, which were many. We paſs'd by ſeveral Cottages, and about 8 of the Clock came to a pretty big Town, where we took up our Quarters, in one of their State Houſes, the Men being all out, hunting in the Woods, and none but Women at home. Our Fellow Traveller of whom I ſpoke before at the *Congerees*, having a great Mind for an *Indian* Laſs, for his Bed-Fellow that Night,

ſpoke

ſpoke to our Guide, who ſoon got a Couple, reſerving one for himſelf. That which fell to our Companion's Share, was a pretty young Girl. Tho' they could not underſtand one Word of what each other ſpoke, yet the Female *Indian*, being no Novice at her Game, but underſtanding what ſhe came thither for, acted her Part dexterouſly enough with her Culiy, to make him ſenſible of what ſhe wanted; which was to pay the Hire, before he rode the Hackney. He ſhew'd her all the Treaſure he was poſſeſs'd of, as Beads, Red Cadis, *&c.* which ſhe lik'd very well, and permitted him to put them into his Pocket again, endearing him with all the Charms, which one of a better Education than Dame Nature had beſtow'd upon her, could have made uſe of, to render her Conſort a ſurer Captive. After they had us'd this Sort of Courtſhip a ſmall time, the Match was confirm'd by both Parties, with the Approbation of as many *Indian* Women, as came to the Houſe, to celebrate our *Wincheſter*-Wedding. Every one of the Bride-Maids were as great Whores, as Mrs. Bride, tho' not quite ſo handſome. Our happy Couple went to Bed together before us all, and with as little Bluſhing, as if they had been Man and Wife for 7 Years. The reſt of the Company being weary with travelling, had more Mind to take their Reſt, than add more Weddings to that hopeful one already conſummated; ſo that tho' the other Virgins offer'd their Service to us, we gave them their Anſwer, and went to ſleep. About an Hour before day, I awak'd, and ſaw ſomebody walking up and down the Room in a ſeemingly deep Melancholy. I call'd out to know who it was, and it prov'd to be Mr. Bridegroom, who in leſs than 12 Hours, was Batchelor, Husband, and Widdower, his dear Spouſe having pick'd his Pocket of the Beads, Cadis, and what elſe ſhould have gratified the *Indians* for the Victuals we receiv'd of them. However, that did not ſerve her turn, but ſhe had alſo got his Shooes away, which he had made the Night before, of a dreſt Buck-Skin. Thus dearly did our Spark already repent his new Bargain, walking bare-foot, in his Penitentials, like ſome poor Pilgrim to *Loretto*.

After the *Indians* had laugh'd their Sides ſore at the Figure Mr. Bridegroom made, with much ado, we muſter'd up another Pair of Shooes, or *Moggiſons*, and ſet forward on our intended Voyage, the Company (all the way) lifting up their

F Pray-

Prayers for the new married Couple, whoſe Wedding had made away with that, which ſhould have purchas'd our Food.

Wedneſday. Relying wholly on Providence, we march'd on, now and then paying our Reſpects to the new-married Man. The Land held rich and good; in many Places there were great Quantities of Marble. The Water was ſtill of a wheyiſh Colour. About 10 of the Clock, we waded thro' a River, (about the Bigneſs of *Derwent*, in *Yorkſhire*) which I take to be one of the Branches of *Winjaw* River. We ſaw ſeveral Flocks of Pigeons, Field-Fares, and Thruſhes, much like thoſe of *Europe*. The *Indians* of theſe Parts uſe Sweating very much. If any Pain ſeize their Limbs, or Body, immediately they take Reeds, or ſmall Wands, and bend them Umbrella-Faſhion, covering them with Skins and Matchcoats: They have a large Fire not far off, wherein they heat Stones, or (where they are wanting) Bark, putting it into this Stove, which caſts an extraordinary Heat: There is a Pot of Water in the *Bagnio*, in which is put a Bunch of an Herb, bearing a Silver Taſſel, not much unlike the *Aurea Virga*. With this Vegetable they rub the Head, Temples, and other Parts, which is reckon'd a Preſerver of the Sight and Strengthener of the Brain. We went, this day, about 12 Miles, one of our Company being lame of his Knee. We paſs'd over an exceeding rich Tract of Land, affording Plenty of great free Stones, and marble Rocks, and abounding in many pleaſant and delightſome Rivulets. At Noon, we ſtay'd and refreſh'd ourſelves at a Cabin, where we met with one of their War-Captains, a Man of great Eſteem among them. At his Departure from the Cabin, the Man of the Houſe ſcratch'd this War-Captain on the Shoulder, which is look'd upon as a very great Compliment among them. The Captain went two or three Miles on our way, with us, to direct us in our Path. One of our Company gave him a Belt, which he took very kindly, bidding us call at his Houſe, (which was in our Road) and ſtay till the lame Traveller was well, and ſpeaking to the *Indian*, to order his Servant to make us welcome. Thus we parted, he being on his Journey to the *Congerees*, and *Savannas*, a famous, warlike, friendly Nation of *Indians*, living to the *South*-End of *Aſhly* River. He had a Man-Slave with him, who was loaded with *European* Goods, his Wife and Daughter being in Company. He told us, at his Departure, that *James* had ſent Knots to all the *Indians* thereabouts, for every

every Town to ſend in 10 Skins, meaning Captain *Moor*, then Governour of *South-Carolina*. The Towns being very thick hereabouts, at Night we took up our Quarters at one of the chief Mens Houſes, which was one of the Theaters I ſpoke of before. There ran, hard-by this Town, a pleaſant River, not very large, but, as the *Indians* told us, well ſtor'd with Fiſh. We being now among the powerful Nation of *Eſaws*, our Landlord entertain'd us very courteouſly, ſhewing us, that Night, a pair of Leather-Gloves, which he had made; and comparing them with ours, they prov'd to be very ingeniouſly done, conſidering it was the firſt Tryal.

In the Morning, he deſired to ſee the lame Man's affected Part, to the end he might do ſomething, which (he believ'd) would give him Eaſe. After he had viewed it accordingly, he pull'd out an Inſtrument, ſomewhat like a Comb, which was made of a ſplit Reed, with 15 Teeth of Rattle-Snakes ſet at much the ſame diſtance, as in a large Horn-Comb: With theſe he ſcratch'd the place where the Lameneſs chiefly lay, till the Blood came, bathing it, both before and after Inciſion, with warm Water, ſpurted out of his Mouth. This done, he ran into his Plantation, and got ſome *Saſſafras* Root, (which grows here in great plenty) dry'd it in the Embers, ſcrap'd off the outward Rind, and having beat it betwixt two Stones, apply'd it to the Part afflicted, binding it up well. Thus, in a day or two, the Patient became ſound. This day, we paſs'd through a great many Towns, and Settlements, that belong to the *Sugeree-Indians*, no barren Land being found amongſt them, but great plenty of Free-Stone, and good Timber. About three in the Afternoon, we reach'd the *Kadapau* King's Houſe, where we met with one *John Stewart*, a *Scot*, then an Inhabitant of *James*-River in *Virginia*, who had traded there for many Years. Being alone, and hearing that the *Sinnagers* (*Indians* from *Canada*) were abroad in that Country, he durſt not venture homewards, till he ſaw us, having heard that we were coming, above 20 days before. It is very odd, that News ſhould fly ſo ſwiftly among theſe People. Mr. *Stewart* had left *Virginia* ever ſince the *October* before, and had loſt a day of the Week, of which we inform'd him. He had brought ſeven Horſes along with him, loaded with *Engliſh* Goods for the *Indians*; and having ſold moſt of his Cargo, told

Thurſday.

told us, if we would ſtay two Nights, he would go along with us. Company being very acceptable, we accepted the Propoſal.

Friday. The next day, we were preparing for our Voyage, and baked ſome Bread to take along with us. Our Landlord was King of the *Kadapau Indians*, and always kept two or three trading Girls in his Cabin. Offering one of theſe to ſome of our Company, who refus'd his Kindneſs, his Majeſty flew into a violent Paſſion, to be thus ſlighted, telling the *Engliſhmen*, they were good for nothing. Our old Gameſter, particularly, hung his Ears at the Propoſal, having too lately been a Loſer by that ſort of Merchandize. It was obſervable, that we did not ſee one Partridge from the *Waterrees* to this place, tho' my Spaniel-Bitch, which I had with me in this Voyage, had put up a great many before.

Saturday. On *Saturday* Morning, we all ſet out for *Sapona*, killing, in theſe Creeks, ſeveral Ducks of a ſtrange Kind, having a red Circle about their Eyes, like ſome Pigeons that I have ſeen, a Top-knot reaching from the Crown of their Heads, almoſt to the middle of their Backs, and abundance of Feathers of pretty Shades and Colours. They prov'd excellent Meat. Likewiſe, here is good ſtore of Woodcocks, not ſo big as thoſe in *England*, the Feathers of the Breaſt being of a Carnation-Colour, exceeding ours for Delicacy of Food. The Marble here is of different Colours, ſome or other of the Rocks repreſenting moſt Mixtures, but chiefly the white having black and blue Veins in it, and ſome that are red. This day, we met with ſeven heaps of Stones, being the Monuments of ſeven *Indians*, that were ſlain in that place by the *Sinnagers*, or *Troquois*. Our *Indian* Guide added a Stone to each heap. We took up our Lodgings near a Brook-ſide, where the *Virginia* Man's Horſes got away; and went back to the *Kadapau*'s.

Sunday. This day, one of our Company, with a *Sapona Indian*, who attended *Stewart*, went back for the Horſes. In the mean time, we went to ſhoot Pigeons, which were ſo numerous in theſe Parts, that you might ſee many Millions in a Flock; they ſometimes ſplit off the Limbs of ſtout Oaks, and other Trees, upon which they rooſt o' Nights. You may find ſeveral *Indian* Towns, of not above 17 Houſes, that have more than 100 Gallons of Pigeons Oil, or Fat; they uſing it with

Pulſe,

Pulſe, or Bread, as we do Butter, and making the Ground as white as a Sheet with their Dung. The *Indians* take a Light, and go among them in the Night, and bring away ſome thouſands, killing them with long Poles, as they rooſt in the Trees. At this time of the Year, the Flocks, as they paſs by, in great meaſure, obſtruct the Light of the day.

On *Monday*, we went about 25 Miles, travelling through a pleaſant, dry Country, and took up our Lodgings by a Hill-ſide, that was one entire Rock, out of which guſh'd out pleaſant Fountains of well-taſted Water. *Monday.*

The next day, ſtill paſſing along ſuch Land as we had done for many days before, which was, Hills and Vallies, about 10 a Clock we reach'd the Top of one of theſe Mountains, which yielded us a fine Proſpect of a very level Country, holding ſo, on all ſides, farther than we could diſcern. When we came to travel through it, we found it very ſtiff and rich, being a ſort of Marl. This Valley afforded as large Timber as any I ever met withal, eſpecially of Cheſnut-Oaks, which render it an excellent Country for raiſing great Herds of Swine. Indeed, were it cultivated, we might have good hopes of as pleaſant and fertile a Valley, as any our *Engliſh* in *America* can afford. At Night, we lay by a ſwift Current, where we ſaw plenty of Turkies, but pearch'd upon ſuch lofty Oaks, that our Guns would not kill them, tho' we ſhot very often, and our Guns were very good. Some of our Company ſhot ſeveral times, at one Turkey, before he would fly away, the Pieces being loaded with large Gooſe-ſhot. *Tueſday.*

Next Morning, we got our Breakfaſts; roaſted Acorns being one of the Diſhes. The *Indians* beat them into Meal, and thicken their Veniſon-Broth with them; and oftentimes make a palatable Soop. They are uſed inſtead of Bread, boiling them till the Oil ſwims on the top of the Water, which they preſerve for uſe, eating the Acorns with Fleſh-meat. We travell'd, this day, about 25 Miles, over pleaſant *Savanna* Ground, high, and dry, having very few Trees upon it, and thoſe ſtanding at a great diſtance. The Land was very good, and free from Grubs or Underwood. A Man near *Sapona* may more eaſily clear 10 Acres of Ground, than in ſome places he can one; there being much looſe Stone upon the Land, lying very convenient for making of dry Walls, or any other ſort of durable Fence. This Country *Wedneſday.*

abounds

abounds likewiſe with curious bold Creeks, (navigable for ſmall Craft) diſgorging themſelves into the main Rivers, that vent themſelves into the Ocean. Theſe Creeks are well ſtor'd with ſundry ſorts of Fiſh, and Fowl, and are very convenient for the Tranſportation of what Commodities this Place may produce. This Night, we had a great deal of Rain, with Thunder and Lightning.

Thurſday. Next Morning, it proving delicate Weather, three of us ſeparated ourſelves from the Horſes, and the reſt of the Company, and went directly for *Sapona* Town. That day, we paſs'd through a delicious Country, (none that I ever ſaw exceeds it.) We ſaw fine bladed Graſs, ſix Foot high, along the Banks of theſe pleaſant Rivulets: We paſs'd by the Sepulchres of ſeveral ſlain *Indians*. Coming, that day, about 30 Miles, we reach'd the fertile and pleaſant Banks of *Sapona* River, whereon ſtands the *Indian* Town and Fort. Nor could all *Europe* afford a pleaſanter Stream, were it inhabited by *Chriſtians*, and cultivated by ingenious Hands. Theſe *Indians* live in a clear Field, about a Mile ſquare, which they would have ſold me; becauſe I talked ſometimes of coming into thoſe Parts to live. This moſt pleaſant River may be ſomething broader than the *Thames* at *Kingſton*, keeping a continual pleaſant warbling Noiſe, with its reverberating on the bright Marble Rocks. It is beautified with a numerous Train of Swans, and other ſorts of Water-Fowl, not common, though extraordinary pleaſing to the Eye. The forward Spring welcom'd us with her innumerable Train of ſmall Choriſters, which inhabit thoſe fair Banks; the Hills redoubling, and adding Sweetneſs to their melodious Tunes by their ſhrill Echoes. One ſide of the River is hemm'd in with mountainy Ground, the other ſide proving as rich a Soil to the Eye of a knowing Perſon with us, as any this Weſtern World can afford. We took up our Quarters at the King's Cabin, who was a good Friend to the *Engliſh*, and had loſt one of his Eyes in their Vindication. Being upon his march towards the *Appallatche* Mountains, amongſt a Nation of *Indians* in their Way, there happen'd a Difference, while they were meaſuring of Gunpowder; and the Powder, by accident, taking fire, blew out one of this King's Eyes, and did a great deal more miſchief, upon the ſpot: Yet this *Sapona* King ſtood firmly to the *Engliſh* Man's Intereſt, with whom he was in Company, ſtill

ſiding

ſiding with him againſt the *Indians*. They were intended for the *South Sea*, but were too much fatigued by the vaſt Ridge of Mountains, tho' they hit the right Paſſage; it being no leſs than five days Journey through a Ledge of Rocky Hills, and ſandy Deſarts. And which is yet worſe, there is no Water, nor ſcarce a Bird to be ſeen, during your Paſſage over theſe barren Crags and Valleys. The *Sapona* River proves to be the *Weſt* Branch of *Cape-Fair*, or *Clarendon* River, whoſe Inlet, with other Advantages, makes it appear as noble a River to plant a Colony in, as any I have met withal.

The *Saponas* had (about 10 days before we came thither) taken Five Priſoners of the *Sinnagers* or *Jennitos*, a Sort of People that range ſeveral thouſands of Miles, making all Prey they lay their Hands on. Theſe are fear'd by all the ſavage Nations I ever was among, the Weſtward *Indians* dreading their Approach. They are all forted in, and keep continual Spies and Out-Guards for their better Security. Thoſe Captives they did intend to burn, few Priſoners of War eſcaping that Puniſhment. The Fire of Pitch-Pine being got ready, and a Feaſt appointed, which is ſolemnly kept at the time of their acting this Tragedy, the Sufferer has his Body ſtuck thick with Light-Wood-Splinters, which are lighted like ſo many Candles, the tortur'd Perſon dancing round a great Fire, till his Strength fails, and diſables him from making them any farther Paſtime. Moſt commonly, theſe Wretches behave themſelves (in the Midſt of their Tortures) with a great deal of Bravery and Reſolution, eſteeming it Satisfaction enough, to be aſſur'd, that the ſame Fate will befal ſome of their Tormentors, whenſoever they fall into the Hands of their Nation. More of this you will have in the other Sheets.

The *Toteros*, a neighbouring Nation, came down from the Weſtward Mountains, to the *Saponas*, deſiring them to give them thoſe Priſoners into their Hands, to the Intent they might ſend them back into their own Nation, being bound in Gratitude to be ſerviceable to the *Sinnagers*, ſince not long ago, thoſe Northern-*Indians* had taken ſome of the *Toteros* Priſoners, and done them no Harm, but treated them civilly whilſt among them, ſending them, with Safety, back to their own People, and affirming, that it would be the beſt Method to preſerve Peace on all Sides. At that, time theſe

Tote-

Toteros, *Saponas*, and the *Keyauwees*, 3 ſmall Nations, were going to live together, by which they thought they ſhould ſtrengthen themſelves, and become formidable to their Enemies. The Reaſons offer'd by the *Toteros* being heard, the *Sapona* King, with the Conſent of his Counſellors, deliver'd the *Sinnagers* up to the *Toteros*, to conduct them home.

Friday. *Friday* Morning, the old King having ſhew'd us 2 of his Horſes, that were as fat, as if they had belong'd to the *Dutch* Troopers, left us, and went to look after his Bever-Traps, there being abundance of thoſe amphibious Animals in this River, and the Creeks adjoining. Taken with the Pleaſantneſs of the Place, we walk'd along the River-ſide, where we found a very delightful Iſland, made by the River, and a Branch; there being ſeveral ſuch Plots of Ground environ'd with this Silver Stream, which are fit Paſtures for Sheep, and free from any offenſive Vermin. Nor can any thing be deſired by a contented Mind, as to a pleaſant Situation, but what may here be found; Every Step preſenting ſome new Object, which ſtill adds Invitation to the Traveller in theſe Parts. Our *Indian* King and his Wife entertain'd us very reſpectfully.

Saturday. Jan. 31. On *Saturday*, the *Indians* brought in ſome Swans, and Geeſe, which we had our Share of. One of their Doctors took me to his Cabin, and ſhew'd me a great Quantity of medicinal Drugs, the Produce of thoſe Parts; Relating their Qualities as to the Emunctories they work'd by, and what great Maladies he had heal'd by them. This Evening, came to us the Horſes, with the Remainder of our Company, their *Indian* Guide (who was a Youth of this Nation) having kill'd, in their Way, a very fat Doe, Part of which they brought to us.

Sunday. This day, the King ſent out all his able Hunters, to kill Game for a great Feaſt, that was to be kept at their Departure, from the Town, which they offer'd to ſell me for a ſmall matter. That Piece of Ground, with a little Trouble, would make an *Engliſhman* a moſt curious Settlement, containing above a Mile ſquare of rich Land. This Evening, came down ſome *Toteros*, tall, likely Men, having great Plenty of Buffelos, Elks, and Bears, with other ſort of Deer amongſt them, which ſtrong Food makes large, robuſt Bodies. Enquiring of them, if they never got any of the *Be-*

zoar

zoar Stone, and giving them a Deſcription how it was found, the *Indians* told me, they had great plenty of it; and ask'd me, What uſe I could make of it? I anſwer'd them, That the white Men us'd it in Phyſick, and that I would buy ſome of them, if they would get it againſt I came that way again. Thereupon, one of them pull'd out a Leather-Pouch, wherein was ſome of it in Powder; he was a notable Hunter, and affirm'd to me, That that Powder, blown into the Eyes, ſtrengthen'd the Sight and Brain exceedingly, that being the moſt common Uſe they made of it. I bought, for 2 or 3 Flints, a large Peach-Loaf, made up with a pleaſant ſort of Sced; and this did us a ſingular Kindneſs, in our Journey. Near the Town, within their clear'd Land, are ſeveral *Bagnios*, or Sweating-Houſes, made of Stone, in Shape like a large Oven. Theſe they make much Uſe of; eſpecially, for any Pains in the Joints, got by Cold, or Travelling. At Night, as we lay in our Beds, there aroſe the moſt violent N. W. Wind I ever knew. The firſt Puff blew down all the *Paliſadoes* that fortify'd the Town; and I thought it would have blown us all into the River, together with the Houſes. Our one-ey'd King, who pretends much to the Art of Conjuration, ran out in the moſt violent Hurry, and in the Middle of the Town, fell to his Necromantick Practice; tho' I thought he would have been blown away or kill'd, before the *Devil* and he could have exchang'd half a dozen Words; but in two Minutes, the Wind was ceas'd, and it became as great a Calm, as ever I knew in my Life. As I much admir'd at that ſudden Alteration, the old Man told me, the *Devil* was very angry, and had done thus, becauſe they had not put the *Sinnagers* to Death.

On *Monday* Morning, our whole Company, with the Horſes, ſet out from the *Sapona-Indian* Town, after having ſeen ſome of the Locuſt, which is gotten thereabouts, the ſame Sort that bears Honey. Going over ſeveral Creeks, very convenient for Water-Mills, about 8 Miles from the Town, we paſs'd over a very pretty River, call'd Rocky River, a fit Name, having a Ridge of high Mountains running from its Banks, to the Eaſtward; and diſgorging itſelf into *Sapona*-River; ſo that there is a moſt pleaſant and convenient Neck of Land, betwixt both Rivers, lying upon a Point, where many thouſand Acres may be fenced in, without *Monday.*

much Coſt or Labour. You can ſcarce go a Mile, without meeting with one of theſe ſmall ſwift Currents, here being no Swamps to be found, but pleaſant, dry Roads all over the Country. The Way that we went this day, was as full of Stones, as any which *Craven*, in the Weſt of *Yorkſhire*, could afford, and having nothing but *Moggiſons* on my Feet, I was ſo lam'd by this ſtony Way, that I thought I muſt have taken up ſome Stay in thoſe Parts. We went, this day, not above 15 or 20 Miles. After we had ſupp'd, and all lay down to ſleep, there came a Wolf cloſe to the Fire-ſide, where we lay. My Spaniel ſoon diſcover'd him, at which, one of our Company fir'd a Gun at the Beaſt; but, I believe, there was a Miſtake in the loading of it, for it did him no Harm. The Wolf ſtay'd till he had almoſt loaded again, but the Bitch making a great Noiſe, at laſt left us and went aſide. We had no ſooner laid down, but he approach'd us again, yet was more ſhy, ſo that we could not get a Shot at him.

Tueſday. Next day, we had 15 Miles farther to the *Keyauwees*. The Land is more mountainous, but extremely pleaſant, and an excellent Place for the breeding Sheep, Goats, and Horſes; or Mules, if the *Engliſh* were once brought to the Experience of the Uſefulneſs of thoſe Creatures. The Valleys are here very rich. At Noon, we paſs'd over ſuch another ſtony River, as that eight Miles from *Sapona*. This is call'd *Heighwaree*, and affords as good blue Stone for Mill-Stones, as that from *Cologn*, good Rags, ſome Hones, and large Pebbles, in great abundance, beſides Free-Stone of ſeveral Sorts, all very uſeful. I knew one of theſe Hones made uſe of by an Acquaintance of mine, and it prov'd rather better than any from *Old Spain*, or elſewhere. The Veins of Marble are very large and curious on this River, and the Banks thereof.

Five Miles from this River, to the N. W. ſtands the *Keyauwees* Town. They are fortify'd in, with wooden Puncheons, like *Sapona*, being a People much of the ſame Number. Nature hath ſo fortify'd this Town, with Mountains, that were it a Seat of War, it might eaſily be made impregnable; having large Corn-Fields joining to their Cabins, and a *Savanna* near the Town, at the Foot of theſe Mountains, that is capable of keeping ſome hundred Heads of Cattle. And all this environ'd round with very high Mountains, ſo that no hard Wind ever troubles theſe Inhabitants. Thoſe high Clifts

Clifts have no Graſs growing on them, and very few Trees, which are very ſhort, and ſtand at a great Diſtance one from another. The Earth is of a red Colour, and ſeems to me to be wholly deſign'd by Nature for the Production of Minerals, being of too hot a Quality, to ſuffer any Verdure upon its Surface. Theſe *Indians* make uſe of Lead-Ore, to paint their Faces withal, which they get in the neighbouring Mountains. As for the refining of Metals, the *Indians* are wholly ignorant of it, being content with the *Realgar*. But if it be my Chance, once more to viſit theſe Hilly Parts, I ſhall make a longer Stay amongſt them: For were a good Vein of Lead found out, and work'd by an ingenious Hand, it might be of no ſmall Advantage to the Undertaker, there being great Convenience for ſmelting, either by Bellows or Reverberation; and the Working of theſe Mines might diſcover ſome that are much richer.

At the Top of one of theſe Mountains, is a Cave that 100 Men may ſit very conveniently to dine in; whether natural, or artificial, I could not learn. There is a fine Bole between this Place, and the *Saps*. Theſe Valleys thus hemm'd in with Mountains, would (doubtleſs) prove a good place for propagating ſome ſort of Fruits, that our Eaſterly Winds commonly blaſt. The Vine could not miſs of thriving well here; but we of the Northern Climate are neither Artiſts, nor curious, in propagating that pleaſant and profitable Vegetable. Near the Town, is ſuch another Current, as *Heighwaree*. We being ſix in Company, divided ourſelves into Two Parties; and it was my Lot to be at the Houſe of *Keyauwees Jack*, who is King of that People. He is a *Congeree-Indian*, and ran away when he was a Boy. He got this Government by Marriage with the Queen; the Female Iſſue carrying the Heritage, for fear of Impoſtors; the Savages well knowing, how much Frailty poſſeſſes the *Indian* Women, betwixt the Garters and the Girdle.

The next day, having ſome occaſion to write, the *Indian* King, who ſaw me, believ'd that he could write as well as I. Whereupon, I wrote a Word, and gave it him to copy, which he did with more Exactneſs, than any *European* could have done, that was illiterate. It was ſo well, that he who could read mine, might have done the ſame by his. Afterwards, he took great Delight in making Fiſh-hooks of his *Wednesday.*

own Invention, which would have been a good Piece for an Antiquary to have puzzled his Brains withal, in tracing out the Characters of all the Oriental Tongues. He ſent for ſeveral *Indians* to his Cabin, to look at his Handy-work, and both he and they thought, I could read his Writing as well as I could my own. I had a Manual in my Pocket, that had King *David*'s Picture in it, in one of his private Retirements. The *Indian* ask'd me, Who that Figure repreſented? I told him, It was the Picture of a good King, that liv'd according to the Rules of Morality, doing to all as he would be done by, ordering all his Life to the Service of the Creator of all things; and being now above us all, in Heaven, with God Almighty, who had rewarded him with all the delightful Pleaſures imaginable in the other World, for his Obedience to him in this; I concluded, with telling them, that we received nothing here below, as Food, Raiment, *&c.* but what came from that Omnipotent Being. They liſtned to my Diſcourſe with a profound Silence, aſſuring me, that they believ'd what I ſaid to be true. No Man living will ever be able to make theſe *Heathens* ſenſible of the Happineſs of a future State, except he now and then mentions ſome lively carnal Repreſentation, which may quicken their Apprehenſions, and make them thirſt after ſuch a gainful Exchange; for, were the beſt Lecture that ever was preach'd by Man, given to an ignorant ſort of People, in a more learned Style, than their mean Capacities are able to underſtand, the Intent would prove ineffectual, and the Hearers would be left in a greater Labyrinth than their Teacher found them in. But diſpenſe the Precepts of our Faith according to the Pupil's Capacity, and there is nothing in our Religion, but what an indifferent Reaſon is, in ſome meaſure, able to comprehend; tho' a *New-England* Miniſter blames the *French* Jeſuits for this way of Proceeding, as being quite contrary to a true Chriſtian Practice, and affirms it to be no ready, or true Method, to eſtabliſh a lively Repreſentation of our Chriſtian Belief amongſt theſe Infidels.

All the *Indians* hereabouts carefully preſerve the Bones of the Fleſh they eat, and burn them, as being of Opinion, that if they omitted that Cuſtom, the Game would leave their Country, and they ſhould not be able to maintain themſelves by their Hunting. Moſt of theſe *Indians* wear Muſtachoes, or Whiskers, which is rare; by reaſon the *Indians* are a Peo-

ple

ple that commonly pull the Hair of their Faces, and other Parts, up by the Roots, and ſuffer none to grow. Here is plenty of Cheſnuts, which are rarely found in *Carolina*, and never near the Sea, or Salt-Water; tho' they are frequently in ſuch Places in *Virginia*.

At the other Houſe, where our Fellow-Travellers lay, they had provided a Diſh, in great Faſhion amongſt the *Indians*, which was Two young Fawns, taken out of the Doe's Bellies, and boil'd in the ſame ſlimy Bags Nature had plac'd them in, and one of the Country-Hares, ſtew'd with the Guts in her Belly, and her Skin with the Hair on. This new-faſhion'd Cookery wrought Abſtinence in our Fellow-Travellers, which I ſomewhat wonder'd at, becauſe one of them made nothing of eating *Allegators*, as heartily as if it had been Pork and Turneps. The *Indians* dreſs moſt things after the Wood-cock Faſhion, never taking the Guts out. At the Houſe we lay at, there was very good Entertainment of Veniſon, Turkies, and Bears; and which is cuſtomary amongſt the *Indians*, the Queen had a Daughter by a former Husband, who was the beautifulleſt *Indian* I ever ſaw, and had an Air of Majeſty with her, quite contrary to the general Carriage of the *Indians*. She was very kind to the *Engliſh*, during our Abode, as well as her Father and Mother.

Thurſday. This Morning, moſt of our Company having ſome Inclination to go ſtraight away for *Virginia*, when they left this Place; I and one more took our leaves of them, reſolving (with God's Leave) to ſee *North-Carolina*, one of the *Indians* ſetting us in our way. The reſt being indifferent which way they went, deſired us, by all means, to leave a Letter for them, at the *Achonechy*-Town. The *Indian* that put us in our Path, had been a Priſoner amongſt the *Sinnagers*; but had out-run them, although they had cut his Toes, and half his Feet away, which is a Practice common amongſt them. They firſt raiſe the Skin, then cut away half the Feet, and ſo wrap the Skin over the Stumps, and make a preſent Cure of the Wounds. This commonly diſables them from making their Eſcape, they being not ſo good Travellers as before, and the Impreſſion of their Half-Feet making it eaſy to trace them. However, this Fellow was got clear of them, but had little Heart to go far from home, and carry'd always a Caſe of Piſtols in his Girdle, beſides a Cutlaſs, and a Fuzee.

Leaving

Leaving the reſt of our Company at the *Indian*-Town, we travell'd, that day, about 20 Miles, in very cold, froſty Weather; and paſs'd over two pretty Rivers, ſomething bigger than *Heighvaree*, but not quite ſo ſtony. We took theſe two Rivers to make one of the Northward Branches of *Cape-Fair* River, but afterwards found our Miſtake.

Friday. The next day, we travell'd over very good Land, but full of Free-Stone, and Marble, which pinch'd our Feet ſeverely. We took up our Quarters in a ſort of *Savanna*-Ground, that had very few Trees in it. The Land was good, and had ſeveral Quarries of Stone, but not looſe, as the others us'd to be.

Saturday. Next Morning, we got our Breakfaſts of Parch'd Corn, having nothing but that to ſubſiſt on for above 100 Miles. All the Pine-Trees were vaniſh'd, for we had ſeen none for two days. We paſs'd through a delicate rich Soil this day; no great Hills, but pretty Riſings, and Levels, which made a beautiful Country. We likewiſe paſs'd over three Rivers this day; the firſt about the bigneſs of *Rocky* River, the other not much differing in Size. Then we made not the leaſt Queſtion, but we had paſs'd over the North-Weſt Branch of *Cape-Fair*, travelling that day above 30 Miles. We were much taken with the Fertility and Pleaſantneſs of the Neck of Land between theſe two Branches, and no leſs pleas'd, that we had paſs'd the River, which us'd to frighten Paſſengers from fording it. At laſt, determining to reſt on the other ſide of a Hill, which we ſaw before us; when we were on the Top thereof, there appear'd to us ſuch another delicious, rapid Stream, as that of *Sapona*, having large Stones, about the bigneſs of an ordinary Houſe, lying up and down the River. As the Wind blew very cold at N. W. and we were very weary, and hungry, the Swiftneſs of the Current gave us ſome cauſe to fear; but, at laſt, we concluded to venture over that Night. Accordingly, we ſtripp'd, and with great Difficulty, (by God's Aſſiſtance) got ſafe to the North-ſide of the famous *Hau*-River, by ſome called *Reatkin*; the *Indians* differing in the Names of Places, according to their ſeveral Nations. It is call'd *Hau*-River, from the *Siſſipahau Indians*, who dwell upon this Stream, which is one of the main Branches of *Cape-Fair*, there being rich Land enough to contain ſome Thouſands of Fa-

Families; for which Reaſon, I hope, in a ſhort time, it will be planted. This River is much ſuch another as *Sapona*; both ſeeming to run a vaſt way up the Country. Here is plenty of good Timber, and eſpecially, of a Scaly-bark'd Oak; And as there is Stone enough in both Rivers, and the Land is extraordinary Rich, no Man that will be content within the Bounds of Reaſon, can have any grounds to diſlike it. And they that are otherwiſe, are the beſt Neighbours, when fartheſt of.

Sunday. As ſoon as it was day, we ſet out for the *Achonechy* Town, it being, by Eſtimation, 20 Miles off, which, I believe, is pretty exact. We were got about half way, (meeting great Gangs of Turkies) when we ſaw, at a Diſtance, 30 loaded Horſes, coming on the Road, with four or five Men, on other Jades, driving them. We charg'd our Piece, and went up to them: Enquiring, whence they came from? They told us, from *Virginia*. The leading Man's Name was *Maſſey*, who was born about *Leeds* in *Yorkſhire*. He ask'd, from whence we came? We told him. Then he ask'd again, Whether we wanted any thing that he had? telling us, we ſhould be welcome to it. We accepted of Two Wheaten Biskets, and a little Ammunition. He adviſed us, by all means, to ſtrike down the Country for *Ronoack*, and not think of *Virginia*, becauſe of the *Sinnagers*, of whom they were afraid, tho' ſo well arm'd, and numerous. They perſuaded us alſo, to call upon one *Enoe Will*, as we went to *Adſhuſheer*, for that he would conduct us ſafe among the *Engliſh*, giving him the Character of a very faithful *Indian*, which we afterwards found true by Experience. The *Virginia*-Men asking our Opinion of the Country we were then in? we told them, it was a very pleaſant one. They were all of the ſame Opinion, and affirm'd, That they had never ſeen 20 Miles of ſuch extraordinary rich Land, lying all together, like that betwixt *Hau*-River and the *Achonechy* Town. Having taken our Leaves of each other, we ſet forward; and the Country, thro' which we paſs'd, was ſo delightful, that it gave us a great deal of Satisfaction. About Three a Clock, we reach'd the Town, and the *Indians* preſently brought us good fat Bear, and Veniſon, which was very acceptable at that time. Their Cabins were hung with a good ſort of Tapeſtry, as fat Bear, and barbakued or dried Veniſon; no *Indians* having greater Plenty

ty of Proviſions than theſe. The Savages do, indeed, ſtill poſſeſs the Flower of *Carolina*, the *Engliſh* enjoying only the Fag-end of that fine Country. We had not been in the Town 2 Hours, when *Enoe-Will* came into the King's Cabin; which was our Quarters. We ask'd him, if he would conduct us to the *Engliſh*, and what he would have for his Pains; he anſwer'd, he would go along with us, and for what he was to have, he left that to our Diſcretion.

Monday. The next Morning, we ſet out, with *Enoe-Will*, towards *Adſhuſheer*, leaving the *Virginia* Path, and ſtriking more to the Eaſtward, for *Ronoack*. Several *Indians* were in our Company belonging to *Will's* Nation, who are the *Shoccories*, mixt with the *Enoe-Indians*, and thoſe of the Nation of *Adſhuſheer*. *Enoe-Will* is their chief Man, and rules as far as the Banks of *Reatkin*. It was a ſad ſtony Way to *Adſhuſheer*. We went over a ſmall River by *Achonechy*, and in this 14 Miles, through ſeveral other Streams, which empty themſelves into the Branches of *Cape-Fear*. The ſtony Way made me quite lame; ſo that I was an Hour or two behind the reſt; but honeſt *Will* would not leave me, but bid me welcome when we came to his Houſe, treating us with hot Bread, and Bears-Oil; which is wholſome Food for Travellers. There runs a pretty Rivulet by this Town. Near the Plantation, I ſaw a prodigious overgrown Pine-Tree, having not ſeen any of that Sort of Timber for above 125 Miles: They brought us 2 Cocks, and pull'd their larger Feathers off, never plucking the leſſer, but ſingeing them off. I took one of theſe Fowls in my Hand, to make it cleaner than the *Indian* had, pulling out his Guts and Liver, which I laid in a Baſon; notwithſtanding which, he kept ſuch a Struggling for a conſiderable time, that I had much ado to hold him in my Hands. The *Indians* laugh'd at me, and told me, that *Enoe-Will* had taken a Cock of an *Indian* that was not at home, and the Fowl was deſign'd for another Uſe. I conjectur'd, that he was deſign'd for an Offering to their God, who, they ſay, hurts them, (which is the Devil.) In this Struggling, he bled afreſh, and there iſſued out of his Body more Blood than commonly ſuch Creatures afford. Notwithſtanding all this, we cook'd him, and eat him; and if he was deſign'd for him, cheated the Devil. The *Indians* keep many Cocks, but ſeldom above one Hen, uſing very often ſuch wicked Sacrifices, as I miſtruſted this Fowl was deſign'd for.

Our

Our Guide and Landlord *Enoe-Will* was of the beſt and moſt agreeable Temper that ever I met with in an *Indian*, being always ready to ſerve the *Engliſh*, not out of Gain, but real Affection; which makes him apprehenſive of being poiſon'd by ſome wicked *Indians*, and was therefore very earneſt with me, to promiſe him to revenge his Death, if it ſhould ſo happen. He brought ſome of his chief Men into his Cabin, and 2 of them having a Drum, and a Rattle, ſung by us, as we lay in Bed, and ſtruck up their Muſick to ſerenade and welcome us to their Town. And tho' at laſt, we fell aſleep, yet they continu'd their Conſort till Morning. Theſe *Indians* are fortify'd in, as the former, and are much addicted to a Sport they call *Chenco*, which is carry'd on with a Staff and a Bowl made of Stone, which they trundle upon a ſmooth Place, like a Bowling-Green, made for that Purpoſe, as I have mention'd before.

Next Morning, we ſet out, with our Guide, and ſeveral other *Indians*, who intended to go to the *Engliſh*, and buy Rum. We deſign'd for a Nation about 40 Miles from *Adſhuſheer*, call'd the Lower Quarter: The firſt Night, we lay in a rich *Perkoſon*, or low Ground, that was hard-by a Creek, and good dry Land. *Tueſday.*

The next day, we went over ſeveral Tracts of rich Land, but mix'd with Pines and other indifferent Soil. In our way, there ſtood a great Stone about the Size of a large Oven, and hollow; this the *Indians* took great Notice of, putting ſome Tobacco into the Concavity, and ſpitting after it. I ask'd them the Reaſon of their ſo doing, but they made me no Anſwer. In the Evening, we paſs'd over a pleaſant Rivulet, with a fine gravelly Bottom, having come over ſuch another that Morning. On the other ſide of this River, we found the *Indian* Town, which was a Parcel of naſty ſmoaky Holes, much like the *Waterrees*; their Town having a great Swamp running directly through the Middle thereof. The Land here begins to abate of its Height, and has ſome few Swamps. Moſt of theſe *Indians* have but one Eye; but what Miſchance or Quarrel has bereav'd them of the other I could not learn. They were not ſo free to us, as moſt of the other *Indians* had been; Victuals being ſomewhat ſcarce among them. However, we got enough to ſatisfy our Appetites. I ſaw, among theſe Men, very long Arrows, headed with Pieces of *Wedneſday.*

Glaſs, which they had broken from Bottles. They had ſhap'd them neatly, like the Head of a Dart; but which way they did it, I can't tell. We had not been at this Town above an Hour, when two of our Company, that had bought a Mare of *John Stewart*, came up to us, having receiv'd a Letter by one of *Will's Indians*, who was very cautious, and asked a great many Queſtions, to certifie him of the Perſon, e'er he would deliver the Letter. They had left the Trader, and one that came from *South-Carolina* with us, to go to *Virginia*; theſe Two being reſolved to go to *Carolina* with us.

Thurſday. This Day fell much Rain, ſo we ſtaid at the *Indian* Town.

Friday. This Morning, we ſet out early, being four *Engliſh*-Men, beſides ſeveral *Indians*. We went 10 Miles, and were then ſtopp'd by the Freſhes of *Enoe*-River, which had rais'd it ſo high, that we could not paſs over, till it was fallen. I enquir'd of my Guide, Where this River diſgorg'd it ſelf? He ſaid, It was *Enoe*-River, and run into a Place call'd *Enoe*-Bay, near his Country, which he left when he was a Boy; by which I perceiv'd, he was one of the *Cores* by Birth: This being a Branch of *Neus*-River.

Saturday. This Day, our Fellow-Traveller's Mare ran away from him; wherefore, *Will* went back as far as the lower Quarter, and brought her back.

Sunday. The next Day, early, came two *Tuskeruro Indians* to the other ſide of the River, but could not get over. They talk'd much to us, but we underſtood them not. In the Afternoon, *Will* came with the Mare, and had ſome Diſcourſe with them; they told him, The *Engliſh*, to whom he was going, were very wicked People; and, That they threatned the *Indians* for Hunting near their Plantations. Theſe Two Fellows were going among the *Schoccores* and *Achonechy Indians*, to ſell their Wooden Bowls and Ladles for Raw-Skins, which they make great Advantage of, hating that any of theſe Weſtward *Indians* ſhould have any Commerce with the *Engliſh*, which would prove a Hinderance to their Gains. Their Stories deterr'd an Old *Indian* and his Son, from going any farther; but *Will* told us, Nothing they had ſaid ſhould frighten him, he believing them to be a couple of Hog-ſtealers; and that the *Engliſh* only ſought Reſtitution of their Loſſes, by them; and that this was the only ground for their Report. *Will* had a Slave, a *Siſſipahaw-Indian* by Nation, who killed us ſeveral Turkies, and other Game, on which we feaſted.

Monday. This River is near as large as *Reatkin*; the South-ſide having curious Tracts of good Land, the Banks high, and Stone-Quarries. The *Tuſkeruros* being come to us, we ventur'd over the River, which we found to be a ſtrong Current, and the Water about Breaſt-high. However, we all got ſafe to the North-Shore, which is but poor, white, ſandy Land, and bears no Timber, but ſmall ſhrubby Oaks. We went about 10 Miles, and ſat down at the Falls of a large Creek, where lay mighty Rocks, the Water making a ſtrange Noiſe, as if a great many Wa-

ter-

ter-Mills were going at once. I take this to be the Falls of *News*-Creek, called by the *Indians*, *Wee quo Whom*. We lay here all Night. My Guide *Will* desiring to see the Book that I had about me, I lent it him; and as he soon found the Picture of King *David*, he asked me several Questions concerning the Book, and Picture, which I resolv'd him, and invited him to become a Christian. He made me a very sharp Reply, assuring me, That he lov'd the *English* extraordinary well, and did believe their Ways to be very good for those that had already practis'd them, and had been brought up therein; But as for himself, he was too much in Years to think of a Change, esteeming it not proper for Old People to admit of such an Alteration. However, he told me, If I would take his Son *Jack*, who was then about 14 Years of Age, and teach him to talk in that Book, and make Paper speak, which they call our Way of Writing, he would wholly resign him to my Tuition; telling me, he was of Opinion, I was very well affected to the *Indians*.

The next Morning, we set out early, and I perceiv'd that these *Indians* were in some fear of Enemies; for they had an Old Man with them, who was very cunning and circumspect, wheresoever he saw any Marks of Footing, or of any Fire that had been made; going out of his Way, very often, to look for these Marks. We went, this day, above 30 Miles, over a very level Country, and most Pine Land, yet intermix'd with some Quantities of Marble; a good Range for Cattel, though very indifferent for Swine. We had now lost our rapid Streams, and were come to slow, dead Waters, of a brown Colour, proceeding from the *Swamps*, much like the Sluices in *Holland*, where the Track-*Scoots* go along. In the Afternoon, we met two *Tuskeruros*, who told us, That there was a Company of Hunters not far of, and if we walk'd stoutly, we might reach them that Night. But *Will* and He that own'd the Mare, being gone before, and the Old *Indian* tired, we rested, that Night, in the Woods, making a good light Fire, Wood being very plentiful in these Parts. *Tuesday.*

Next Day, about 10 a Clock, we struck out of the Way, by the Advice of our Old *Indian*. We had not gone past two Miles, e'er we met with about 500 *Tuskeruros* in one Hunting-Quarter. They had made themselves Streets of Houses, built with Pine-Bark, not with round Tops, as they commonly use, but Ridge-Fashion, after the manner of most other *Indians*. We got nothing amongst them but Corn, Flesh being not plentiful, by reason of the great Number of their People. For tho' they are expert Hunters, yet they are too populous for one Range; which makes Venison very scarce to what it is amongst other *Indians*, that are fewer; no Savages living so well for Plenty, as those near the Sea. I saw, amongst these, a Hump-back'd *Indian*, which was the only crooked one I ever met withal. About two a Clock, we reach'd one of their Towns, in which there was no body left, but an Old Woman or two; the rest being gone to *Wednesday.*

their

their Hunting-Quarters. We could find no Proviſion at that Place. We had a *Tuskerura* that came in company with us, from the lower Quarter, who took us to his Cabin, and gave us what it afforded, which was Corn-meat.

Thurſday. This Day, we paſs'd through ſeveral Swamps, and going not above a dozen Miles, came to a Cabin, the Maſter whereof us'd to trade amongſt the *Engliſh*. He told us, If we would ſtay Two Nights, he would conduct us ſafe to them, himſelf deſigning, at that time, to go and fetch ſome Rum; ſo we reſolved to tarry for his Company. During our Stay, there happen'd to be a Young Woman troubled with Fits. The Doctor who was ſent for to aſſiſt her, laid her on her Belly, and made a ſmall Inciſion with Rattle-Snake-Teeth; then laying his Mouth to the Place, he ſuck'd out near a Quart of black conglutinated Blood, and *Serum*. Our Landlord gave us the Tail of a Bever, which was a *Friday.* choice Food. There happen'd alſo to be a Burial of one of their Dead, which Ceremony is much the ſame with that of the *Santees*, who make a great Feaſt at the Interment of their Corps. The ſmall Runs of Water hereabout, afford great Plenty of Craw-Fiſh, full as large as thoſe in *England*, and nothing inferior in Goodneſs.

Saturday. *Saturday* Morning, our Patron, with *Enoe Will*, and his Servant, ſet out with us, for the *Engliſh*. In the Afternoon, we ferried over a River, (in a *Canoe*) called by the *Indians*, *Chattookau*, which is the N. W. Branch of *Neus*-River. We lay in the *Swamp*, where ſome *Indians* invited us to go to their Quarters, which ſome of our Company accepted, but got nothing extraordinary, except a dozen Miles March out of their Way: The Country here is very thick of *Indian* Towns and Plantations.

Sunday. We were forced to march, this day, for Want of Proviſions. About 10 a Clock, we met an *Indian* that had got a parcel of Shad-Fiſh ready barbaku'd. We bought 24 of them, for a dreſs'd Doe-Skin, and ſo went on, through many *Swamps*, finding, this day, the long ragged Moſs on the Trees, which we had not ſeen for above 600 Miles. In the Afternoon, we came upon the Banks of *Pampticough*, about 20 Miles above the *Engliſh* Plantations by Water, though not ſo far by Land. The *Indian* found a *Canoe*, which he had hidden, in which we all got over, and went about ſix Miles farther. We lay, that Night, under two or three Pieces of Bark, at the Foot of a large Oak. There fell abundance of Snow and Rain in the Night, with much Thunder and Lightning.

Monday. Next Day, it clear'd up, and it being about 12 Miles to the *Engliſh*, about half-way we paſſed over a deep Creek, and came ſafe to Mr. *Richard Smith*'s, of *Pampticough*-River, in *North-Carolina*; where being well receiv'd by the Inhabitants, and pleas'd with the Goodneſs of the Country, we all reſolv'd to continue.

F I N I S.

arc-
ia *bor*
unded.

RPJCB

PART OF NORTH AMERICA
PART OF VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
THE WESTERN OCEAN
Chisapeak Bay
Cape Henry
Norfolk Towne
Table of Pines
Currituc
Gingite
Rouoak
Cow I.
Body I
Dugs
Chuckinnacomoc
Cape Hatteras
Hatteras Inlet
Hatteras Sholes
Ocacok
Drum Inlet
Cape Lookout
Topsail Inlet
Rogue Inlet
Sampee Bay
Cape Fair
Charles Towne
Lockwood Folly
the Sound
Ind. Towne
Albemarle County
Bath County
Clarendon County
Craven County
Berkley County
Colleton County
Champion Land
Lower Quarter Ind.
no poor Land here
Rich Land
Marble Rocks & Free stone
Esaw
Hilly Land
Congerree
Iron Mines
Savanna
Indian Hutts
Stony land
Tuskeraro
Wacon
Aconeche Isl.
Chattoka
A Plesant Vally with a Lake
French Plantations
Santee R.
Cooper R.
Ashly R.
Charles Town
Cambahe R.
Edelano Island
Colleton Inlet
Port Royal
Hiltons Head
Sapola R.
Wallea R.
S. Catalina
Sapola
Wallea
Cape Cartaret
R. May
S. Matheo R.
St. Augustin
MAGNUM SIGILLUM CAROLINÆ DOMINORUM.
DOMITUS CULTORIBUS ORBIS
To His Excellency
WILLIAM LORD CRAVEN Palatine;
The most Noble HENRY DUKE OF BEAUFORT;
The Right Honoble. JOHN LORD CARTERET;
The Honoble. MAURICE ASHLEY Esq.;
Sr. JOHN COLLETON: BARONET;
JOHN DANSON Esq.;
And the rest of the True and Absolute LORDS PROPRIETORS of CAROLINA in AMERICA
This Map is Humbly Dedicated
By Ioh. Lawson
Surveyor General of North Carolina.
1709.
A Scale of 60 British Mile.
10 20 30 40 60
John Senex sculpsit

A DESCRIPTION OF *North-CAROLINA.*

THE Province of *Carolina* is separated from *Virginia* by a due West-Line, which begins at *Currituck*-Inlet, in 36 Degrees, 30 Minutes, of Northern-Latitude, and extends indefinitely to the Westward, and thence to the Southward, as far as 29 Degrees; which is a vast Tract of Sea-Coast. But having already treated, as far as is necessary, concerning South-*Carolina*, I shall confine myself, in the ensuing Sheets, to give my Reader a Description of that Part of the Country only, which lies betwixt *Currituck* and *Cape-Fair*, and is almost 34 Deg. North. And this is commonly call'd *North Carolina*. Carolina *how bounded.*

This Part of *Carolina* is faced with a Chain of Sand-Banks, which defends it from the Violence and Insults of the *Atlantick* Ocean; by which Barrier, a vast Sound is hemm'd in, which fronts the Mouths of the Navigable and Pleasant Rivers of this Fertile Country, and into which they disgorge themselves. Thro' the same are Inlets of several Depths of Water. Some of their Channels admit only of Sloops, Brigantines, small Barks, and Ketches; and such are *Currituck*, *Ronoak*, and up the Sound above *Hatteras*: Whilst others can receive Ships of Burden, as *Ocacock*, *Topsail*-Inlet, and *Cape-Fair*; as appears by my Chart. *Inlets.*

First Colony of Carolina. The first Discovery and Settlement of this Country was by the Procurement of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in Conjunction with some publick-spirited Gentlemen of that Age, under the Protection of Queen *Elizabeth*; for which Reason it was then named *Virginia*, being begun on that Part called *Ronoak*-Island, where the Ruins of a Fort are to be seen at this day, as well as some old *English* Coins which have been lately found; and a Brass-Gun, a Powder-Horn, and one small Quarter deck-Gun, made of Iron Staves, and hoop'd with the same Metal; which Method of making Guns might very probably be made use of in those Days, for the Convenience of Infant-Colonies.

Hatteras Indians. A farther Confirmation of this we have from the *Hatteras Indians*, who either then lived on *Ronoak*-Island, or much frequented it. These tell us, that several of their Ancestors were white People, and could talk in a Book, as we do; the Truth of which is confirm'd by gray Eyes being found frequently amongst these *Indians*, and no others. They value themselves extremely for their Affinity to the *English*, and are ready to do them all friendly Offices. It is probable, that this Settlement miscarry'd for want of timely Supplies from *England*; or thro' the Treachery of the Natives, for we may reasonably suppose that the *English* were forced to cohabit with them, for Relief and Conversation; and that in process of Time, they conform'd themselves to the Manners of their *Indian* Relations. And thus we see, how apt Humane Nature is to degenerate.

Sir Walter Raleigh's *Ship.* I cannot forbear inserting here, a pleasant Story that passes for an unconteſted Truth amongst the Inhabitants of this Place; which is, that the Ship which brought the first Colonies, does often appear amongst them, under Sail, in a gallant Posture, which they call Sir *Walter Raleigh*'s Ship; And the truth of this has been affirm'd to me, by Men of the best Credit in the Country.

Second Settlement of North-Carolina. A second Settlement of this Country was made about fifty Years ago, in that part we now call *Albemarl*-County, and chiefly in *Chowon* Precinct, by several substantial Planters, from *Virginia*, and other Plantations; Who finding mild Winters, and a fertile Soil, beyond Expectation, producing every thing that was planted, to a prodigious Increase; their Cattle, Horses, Sheep, and Swine, breeding very

very fast, and passing the Winter, without any Assistance from the Planter; so that every thing seem'd to come by Nature, the Husbandman living almost void of Care, and free from those Fatigues which are absolutely requisite in Winter-Countries, for providing Fodder and other Necessaries; these Encouragements induc'd them to stand their Ground, altho' but a handful of People, seated at great Distances one from another, and amidst a vast number of *Indians* of different Nations, who were then in *Carolina*. Nevertheless, I say, the Fame of this new-discover'd Summer-Country spread thro' the neighbouring Colonies, and, in a few Years, drew a considerable Number of Families thereto, who all found Land enough to settle themselves in, (had they been many Thousands more) and that which was very good and commodiously seated, both for Profit and Pleasure. And indeed, most of the Plantations in *Carolina* naturally enjoy a noble Prospect of large and spacious Rivers, pleasant Savanna's, and fine Meadows, with their green Liveries, interwoven with beautiful Flowers, of most glorious Colours, which the several Seasons afford; hedg'd in with pleasant Groves of the ever-famous Tulip-tree, the stately Laurel, and Bays, equalizing the Oak in Bigness and Growth; Myrtles, Jessamines, Wood-bines, Honysuckles, and several other fragrant Vines and Ever-greens, whose aspiring Branches shadow and interweave themselves with the loftiest Timbers, yielding a pleasant Prospect, Shade and Smell, proper Habitations for the Sweet-singing-Birds, that melodiously entertain such as travel thro' the Woods of *Carolina*.

Pleasantness of Carolina.

The Planters possessing all these Blessings, and the Produce of great Quantities of Wheat and *Indian* Corn, in which this Country is very fruitful, as likewise in Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Deer-Skins, and Furs; for these Commodities the *New-England*-Men and *Bermudians* visited *Carolina* in their Barks and Sloops, and carry'd out what they made, bringing them, in Exchange, Rum, Sugar, Salt, Molosses, and some wearing Apparel, tho' the last at very extravagant Prices.

As the Land is very fruitful, so are the Planters kind and hospitable to all that come to visit them; there being very few Housekeepers, but what live very nobly, and give away more Provisions to Coasters and Guests who

come to see them, than they expend amongst their own Families.

Of the Inlets and Havens of this Country.

Currituck *Inlet.* The Bar of *Currituck* being the Northermost of this Country, presents itself first to be treated of. It lies in 36 deg. 30 min. and the Course over is S. W. by W. having not above seven or eight Foot on the Bar, tho' a good Harbour, when you are over, where you may ride safe, and deep enough; but this Part of the Sound is so full of Shoals, as not to suffer any thing to trade thro' it, that draws above three Foot Water, which renders it very incommodious. However, this affects but some part of the Country, and may be easily remedied, by carrying their Produce, in small Craft, down to the Vessels, which ride near the Inlet.

Ronoak *Inlet.* *Ronoak* Inlet has Ten Foot Water; the Course over the Bar is almost W. which leads you thro' the best of the Channel. This Bar, as well as *Currituck*, often shifts by the Violence of the N. E. Storms, both lying expos'd to those Winds. Notwithstanding which, a considerable Trade might be carry'd on, provided there was a Pilot to bring them in; for it lies convenient for a large Part of this Colony, whose Product would very easily allow of that Charge; Lat. 35 deg. 50 min.

Hatteras *Inlet.* The Inlet of *Hatteras* lies to the Westward of the Cape, round which is an excellent Harbour. When the Wind blows hard at N. or N. E. if you keep a small League from the Cape-Point, you will have 3, 4, and 5 Fathom, the outermost Shoals lying about 7 or 8 Leagues from Shoar. As you come into the Inlet, keep close to the South Breakers, till you are over the Bar, where you will have two Fathom at Low-Water. You may come to an Anchor in two Fathom and a Half when you are over, then steer over close aboard the North Shoar, where is four Fathom, close to a Point of Marsh; then steer up the Sound a long League, till you bring the North Cape of the Inlet to bear S. S. E. half E. then steer W. N. W. the East-point of Bluff-Land at *Hatteras* bearing E. N. E. the Southermost large Hammock towards *Ocacock*, bearing S. S. W. half S. then you are in the Sound, over the Bar of Sand, whereon is but 6 Foot Water;

Water; then your Course to *Pampticough* is almost West. It flows on these three Bars S. E. by E. ½ E. about Eight of the Clock, unless there is a hard Gale of Wind at N. E. which will make it flow two hours longer; but as soon as the Wind is down, the Tides will have their natural Course: A hard Gale at N. or N. W. will make the Water ebb sometimes 24 hours, but still the Tide will ebb and flow, tho' not seen by the turning thereof, but may be seen by the Rising of the Water, and Falling of the same, Lat. 35° 20″.

Ocacock is the best Inlet and Harbour yet in this Country; and has 13 Foot at Low-water upon the Bar. There are two Channels; one is but narrow, and lies close aboard the South Cape; the other in the Middle, *viz.* between the Middle Ground, and the South Shoar, and is above half a Mile wide. The Bar itself is but half a Cable's Length over, and then you are in 7 or 8 Fathom Water; a good Harbour. The Course into the Sound is N. N. W. At High-water, and Neap-tides, here is 18 Foot Water. It lies S. W. from *Hatteras* Inlet. Lat. 35° 8″. Ocacock *Inlet.*

Topsail Inlet is above two Leagues to the Westward of *Cape Look-out.* You have a fair Channel over the Bar, and two Fathom thereon, and a good Harbour in five or six Fathom to come to an Anchor. Your Course over this Bar is almost N. W. Lat. 34° 44″. Topsail *Inlet.*

As for the Inlet and River of *Cape Fair*, I cannot give you a better Information thereof, than has been already deliver'd by the Gentlemen, who were sent on purpose, from *Barbados*, to make a Discovery of that River, in the Year 1663. which is thus. Cape Fair *Inlet and River.*

From *Tuesday* the 29th of *September*, to *Friday* the 2d of *October*, we rang'd along the Shoar from Lat. 32 deg. 20 min. to Lat. 33 deg. 11 min. but could discern no Entrance for our Ship; after we had pass'd to the Northward of 32 deg. 40 min. On *Saturday*, *Octob.* 3. a violent Storm overtook us, the Wind between North and East; which Easterly Winds and Foul Weather continu'd till *Monday* the 12th; by reason of which Storms and Foul Weather, we were forced to get off to Sea, to secure Ourselves and Ship, and were driven by the Rapidity of a strong Current to Cape *Hatteras* in Lat. 35 deg. 30 min. On *Monday* the 12th afore-

ſaid, we came to an Anchor in ſeven Fathom at *Cape-Fair* Road, and took the Meridian Altitude of the Sun, and were in Latitude 33 deg. 43 min. the Wind continuing ſtill eaſterly, and foul Weather, till *Thurſday* the 15th; and on *Friday* the 16th, the Wind being at N. W. we weigh'd and ſail'd up *Cape-Fair*-River, ſome 4 or 5 Leagues, and came to an Anchor in 6 or 7 Fathom, at which time ſeveral *Indians* came on board, and brought us great Store of freſh Fiſh, large Mullets, young Baſs, Shads, and ſeveral other Sorts of very good well-taſted Fiſh. On *Saturday* the 17th, we went down to the *Cape*, to ſee the *Engliſh* Cattle, but could not find 'em, tho' we rounded the *Cape*: And having an *Indian* Guide with us, here we rode till *Oct.* 24. The Wind being againſt us, we could not go up the River with our Ship; but went on ſhoar, and view'd the Land of thoſe Quarters. On *Saturday*, we weigh'd, and ſail'd up the River ſome 4 Leagues, or thereabouts. *Sunday* the 25th, we weigh'd again, and row'd up the River, it being calm, and got up ſome 14 Leagues from the Harbour's Mouth, where we mor'd our Ship. On *Monday Oct.* the 26th, we went down with the Yawl, to *Necoes*, an *Indian* Plantation, and view'd the Land there. On *Tueſday* the 27th, we row'd up the main River, with our Long-Boat, and 12 Men, ſome 10 Leagues, or thereabouts. On *Wedneſday* the 28th, we row'd up about 8 or 10 Leagues more. *Thurſday* the 29th, was foul Weather, with much Rain and Wind, which forc'd us to make Huts, and lie ſtill. *Friday* the 30th, we proceeded up the main River, 7 or 8 Leagues. *Saturday* the 31ſt, we got up 3 or 4 Leagues more, and came to a Tree that lay croſs the River; but becauſe our Proviſions were almoſt ſpent, we proceeded no farther, but return'd downward before Night, and on *Monday* the 2d of *November*, we came aboard our Ship. *Tueſday* the 3d, we lay ſtill, to refreſh ourſelves. On *Wedneſday* the 4th, we went 5 or 6 Leagues up the River, to ſearch a Branch that run out of the main River towards the N. W. In which Branch we went up 5 or 6 Leagues; but not liking the Land, return'd on board that Night about Midnight, and call'd that Place *Swampy-Branch*. *Thurſday*, *November* the 5th, we ſtay'd aboard. On *Friday* the 6th, we went up *Greens-River*, the Mouth of it being againſt the Place at which rode our Ship. On *Saturday* the 7th, we proceeded up the ſaid River, ſome

ſome 14 or 15 Leagues in all, and found it ended in ſeveral ſmall Branches; The Land, for the moſt part, being marſhy and Swamps, we return'd towards our Ship, and got aboard it in the Night. *Sunday November* the 8th, we lay ſtill, and on *Monday* the 9th, went again up the main River, being well ſtock'd with Proviſions, and all things neceſſary, and proceeded upwards till *Thurſday* noon, the 12th, at which time we came to a Place, where were two Iſlands in the Middle of the River; and by reaſon of the Crookedneſs of the River at that Place, ſeveral Trees lay croſs both Branches, which ſtop'd the Paſſage of each Branch, ſo that we could proceed no farther with our Boat; but went up the River ſide by Land, ſome 3 or 4 Miles, and found the River wider and wider. So we return'd, leaving it, as far as we could ſee up a long Reach, running N. E. we judging ourſelves near fifty Leagues North from the River's Mouth. In our Return, we view'd the Land on both Sides the River, and found as good Tracts of dry, well-wooded, pleaſant, and delightful Ground, as we have ſeen any where in the World, with abundance of long thick Graſs on it, the Land being very level, with ſteep Banks on both Sides the River, and in ſome Places very high, the Woods ſtor'd every where, with great Numbers of Deer and Turkies, we never going on Shoar, but we ſaw of each Sort; as alſo great Store of Partridges, Cranes, and Conies, in ſeveral Places; we likewiſe heard ſeveral Wolves howling in the Woods, and ſaw where they had torn a Deer in Pieces. Alſo in the River we ſaw great Store of Ducks, Teal, Widgeon; and in the Woods, great Flocks of Parrakeeto's. The Timber that the Woods afford, for the moſt part, conſiſts of Oaks of four or five Sorts, all differing in Leaves, but each bearing very good Acorns. We meaſur'd many of the Oaks in ſeveral Places, which we found to be, in Bigneſs, ſome Two, ſome Three, and others almoſt Four Fathom in Height, before you come to Boughs or Limbs; forty, fifty, ſixty Foot, and ſome more; and thoſe Oaks very common in the upper Parts of both Rivers; alſo a very tall large Tree of great Bigneſs, which ſome call *Cyprus*, the right Name we know not, growing in Swamps. Likewiſe Walnut, Birch, Beech, Maple, Aſh, Bay, Willow, Alder, and Holly; and in the lowermoſt Parts innumerable Pines, tall and good for Boards or Maſts, grow-

growing, for the moſt part, in barren and ſandy, but in ſome Places up the River, in good Ground, being mixt amongſt Oaks and other Timbers. We ſaw Mulberry-Trees, Multitudes of Grape-Vines, and ſome Grapes which we eat of. We found a very large and good Tract of Land, on the N. W. Side of the River, thin of Timber, except here and there a very great Oak, and full of Graſs, commonly as high as a Man's Middle, and in many Places to his Shoulders, where we ſaw many Deer, and Turkies; one Deer having very large Horns, and great Body, therefore call'd it *Stag-Park*. It being a very pleaſant and delightful Place, we travell'd in it ſeveral Miles, but ſaw no End thereof. So we return'd to our Boat, and proceeded down the River, and came to another Place, ſome twenty five Leagues from the River's Mouth on the ſame Side, where we found a Place, no leſs delightful than the former; and as far as we could judge, both Tracts came into one. This lower Place we call'd *Rocky Point*, becauſe we found many Rocks and Stones, of ſeveral Sizes, upon the Land, which is not common. We ſent our Boat down the River before us; ourſelves travelling by Land, many Miles. Indeed we were ſo much taken with the Pleaſantneſs of the Country, that we travell'd into the Woods too far to recover our Boat and Company that Night. The next day being *Sunday*, we got to our Boat; and on *Monday* the 16th of *November*, proceeded down to a Place on the Eaſt-Side of the River, ſome 23 Leagues from the Harbour's Mouth, which we call'd *Turky-Quarters*, becauſe we kill'd ſeveral Turkies thereabouts; we view'd the Land there, and found ſome Tracts of good Ground, and high, facing upon the River about one Mile inward, but backwards ſome two Miles, all Pine Land, but good Paſture Ground: We return'd to our Boat, and proceeded down ſome 2 or 3 Leagues, where we had formerly view'd, and found it a Tract of as good Land, as any we have ſeen, and had as good Timber on it. The Banks on the River being high, therefore we call'd it *High-Land-Point*. Having view'd that, we proceeded down the River, going on Shoar in ſeveral Places on both Sides, it being generally large Marſhes, and many of them dry, that they may more fitly be call'd Meadows. The Wood-Land againſt them is, for the moſt part, Pine, and in ſome Places as barren, as ever we ſaw Land, but in other Places

good

good Paſture-Ground. On *Tueſday*, *November* the 17th, we got aboard our Ship, riding againſt the Mouth of *Green*'s River, where our Men were providing Wood, and fitting the Ship for the Sea: In the interim, we took a View of the Country on both ſides of the River there, finding ſome good Land, but more bad, and the beſt not comparable to that above. *Friday* the 20th was foul Weather; yet in the Afternoon we weigh'd, went down the River about two Leagues, and came to an Anchor againſt the Mouth of *Hilton*'s River, and took a View of the Land there on both ſides, which appear'd to us much like that at *Green*'s River. *Monday* the 23d, we went, with our Long-Boat well victuall'd and mann'd, up *Hilton*'s River; and when we came three Leagues, or thereabouts, up the ſame, we found this and *Green*'s River to come into one, and ſo continu'd for four or five Leagues, which makes a great Iſland betwixt them. We proceeded ſtill up the River, till they parted again, keeping up *Hilton*'s River on the Larboard ſide, and follow'd the ſaid River five or ſix Leagues farther, where we found another large Branch of *Green*'s River to come into *Hilton*'s, which makes another great Iſland. On the Starboard ſide going up, we proceeded ſtill up the River ſome four Leagues, and return'd, taking a View of the Land on both ſides, and then judg'd ourſelves to be from our Ship ſome 18 Leagues W. and by N. One League below this Place, came four *Indians* in a Canoe to us, and ſold us ſeveral Baskets of Acorns, which we ſatisfy'd them for, and ſo left them; but one of them follow'd us on the Shoar ſome two or three Miles, till he came on the Top of a high Bank, facing on the River; and as we row'd underneath it, the Fellow ſhot an Arrow at us, which very narrowly miſs'd one of our Men, and ſtuck in the upper edge of the Boat; but broke in pieces, leaving the Head behind. Hereupon, we preſently made to the Shoar, and went all up the Bank (except Four to guide the Boat) to look for the *Indian*, but could not find him: At laſt, we heard ſome ſing, farther in the Woods, which we look'd upon as a Challenge to us, to come and fight them. We went towards them with all Speed; but before we came in Sight of them, heard two Guns go off from our Boat; whereupon we retreated, as faſt as we could, to ſecure our Boat and Men. When we

came to them, we found all well, and demanded the Reaſon of their firing the Guns: They told us, that an *Indian* came creeping along the Bank, as they ſuppos'd, to ſhoot at them; and therefore they ſhot at him at a great diſtance, with ſmall Shot, but thought they did him no Hurt; for they ſaw him run away. Preſently after our Return to the Boat, and while we were thus talking, came two *Indians* to us, with their Bows and Arrows, crying *Bonny*, *Bonny*. We took their Bows and Arrows from them, and gave them Beads, to their Content; then we led them, by the Hand, to the Boat, and ſhew'd them the Arrow-head ſticking in her Side, and related to them the whole Paſſage; which when they underſtood, both of them ſhew'd a great Concern, and ſignify'd to us, by Signs, that they knew nothing of it; ſo we let them go, and mark'd a Tree on the Top of the Bank, calling the Place *Mount-Skerry*. We look'd up the River, as far as we could diſcern, and ſaw that it widen'd, and came running directly down the Country: So we return'd, viewing the Land on both ſides the River, and finding the Banks ſteep in ſome places, but very high in others. The Bank-ſides are generally Clay, and as ſome of our Company did affirm, ſome Marl. The Land and Timber up this River is no way inferiour to the beſt in the other, which we call the main River. So far as we could diſcern, this ſeem'd as fair, if not fairer, than the former, and we think runs farther into the Country, becauſe a ſtrong Current comes down, and a great deal more Drift-Wood. But, to return to the Buſineſs of the Land and Timber: We ſaw ſeveral Plots of Ground clear'd by the *Indians*, after their weak manner, compaſs'd round with great Timber Trees, which they are no-wiſe able to fell, and ſo keep the Sun from Corn-Fields very much; yet nevertheleſs, we ſaw as large Corn-ſtalks, or larger, than we have ſeen any where elſe: So we proceeded down the River, till we found the Canoe the *Indian* was in, who ſhot at us. In the Morning, we went on Shoar, and cut the ſame in pieces. The *Indians* perceiving us coming towards them, ran away. Going to his Hutt, we pull'd it down, broke his Pots, Platters, and Spoons, tore the Deer-Skins and Matts in pieces, and took away a Basket of Acorns; and afterwards proceeded down the River 2 Leagues,

or

or thereabouts, and came to another Place of *Indians*, bought Acorns and ſome Corn of them, and went downwards 2 Leagues more. At laſt, eſpying an *Indian* peeping over a high Bank, we held up a Gun at him; and calling to him, *Skerry*, preſently ſeveral *Indians* came in Sight of us, and made great Signs of Friendſhip, ſaying *Bonny*, *Bonny*. Then running before us, they endeavour'd to perſuade us to come on ſhoar; but we anſwer'd them with ſtern Countenances, and call'd out, *Skerry*, taking up our Guns, and threatning to ſhoot at them, but they ſtill cry'd *Bonny*, *Bonny*: And when they ſaw they could not prevail, nor perſuade us to come on ſhoar, two of them came off to us in a Canoe, one paddling with a great Cane, the other with his Hand. As ſoon as they overtook us, they laid hold of our Boat, ſweating and blowing, and told us, it was *Bonny* on ſhoar, and at laſt perſuaded us to go on ſhoar with them. As ſoon as we landed, ſeveral *Indians*, to the Number of near 40 luſty Men, came to us, all in a great Sweat, and told us *Bonny*: We ſhew'd 'em the Arrow-Head in the Boat-Side, and a Piece of the Canoe we had cut in Pieces: Whereupon, the chief Man amongſt them made a long Speech, threw Beads into our Boat, which is a Sign of great Love and Friendſhip, and gave us to underſtand, that when he heard of the Affront which we had receiv'd, it caus'd him to cry; and that he and his Men were come to make Peace with us, aſſuring us, by Signs, that they would tye the Arms, and cut off the Head, of the Fellow who had done us that Wrong; And for a farther Teſtimony of their Love and Good-Will towards us, they preſented us with two very handſome, proper, young *Indian* Women, the talleſt that ever we ſaw in this Country; which we ſuppos'd to be the King's Daughters, or Perſons of Diſtinction amongſt them. Thoſe young Women were ſo ready to come into our Boat; that one of them crowded in, and would hardly be perſuaded to go out again. We preſented the King with a Hatchet and ſeveral Beads, and made Preſents of Beads alſo to the young Women, the chief Men, and the reſt of the *Indians*, as far as our Beads would go. They promis'd us, in four Days, to come on board our Ship, and ſo departed from us. When we left the Place, which was ſoon after, we call'd it *Mount-Bonny*, becauſe we had there concluded a firm Peace. Proceeding down the River 2 or 3 Leagues farther, we came to a Place where were 9 or 10 Ca-

noes all together. We went aſhoar there, and found ſeveral *Indians*; but moſt of them were the ſame which had made Peace with us before. We ſtaid very little at that Place, but went directly down the River, and came to our Ship, before day. *Thurſday* the 26th of *November*, the Wind being at South, we could not go down to the River's Mouth; but on *Friday* the 27th, we weigh'd at the Mouth of *Hilton*'s River, and got down a League towards the Harbour's Mouth. On *Sunday* the 29th, we got down to *Crane-Iſland*, which is 4 Leagues or thereabouts, above the Entrance of the Harbour's Mouth. On *Tueſday* the 1ſt of *December*, we made a Purchaſe of the River and Land of *Cape-Fair*, of *Wat-Cooſa*, and ſuch other *Indians*, as appear'd to us to be the chief of thoſe Parts. They brought us Store of freſh Fiſh aboard, as Mullets, Shads, and other ſorts very good. This River is all freſh Water, fit to drink. Some 8 Leagues within the Mouth, the Tide runs up about 35 Leagues, but ſtops and riſes a great deal farther up. It flows at the Harbour's Mouth, S. E. and N. W. 6 Foot at Neap-Tides, and 8 Foot at Spring-Tides. The Channel on the Eaſt ſide, by the *Cape*-Shoar, is the beſt, and lies cloſe aboard the *Cape*-Land, being 3 Fathoms at high Water, in the ſhalloweſt Place in the Channel, juſt at the Entrance; But as ſoon as you are paſt that Place, half a Cables Length inward, you have 6 or 7 Fathoms, a fair turning Channel into the River, and ſo continuing 5 or 6 Leagues upwards. Afterwards the Channel is more difficult, in ſome Places 6 or 7 Fathoms, in others 4 or 5, and in others but 9 or 10 Foot, eſpecially where the River is broad. When the River comes to part, and grows narrow, there it is all Channel from ſide to ſide, in moſt Places; tho' in ſome you ſhall have 5, 6, or 7 Fathoms, but generally 2 or 3, Sand and Oaze. We view'd the *Cape*-Land, and judg'd it to be little worth, the Woods of it being ſhrubby and low, and the Land ſandy and barren; in ſome Places Graſs and Ruſhes, in others nothing but clear Sand: A Place fitter to ſtarve Cattle, in our Judgment, than to keep 'em alive; yet the *Indians*, as we underſtand, keep the *Engliſh* Cattle down there, and ſuffer them not to go off of the ſaid *Cape*, (as we ſuppoſe) becauſe the Country *Indians* ſhall have no Part with them; and therefore 'tis likely, they have fallen out about them, which ſhall have the greateſt Share. They brought on board our

Ship

Ship very good and fat Beef ſeveral times, which they ſold us at a very reaſonable Price; alſo fat and very large Swine, good and cheap; but they may thank their Friends of *New-England*, who brought their Hogs to ſo fair a Market. Some of the *Indians* brought very good Salt aboard us, and made Signs, pointing to both ſides of the River's Mouth, that there was great Store thereabouts. We ſaw up the River, ſeveral good Places for the ſetting up of Corn or Saw-Mills. In that time, as our Buſineſs call'd us up and down the River and Branches, we kill'd of wild Fowl, 4 Swans, 10 Geeſe, 29 Cranes, 10 Turkies, 40 Ducks and Mallards, 3 dozen of Parrakeeto's, and 6 dozen of other ſmall Fowls, as Curlues and Plover, *&c.*

Whereas there was a Writing left in a Poſt, at the Point of *Cape-Fair* River, by thoſe *New-England*-Men, that left Cattle with the *Indians* there, the Contents whereof tended not only to the Diſparagement of the Land about the ſaid River, but alſo to the great Diſcouragement of all ſuch as ſhould hereafter come into thoſe Parts to ſettle: In anſwer to that ſcandalous Writing, We, whoſe Names are underwritten, do affirm, That we have ſeen, facing both ſides the River and Branches of *Cape-Fair* aforeſaid, as good Land, and as well timber'd, as any we have ſeen in any other Part of the World, ſufficient to accommodate Thouſands of our *Engliſh* Nation, and lying commodiouſly by the ſaid River's Side.

On *Friday* the 4th of *December*, the Wind being fair, we put out to Sea, bound for *Barbados*; and, on the 6th of *February*, 166¾, came to an Anchor in *Carliſle*-Bay; it having pleas'd God, after ſeveral apparent Dangers both by Sea and Land, to bring us all in Safety to our long-wiſh'd-for and much-deſir'd Port, to render an Account of our Diſcovery; the Verity of which we do aſſert.

Anthony Long.
William Hilton.
Peter Fabian.

Thus you have an Account of the Latitude, Soil, and Advantages of *Cape-Fair*, or *Clarendon*-River, which was ſettled in the Year 1661, or thereabouts; and had it not been for the irregular Practices of ſome of that Colony againſt the *Indians*,

Indians, by ſending away ſome of their Children, (as I have been told) under Pretence of inſtructing 'em in Learning, and the Principles of the Chriſtian Religion; which ſo diſguſted the *Indians*, that tho' they had then no Guns, yet they never gave over, till they had entirely rid themſelves of the *Engliſh*, by their Bows and Arrows; with which they did not only take off themſelves, but alſo their Stocks of Cattle; And this was ſo much the more ruinous to them, in that they could have no Aſſiſtance from South-*Carolina*, which was not then planted; and the other Plantations were but in their Infancy. Were it not for ſuch ill Practices, I ſay, it might, in all Probability, have been, at this day, the beſt Settlement in their Lordſhips great Province of *Carolina*.

Albemarl *Sound and Rivers.* The Sound of *Albemarl*, with the Rivers and Creeks of that Country, afford a very rich and durable Soil. The Land, in moſt Places, lies indifferent low, (except in *Chuwon*, and high up the Rivers) but bears an incredible Burden of Timber; the Low-Grounds being cover'd with Beech; and the High-Land yielding lofty Oaks, Walnut-Trees, and other uſeful Timber. The Country, in ſome Plantations, has yearly produc'd *Indian* Corn, or ſome other Grain, ever ſince this Country was firſt ſeated, without the Trouble of Manuring or Dreſſing; and yet (to all appearance) it ſeems not to be, in the leaſt, impoveriſh'd, neither do the Planters ever miſs of a good Crop, unleſs a very unnatural Seaſon viſits them, which ſeldom happens.

Of the Corn of Carolina.

Wheat. THE Wheat of this Place is very good, ſeldom yielding leſs than thirty fold, provided the Land is good where it is ſown; Not but that there has been Sixty-ſix Increaſe for one meaſure ſown in Piny-Land, which we account the meaneſt Sort. And I have been inform'd, by People of Credit, that Wheat which was planted in a very rich Piece of Land, brought a hundred and odd Pecks, for one. If our Planters, when they found ſuch great Increaſe, would be ſo curious as to make nice Obſervations of the Soil, and other remarkable Accidents, they would ſoon be acquainted with the Nature of the Earth and Climate, and be better qualified to manage

nage their Agriculture to more Certainty, and greater Advantage; whereby they might arrive to the Crops and Harveſts of *Babylon*, and thoſe other fruitful Countries ſo much talk'd of. For I muſt confeſs, I never ſaw one Acre of Land manag'd as it ought to be in *Carolina*, ſince I knew it; and were they as negligent in their Husbandry in *Europe*, as they are in *Carolina*, their Land would produce nothing but Weeds and Straw.

They have try'd Rye, and it thrives very well; but having ſuch Plenty of Maiz, they do not regard it, becauſe it makes black Bread, unleſs very curiouſly handled. *Rye.*

Barley has been ſowed in ſmall quantities, and does better than can be expected; becauſe that Grain requires the Ground to be very well work'd with repeated Ploughings, which our general Way of breaking the Earth with Hoes, can, by no means, perform, tho' in ſeveral Places we have a light, rich, deep, black Mould, which is the particular Soil in which Barley beſt thrives. *Barley.*

The naked Oats thrive extraordinary well; and the other would prove a very bold Grain; but the Plenty of other Grains makes them not much coveted. *Oats.*

The *Indian* Corn, or *Maiz*, proves the moſt uſeful Grain in the World; and had it not been for the Fruitfulneſs of this Species, it would have proved very difficult to have ſettled ſome of the Plantations in *America*. It is very nouriſhing, whether in Bread, ſodden, or otherwiſe; And thoſe poor Chriſtian Servants in *Virginia*, *Maryland*, and the other northerly Plantations, that have been forced to live wholly upon it, do manifeſtly prove, that it is the moſt nouriſhing Grain, for a Man to ſubſiſt on, without any other Victuals. And this Aſſertion is made good by the *Negro*-Slaves, who, in many Places, eat nothing but this *Indian* Corn and Salt. Pigs and Poultry fed with this Grain, eat the ſweeteſt of all others. It refuſes no Grounds, unleſs the barren Sands, and when planted in good Ground, will repay the Planter ſeven or eight hundred fold; beſides the Stalks bruis'd and boil'd, make very pleaſant Beer, being ſweet like the Sugar-Cane. *Maiz.*

There are ſeveral ſorts of Rice, ſome bearded, others not, beſides the red and white; But the white Rice is the beſt. Yet there is a ſort of perfum'd Rice in the *Eaſt-Indies*, *Rice.*

Indies, which gives a curious Flavour, in the Dreſſing. And with this ſort *America* is not yet acquainted; neither can I learn, that any of it has been brought over to *Europe*; the Rice of *Carolina* being eſteem'd the beſt that comes to that Quarter of the World. It is of great Increaſe, yielding from eight hundred to a thouſand-fold, and thrives beſt in wild Land, that has never been broken up before.

Buck-Wheat. Buck-Wheat is of great Increaſe in *Carolina*; but we make no other uſe of it, than inſtead of Maiz, to feed Hogs and Poultry: And *Guinea* Corn, which thrives well here, ſerves for the ſame uſe.

Guinea-Wheat.

Pulſe. Of the Pulſe-kind, we have many ſorts. The firſt is the

Buſhel-Bean. Buſhel-Bean, which is a ſpontaneous Product. They are ſo called, becauſe they bring a Buſhel of Beans for one that is planted. They are ſet in the Spring, round Arbours, or at the Feet of Poles, up which they will climb, and cover the Wattling, making a very pretty Shade to ſit under. They continue flowering, budding, and ripening all the Summer long, till the Froſt approaches, when they forbear their Fruit, and die. The Stalks they grow on, come to the Thickneſs of a Man's Thumb; and the Bean is white and mottled, with a purple Figure on each ſide it, like an Ear. They are very flat, and are eaten as the *Windſor*-Bean is, being an extraordinary well-reliſh'd Pulſe, either by themſelves, or with Meat.

Indian Rounceval. We have the *Indian Rounceval*, or *Miraculous Peaſe*, ſo call'd from their long Pods, and great Increaſe. Theſe are latter Peaſe, and require a pretty long Summer to ripen in. They

Peaſe and Beans. are very good; and ſo are the *Bonavis*, *Calavancies*, *Nanticokes*, and abundance of other Pulſe, too tedious here to name, which we found the *Indians* poſſeſs'd of, when firſt we ſettled in *America*; ſome of which ſorts afford us two Crops in one Year; as the *Bonavis* and *Calavancies*, beſides ſeveral others of that kind.

Now I am launch'd into a Diſcourſe of the Pulſe, I muſt

Eng. Bean. acquaint you, that the *European* Bean planted here, will, in time, degenerate into a dwarfiſh ſort, if not prevented by a yearly Supply of foreign Seed, and an extravagant rich Soil; yet theſe Pigmy-Beans are the ſweeteſt of that kind I ever met withal.

As

As for all the ſorts of *Engliſh* Peaſe that we have yet made tryal of, they thrive very well in *Carolina*. Particularly, the white and gray *Rouncival*, the common *Field-Peaſe*, and *Sickle-Peaſe* yield very well, and are of a good Reliſh. As for the other ſorts, I have not ſeen any made tryal of as yet, but queſtion not their coming to great Perfection with us. *Peaſe.*

The Kidney-Beans were here before the *Engliſh* came, being very plentiful in the *Indian* Corn-Fields. *Kidney-Bean.*

The Garden-Roots that thrive well in *Carolina*, are Carrots, Leeks, Parſnips, Turneps, Potatoes, of ſeveral delicate ſorts, Ground Artichokes, Radiſhes, Horſe-Radiſh, Beet, both ſorts, Onions, Shallot, Garlick, Cives, and the Wild-Onions. *Roots.*

The Sallads are the Lettice, Curl'd, Red, Cabbage, and *Savoy*. The Spinage round and prickly, Fennel, ſweet and the common Sort, Samphire in the Marſhes excellent, ſo is the Dock or Wild-Rhubarb, Rocket, Sorrel, *French* and *Engliſh*, Creſſes of ſeveral Sorts, Purſlain wild, and that of a larger Size which grows in the Gardens; for this Plant is never met withal in the *Indian* Plantations, and is, therefore, ſuppos'd to proceed from Cow-Dung, which Beaſt they keep not. Parſley two Sorts; Aſparagus thrives to a Miracle, without hot Beds or dunging the Land, White-Cabbage from *European* or *New-England* Seed, for the People are negligent and unskilful, and don't take care to provide Seed of their own. The Colly-Flower we have not yet had an Opportunity to make Tryal of, nor has the Artichoke ever appear'd amongſt us, that I can learn. Coleworts plain and curl'd, *Savoys*; beſides the Water-Melons of ſeveral Sorts, very good, which ſhould have gone amongſt the Fruits. Of Musk-Melons we have very large and good, and ſeveral Sorts, as the Golden, Green, Guinea, and Orange. Cucumbers long, ſhort, and prickly, all theſe from the Natural Ground, and great Increaſe, without any Helps of Dung or Reflection. Pompions yellow and very large, Burmillions, Caſhaws, an excellent Fruit boil'd; Squaſhes, Simnals, Horns, and Gourds; beſides many other Species, of leſs Value, too tedious to name. *Sallads.* *No Purſlain in Indian Fields.*

Our Pot-herbs and others of uſe, which we already poſſeſs, are Angelica wild and tame, Balm, Bugloſs, Borage, Burnet, Clary, *Pot-herbs, and others for Phyſick.*

Clary, Marigold, Pot-Marjoram, and other Marjorams, Summer and Winter Savory, Columbines, Tanſey, Wormwood, Nep, Mallows ſeveral Sorts, Drage red and white, Lambs Quarters, Thyme, Hyſſop of a very large Growth, ſweet Bazil, Roſemary, Lavender: The more Phyſical, are *Carduus Benedictus*, the Scurvy-graſs of *America*, I never here met any of the *European* ſort; *Tobacco* of many ſorts, Dill, Carawa, Cummin, Aniſe, Coriander, all ſorts of Plantain of *England*, and two ſorts ſpontaneous, good Vulneraries; Elecampane, Comfrey, Nettle, the Seed from *England*, none Native; Monks Rhubarb, Burdock, Aſarum wild in the Woods, reckon'd one of the Snake-Roots; Poppies in the Garden, none wild yet diſcover'd; Wormſeed, Feverfew, Rue, Ground-Ivy ſpontaneous, but very ſmall and ſcarce, *Aurea virga*, four ſorts of Snake-Roots, beſides the common Species, which are great Antidotes againſt that Serpent's Bite, and are eaſily rais'd in the Garden; Mint; *James-Town-Weed*, ſo called from *Virginia*, the Seed it bears is very like that of an Onion; it is excellent for curing Burns, and aſſwaging Inflammations, but taken inwardly brings on a ſort of drunken Madneſs. One of our Marſh-Weeds, like a Dock, has the ſame Effect, and poſſeſſes the Party with Fear and Watchings. The Red-Root whoſe Leaf is like Spear-Mint, is good for Thruſhes and ſore Mouths; Camomil, but it muſt be kept in the Shade, otherwiſe it will not thrive; Houſleek firſt from *England*; Vervin; Night-Shade, ſeveral kinds; Harts-Tongue; Yarrow abundance, Mullein the ſame, both of the Country; Sarſaparilla, and abundance more I could name, yet not the hundredth part of what remains, a Catalogue of which is a Work of many Years, and without any other Subject, would ſwell to a large Volume, and requires the Abilities of a skilful Botaniſt: Had not the ingenious Mr. *Baniſter* (the greateſt *Virtuoſo* we ever had on the Continent) been unfortunately taken out of this World, he would have given the beſt Account of the Plants of *America*, of any that ever yet made ſuch an Attempt in theſe Parts. Not but we are ſatisfy'd, the Species of Vegetables in *Carolina*, are ſo numerous, that it requires more than one Man's Age to bring the chiefeſt Part of them into regular Claſſes; the Country being ſo different in its Situation and Soil, that what one place plentifully affords, another is abſolutely

Rattle-Snakes.

James-Town-Weed, *the Seed like Onion Seed.*

ſolutely a ſtranger to; yet we generally obſerve, that the greateſt Variety is found in the Low Grounds, and Savanna's.

The Flower-Garden in *Carolina* is as yet arriv'd but to a very poor and jejune Perfection. We have only two ſorts of Roſes; the Clove-July-Flowers, Violets, Princes Feather, and *Tres Colores*. There has been nothing more cultivated in the Flower-Garden, which, at preſent, occurs to my Memory; but as for the wild ſpontaneous Flowers of this Country, Nature has been ſo liberal, that I cannot name one tenth part of the valuable ones; And ſince, to give Specimens, would only ſwell the Volume, and give little Satisfaction to the Reader, I ſhall therefore proceed to the *Preſent State of Carolina*, and refer the Shrubs and other Vegetables of larger Growth, till hereafter, and then ſhall deliver them and the other Species in their Order. *Flowers.*

The Preſent State of Carolina.

WHen we conſider the Latitude and convenient Situation of *Carolina*, had we no farther Confirmation thereof, our Reaſon would inform us, that ſuch a Place lay fairly to be a delicious Country, being placed in that Girdle of the World which affords Wine, Oil, Fruit, Grain, and Silk, with other rich Commodities, beſides a ſweet Air, moderate Climate, and fertile Soil; theſe are the Bleſſings (under Heaven's Protection) that ſpin out the Thread of Life to its utmoſt Extent, and crown our Days with the Sweets of Health and Plenty, which, when join'd with Content, renders the Poſſeſſors the happieſt Race of Men upon Earth.

The Inhabitants of *Carolina*, thro' the Richneſs of the Soil, live an eaſy and pleaſant Life. The Land being of ſeveral ſorts of Compoſt, ſome ſtiff, others light, ſome marl, others rich black Mould; here barren of Pine, but affording Pitch, Tar, and Maſts; there vaſtly rich, eſpecially on the Freſhes of the Rivers, one part bearing great Timbers, others being Savanna's or natural Meads, where no Trees grow for ſeveral Miles, adorn'd by Nature with a pleaſant Verdure, and beautiful Flowers, frequent in no other Places, yielding abundance of Herbage for Cattle, Sheep, and Horſe. The Country in general affords pleaſant Seats, the Land (except in ſome few Places) being dry and high Banks, parcell'd out into moſt convenient Necks, (by the Creeks) eaſy to be fenced in for ſecuring their Stocks to more ſtrict Boundaries, whereby, *The Preſent State of* Carolina. *Necks of Land.*

whereby, with a small trouble of fencing, almost every Man may enjoy, to himself, an entire Plantation, or rather Park. These, with the other Benefits of Plenty of Fish, Wild-Fowl, Venison, and the other Conveniencies which this Summer-Country naturally furnishes, has induc'd a great many Families to leave the more Northerly Platations, and sit down under one of the mildest Governments in the World; in a Country that, with moderate Industry, will afford all the Necessaries of Life. We have yearly abundance of Strangers come among us, who chiefly strive to go Southerly to settle, because there is a vast Tract of rich Land betwixt the Place we are seated in, and *Cape-Fair*, and upon that River, and more Southerly, which is inhabited by none but a few *Indians*, who are at this time well affected to the *English*, and very desirous of their coming to live among them. The more Southerly, the milder Winters, with the Advantages of purchasing the Lords Land at the most easy and moderate Rate of any Lands in *America*, nay (allowing all Advantages thereto annex'd) I may say, the Universe does not afford such another; Besides, Men have a great Advantage of choosing good and commodious Tracts of Land at the first Seating of a Country or River, whereas the later Settlers are forced to purchase smaller Dividends of the old Standers, and sometimes at very considerable Rates; as now in *Virginia* and *Maryland*, where a thousand Acres of good Land cannot be bought under twenty Shillings an Acre, besides two Shillings yearly Acknowledgment for every hundred Acres; which Sum, be it more or less, will serve to put the Merchant or Planter here into a good posture of Buildings, Slaves, and other Necessaries, when the Purchase of his Land comes to him on such easy Terms. And as our Grain and Pulse thrives with us to admiration, no less do our Stocks of Cattle, Horses, Sheep, and Swine multiply.

Purchase of Land.

Land in Virginia *and* Maryland.

Stocks. Increase.

Beef. The Beef of *Carolina* equalizes the best that our neighbouring Colonies afford; the Oxen are of a great size when they are suffer'd to live to a fit Age. I have seen fat and good Beef at all times of the Year, but *October* and the cool Months are the Seasons we kill our Beeves in, when we intend them for Salting or Exportation; for then they are in their prime of Flesh, all coming from Grass, we never using any other Food for our Cattle. The Heifers bring Calves at eighteen or twenty

Heifers.

twenty Months old, which makes such a wonderful Increase, that many of our Planters, from very mean Beginnings, have rais'd themselves, and are now Masters of hundreds of fat Beeves, and other Cattle.

Veal. The Veal is very good and white, so is the Milk very pleasant and rich, there being, at present, considerable Quantities of Butter and Cheese made, that is very good, not only serving our own Necessities, but we send out a great deal among our Neighbours.

Sheep. The Sheep thrive very well at present, having most commonly two Lambs at one yeaning: As the Country comes to be open'd, they prove still better, Change of Pasture being agreeable to that useful Creature. Mutton is (generally) exceeding Fat, and of a good Relish; their Wool is very fine, and proves a good Staple.

Horses. The Horses are well-shap'd and swift; the best of them would sell for ten or twelve Pounds in *England*. They prove excellent Drudges, and will travel incredible Journeys. They are troubled with very few Distempers, neither do the cloudy-fac'd grey Horses go blind here, as in *Europe*. As for *Spavins*, *Splints*, and *Ring-Bones*, they are here never met withal, as I can learn. Were we to have our Stallions and choice of Mares from *England*, or any other of a good Sort, and careful to keep them on the Highlands, we could not fail of a good Breed; but having been supply'd with our first Horses from the neighbouring Plantations, which were but mean, they do not as yet come up to the Excellency of the *English* Horses; tho' we generally find, that the Colt exceeds, in Beauty and Strength, its Sire and Dam.

Swine. The Pork exceeds any in *Europe*; the great Diversity and Goodness of the Acorns and Nuts which the Woods afford, making that Flesh of an excellent Taste, and produces great Quantities; so that *Carolina* (if not the chief) is not inferior, in this one Commodity, to any Colony in the hands of the *English*.

Goats. As for Goats, they have been found to thrive and increase well, but being mischievous to Orchards and other Trees, makes People decline keeping them.

Produce. Our Produce for Exportation to *Europe* and the Islands in *America*, are Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Deer-Skins, Furs, Pitch, Tar, Wheat, *Indian*-Corn, Pease, Masts, Staves, Heading,

Heading, Boards, and all ſorts of Timber and Lumber for *Madera* and the *Weſt-Indies*; Rozin, Turpentine, and ſeveral ſorts of Gums and Tears, with ſome medicinal Drugs, are here produc'd; Beſides Rice, and ſeveral other foreign Grains, which thrive very well. Good Bricks and Tiles are made, and ſeveral ſorts of uſeful Earths, as Bole, Fullers-Earth, Oaker, and Tobacco-pipe-Clay, in great plenty; Earths for the Potters Trade, and fine Sand for the Glaſs-makers. In building with Bricks, we make our Lime of Oyſter-Shells, tho' we have great Store of Lime-ſtone, towards the Heads of our Rivers, where are Stones of all ſorts that are uſeful, beſides vaſt Quantities of excellent Marble. Iron-Stone we have plenty of, both in the Low-Grounds and on the Hills; Lead and Copper has been found, ſo has Antimony heretofore; But no Endeavours have been us'd to diſcover thoſe Subteraneous Species; otherwiſe we might, in all probability, find out the beſt of Minerals, which are not wanting in *Carolina*. Hot Baths we have an account of from the *Indians* that frequent the Hill-Country, where a great likelihood appears of making Salt-peter, becauſe the Earth, in many places, is ſtrongly mix'd with a nitrous Salt, which is much coveted by the Beaſts, who come at ſome Seaſons in great Droves and Herds, and by their much licking of this Earth, make great Holes in thoſe Banks, which ſometimes lie at the heads of great Precipices, where their Eagerneſs after this Salt haſtens their End, by falling down the high Banks, ſo that they are daſh'd in Pieces. It muſt be confeſs'd, that the moſt noble and ſweeteſt Part of this Country, is not inhabited by any but the Savages; and a great deal of the richeſt Part thereof, has no Inhabitants but the Beaſts of the Wilderneſs: For, the *Indians* are not inclinable to ſettle in the richeſt Land, becauſe the Timbers are too large for them to cut down, and too much burthen'd with Wood for their Labourers to make Plantations of; beſides, the Healthfulneſs of thoſe Hills is apparent, by the Gigantick Stature, and Gray-Heads, ſo common amongſt the Savages that dwell near the Mountains. The great Creator of all things, having moſt wiſely diffus'd his Bleſſings, by parceling out the Vintages of the World, into ſuch Lots, as his wonderful Foreſight ſaw moſt proper, requiſite, and convenient for the Habitations of his Creatures. To-

Salt-peter.

wards

wards the Sea, we have the Conveniency of Trade, Tranſportation, and other Helps the Water affords; but oftentimes, thoſe Advantages are attended with indifferent Land, a thick Air, and other Inconveniences; when backwards, near the Mountains, you meet with the richeſt Soil, a ſweet, thin Air, dry Roads, pleaſant ſmall murmuring Streams, and ſeveral beneficial Productions and Species, which are unknown in the *European* World. One Part of this Country affords what the other is wholly a Stranger to.

We have *Chalybeate* Waters of ſeveral Taſtes and different Qualities; ſome purge, others work by the other Emunctories. We have, amongſt the Inhabitants, a Water, that is, inwardly, a great Aperſive, and, outwardly, cures Ulcers, Tettars, and Sores, by waſhing therewith. *Chaly-beate Waters.*

There has been a Coal-Mine lately found near the *Manna-kin* Town, above the Falls of *James*-River in *Virginia*, which proves very good, and is us'd by the *Smiths*, for their Forges; and we need not doubt of the ſame amongſt us, towards the Heads of our Rivers; but the Plenty of Wood (which is much the better Fuel) makes us not inquiſitive after Coal-Mines. *Coal-Mine in* Virginia.

Moſt of the *French*, who lived at that Town on *James*-River, are remov'd to *Trent*-River, in *North-Carolina*, where the reſt were expected daily to come to them, when I came away, which was in *Auguſt*, 1708. They are much taken with the Pleaſantneſs of that Country, and, indeed, are a very induſtrious People. At preſent, they make very good Linnen-Cloath and Thread, and are very well vers'd in cultivating Hemp and Flax, of both which they raiſe very conſiderable Quantities; and deſign to try an Eſſay of the Grape, for making of Wine. *French Refugees.*

As for thoſe of our own Country in *Carolina*, ſome of the Men are very laborious, and make great Improvements in their Way; but I dare hardly give 'em that Character in general. The eaſy Way of living in that plentiful Country, makes a great many Planters very negligent, which, were they otherwiſe, that Colony might now have been in a far better Condition than it is, (as to Trade, and other Advantages) which an univerſal Induſtry would have led them into. *Planters.*

The

Women good Housewives. The Women are the most industrious Sex in that Place, and, by their good Houswifry, make a great deal of Cloath of their own Cotton, Wool and Flax; some of them keeping their Families (though large) very decently apparel'd, both with Linnens and Woollens, so that they have no occasion to run into the Merchant's Debt, or lay their Money out on Stores for Cloathing.

Natives of Carolina. The *Christian* Natives of *Carolina* are a straight, clean-limb'd People; the Children being seldom or never troubled with Rickets, or those other Distempers, that the *Europeans* are visited withal. 'Tis next to a Miracle, to see one of them deform'd in Body. The Vicinity of the Sun makes Impression on the Men, who labour out of doors, or use the Water. As for those Women, that do not expose themselves to the Weather, they are often very fair, and generally as well featur'd, as you shall see any where, and have very brisk charming Eyes, which sets them off to Advantage. They marry very young; some at Thirteen or Fourteen; and She that stays till Twenty, is reckon'd a stale Maid; which is a very indifferent Character in that warm Country. The Women are very fruitful; most Houses being full of Little Ones. It has been observ'd, that Women long marry'd, and without Children, in other Places, have remov'd to *Carolina*, and become joyful Mothers. They have very easy Travail in their Child-bearing, in which they are so happy, as seldom to miscarry. Both Sexes are generally spare of Body, and not Cholerick, nor easily cast down at Disappointments and Losses, seldom immoderately grieving at Misfortunes, unless for the Loss of their nearest Relations and Friends, which seems to make a more than ordinary Impression upon them. Many of the Women are very handy in Canoes, and will manage them with great Dexterity and Skill, which they become accustomed to in this watry Country. They are ready to help their Husbands in any servile Work, as Planting, when the Season of the Weather requires Expedition; Pride seldom banishing good Houswifry. The Girls are not bred up to the Wheel, and Sewing only; but the Dairy and Affairs of the House they are very well acquainted withal; so that you shall see them, whilst very young, manage their Business with a great deal of Conduct and Alacrity. The Children of both Sexes are very docile, and learn any thing with a great

Beautiful.

Not Passionate.

Good Wives.

Natives are docile.

a great deal of Eaſe and Method; and thoſe that have the Advantages of Education, write good Hands, and prove good Accountants, which is moſt coveted, and indeed moſt neceſſary in theſe Parts. The young Men are commonly of a baſhful, ſober Behaviour; few proving Prodigals, to conſume what the Induſtry of their Parents has left them, but commonly improve it. The marrying ſo young, carries a double Advantage with it; and that is, that the Parents ſee their Children provided for in Marriage, and the young married People are taught by their Parents, how to get their Living; for their Admonitions make great Impreſſions on their Children. I had heard (before I knew this new World) that the Natives of *America* were a ſhort-liv'd People, which, by all the Obſervations I could ever make, proves quite contrary; for thoſe who are born here, and in other Colonies, live to as great Ages as any of the *Europeans*, the Climate being free from Conſumptions, which Diſtemper, fatal to *England*, they are Strangers to. And as the Country becomes more clear'd of Wood, it ſtill becomes more healthful to the Inhabitants, and leſs addicted to the Ague; which is incident to moſt new Comers into *America* from *Europe*, yet not mortal. A gentle Emetick ſeldom miſſes of driving it away, but if it is not too troubleſome, 'tis better to let the Seaſoning have its own Courſe, in which caſe, the Party is commonly free from it ever after, and very healthful.

No Prodigals.

Great Age of Americans.

And now, as to the other Advantages the Country affords, we cannot gueſs at them at preſent, becauſe, as I ſaid before, the beſt Part of this Country is not inhabited by the *Engliſh*, from whence probably will hereafter ſpring Productions that this Age does not dream of, and of much more Advantage to the Inhabitants than any things we are yet acquainted withal: And as for ſeveral Productions of other Countries, much in the ſame Latitude, we may expect, with good Management, they will become familiar to us, as Wine, Oil, Fruit, Silk, and other profitable Commodities, ſuch as Drugs, Dyes, *&c.* And at preſent the Curious may have a large Field to ſatisfy and divert themſelves in, as Collections of ſtrange Beaſts, Birds, Inſects, Reptiles, Shells, Fiſhes, Minerals, Herbs, Flowers, Plants, Shrubs, intricate Roots, Gums, Tears, Rozins, Dyes, and Stones, with ſeveral other that yield Satisfaction and Profit to thoſe, whoſe Inclinations

Collections.

tend that Way. And as for what may be hop'd for, towards a happy Life and Being, by such as design to remove thither, I shall add this; That with prudent Management, I can affirm, by Experience, not by Hear-say, That any Person, with a small Beginning, may live very comfortably, and not only provide for the Necessaries of Life, but likewise for those that are to succeed him; Provisions being very plentiful, and of good Variety, to accommodate genteel House-keeping; and the neighbouring *Indians* are friendly, and in many Cases serviceable to us, in making us Wares to catch Fish in, for a small matter, which proves of great Advantage to large Families, because those Engines take great Quantities of many Sorts of Fish, that are very good and nourishing: Some of them hunt and fowl for us at reasonable Rates, the Country being as plentifully provided with all Sorts of Game, as any Part of *America*; the poorer Sort of Planters often get them to plant for them, by hiring them for that Season, or for so much Work, which commonly comes very reasonable. Moreover, it is remarkable, That no Place on the Continent of *America*, has seated an *English* Colony so free from Blood-shed, as *Carolina*; but all the others have been more damag'd and disturb'd by the *Indians*, than they have; which is worthy Notice, when we consider how oddly it was first planted with Inhabitants.

Provisions very cheap.

Indians *Hunters.*

Fishing-Trade.

The Fishing-Trade in *Carolina* might be carried on to great Advantage, considering how many Sorts of excellent Fish our Sound and Rivers afford, which cure very well with Salt, as has been experienced by some small Quantities, which have been sent abroad, and yielded a good Price. As for the Whale-fishing, it is no otherwise regarded than by a few People who live on the Sand-Banks; and those only work on dead Fish cast on shoar, none being struck on our Coast, as they are to the Northward; altho' we have Plenty of Whales there. Great Plenty is generally the Ruin of Industry. Thus our Merchants are not many, nor have those few there be, apply'd themselves to the *European* Trade. The Planter sits contented at home, whilst his Oxen thrive and grow fat, and his Stocks daily increase; The fatted Porkets and Poultry are easily rais'd to his Table, and his Orchard affords him Liquor, so that he eats, and drinks away the Cares of the World, and desires no greater Happiness, than that which

Whale-Fishing.

he

he daily enjoys. Whereas, not only the *European*, but alſo the *Indian*-Trade, might be carried on to a great Profit, becauſe we lie as fairly for the Body of *Indians*, as any Settlement in *Engliſh-America*; And for the ſmall Trade that has been carried on in that Way, the Dealers therein have throve as faſt as any Men, and the ſooneſt rais'd themſelves of any People I have known in *Carolina*. *Indian-Trade.*

Laſtly, As to the Climate, it is very healthful; our Summer is not ſo hot as in other places to the Eaſtward in the ſame Latitude; neither are we ever viſited by Earthquakes, as many places in *Italy* and other Summer-Countries are. Our Northerly Winds, in Summer, cool the Air, and free us from peſtilential Fevers, which *Spain*, *Barbary*, and the neighbouring Countries in *Europe*, *&c.* are viſited withal. Our Sky is generally ſerene and clear, and the Air very thin, in compariſon of many Parts of *Europe*, where Conſumptions and Catarrhs reign amongſt the Inhabitants. The Winter has ſeveral Fitts of ſharp Weather, eſpecially when the Wind is at N. W. which always clears the Sky, though never ſo thick before. However, ſuch Weather is very agreeable to *European* Bodies, and makes them healthy. The N. E. Winds blowing in Winter, bring with them thick Weather, and, in the Spring, ſometimes, blight the Fruits; but they very ſeldom endure long, being blown away by Weſterly Winds, and then all becomes fair and clear again. Our Spring, in *Carolina*, is very beautiful, and the moſt pleaſant Weather a Country can enjoy. The Fall is accompanied with cool Mornings, which come in towards the latter end of *Auguſt*, and ſo continue (moſt commonly) very moderate Weather till about *Chriſtmas*; then Winter comes on apace. Tho' theſe Seaſons are very piercing, yet the Cold is of no continuance. Perhaps, you will have cold Weather for three or four days at a time; then pleaſant warm Weather follows, ſuch as you have in *England*, about the latter end of *April* or beginning of *May*. In the Year 1707. we had the ſevereſt Winter in *Carolina*, that ever was known ſince the *Engliſh* came to ſettle there; for our Rivers, that were not above half a Mile wide, and freſh Water, were frozen over; and ſome of them, in the North-part of this Country, were paſſable for People to walk over. *Climate.* *Summer.* *No Earthquakes.* *Serene.* *Spring.* *Fall.*

No Frontier. One great Advantage of *North-Carolina* is, That we are not a Frontier, and near the Enemy; which proves very chargeable and troublesome, in time of War, to those Colonies that are so seated. Another great Advantage comes from its being near *Virginia*, where we come often to a good Market, at the Return of the *Guinea*-Ships for Negro's, and the Remnant of their Stores, which is very commodious for the *Indian*-Trade; besides, in War-time, we lie near at hand to go under their Convoy, and to sell our Provisions to the Tobacco-fleets; for the Planting of Tobacco generally in those Colonies, prevents their being supplyed with Stores, sufficient for victualling their Ships.

Near Virginia.

Maryland.

Necessaries for Carolina. As for the Commodities, which are necessary to carry over to this Plantation, for Use and Merchandize, and are, therefore, requisite for those to have along with them, that intend to transport themselves thither; they are Guns, Powder and Shot, Flints, Linnens of all sorts, but chiefly ordinary Blues, *Osnabrugs*, *Scotch* and *Irish* Linnen, and some fine: Mens and Womens Cloaths ready made up, some few Broad-Cloaths, Kerseys and Druggets; to which you must add *Haberdashers*-Wares, Hats about Five or Six Shillings apiece, and a few finer; a few Wiggs, not long, and pretty thin of Hair; thin Stuffs for Women; Iron-Work, as Nails, Spades, Axes, broad and narrow Hoes, Frows, Wedges, and Saws of all sorts, with other Tools for Carpenters, Joiners, Coopers, Shoemakers, Shave-locks, *&c.* all which, and others which are necessary for the Plantations, you may be inform'd of, and buy at very reasonable Rates, of Mr. *James Gilbert*, Ironmonger, in *Mitre-Tavern-Yard*, near *Aldgate*. You may also be used very kindly, for your Cuttlery-Ware, and other advantageous Merchandizes, and your Cargo's well sorted, by Capt. *Sharp*, at the *Blue-gate* in *Cannon-street*; and for Earthen-Ware, Window-Glass, Grind-Stones, Mill-Stones, Paper, Ink-Powder, Saddles, Bridles, and what other things you are minded to take with you, for Pleasure or Ornament.

And now, I shall proceed to the rest of the Vegetables, that are common in *Carolina*, in reference to the Place where I left off, which is the *Natural History* of that Country.

Of

Of the Vegetables of Carolina.

THE ſpontaneous Shrubs of this Country, are, the Lark-heel-Tree; three ſorts of Hony-Suckle-Tree, the firſt of which grows in Branches, as our Piemento-Tree does, that is, always in low, moiſt Ground; the other grows in clear, dry Land, the Flower more cut and lacerated; the third, which is the moſt beautiful, and, I think, the moſt charming Flower of its Colour, I ever ſaw, grows betwixt two and three Foot high, and for the moſt part, by the ſide of a ſwampy Wood, or on the Banks of our Rivers, but never near the Salt-Water. All the Sorts are white; the laſt grows in a great Bunch of theſe ſmall Hony-Suckles ſet upon one chief Stem, and is commonly the Bigneſs of a large Turnep. Nothing can appear more beautiful than theſe Buſhes, when in their Splendour, which is in *April* and *May*. The next is the Honey-Suckle of the Foreſt; it grows about a Foot high, bearing its Flowers on ſmall Pedeſtals, ſeveral of them ſtanding on the main Stock, which is the Thickneſs of a Wheat-Straw. We have alſo the Wood-bind, much the ſame as in *England*; Princes-feather, very large and beautiful in the Garden; *Tres-Colores*, branch'd Sun-flower, Double Poppies, Lupines, of ſeveral pretty ſorts, ſpontaneous; and the *Senſible* Plant is ſaid to be near the Mountains, which I have not yet ſeen. Saf-Flower; (and I believe, the Saffron of *England* would thrive here, if planted) the yellow Jeſſamin is wild in our Woods, of a pleaſant Smell. Ever-Greens are here plentifully found, of a very quick Growth, and pleaſant Shade; Cypreſs, or white Cedar, the Pitch Pine, the yellow Pine, the white Pine with long Leaves; and the ſmaller Almond-Pine, which laſt bears Kernels in the Apple, taſting much like an Almond; and in ſome years there falls ſuch plenty, as to make the Hogs fat. Horn-Beam; Cedar, two ſorts; Holly, two ſorts; Bay-Tree, two ſorts; one the Dwarf-Bay, about twelve Foot high; the other the Bigneſs of a middling Pine-Tree, about two Foot and half Diameter; Laurel-Trees, in Height equalizing the lofty Oaks; the Berries and Leaves of this Tree dyes a Yellow; the Bay-Berries yield a Wax, which beſides its Uſe in Chirurgery, makes Candles that, in burning,

ing, give a fragrant Smell. The Cedar-Berries are infused, and made Beer of, by the *Bermudians*, they are Carminative, and much of the Quality of Juniper-Berries; Yew and Box I never saw or heard of in this Country: There are two sorts of Myrtles, different in Leaf and Berry; the Berry yields Wax that makes Candles, the most lasting, and of the sweetest Smell imaginable. Some mix half Tallow with this Wax, others use it without Mixture; and these are fit for a Lady's Chamber, and incomparable to pass the Line withal, and other hot Countries, because they will stand, when others will melt, by the excessive Heat, down in the Binacles. Ever-green Oak, two sorts; Gall-Berry-Tree, bearing a black Berry, with which the Women dye their Cloaths and Yarn black; 'tis a pretty Ever-green, and very plentiful, growing always in low swampy Grounds, and amongst Ponds. We have a Prim or Privet, which grows on the dry, barren, sandy Hills, by the Sound side; it bears a smaller sort than that in *England*, and grows into a round Bush, very beautiful. Last of Bushes, (except Savine, which grows every where wild) is the famous *Yaupon*, of which I find two sorts, if not three. I shall speak first of the Nature of this Plant, and afterwards account for the different Sorts. This *Yaupon*, call'd by the South-*Carolina Indians*, *Cassena*, is a Bush, that grows chiefly on the Sand-Banks and Islands, bordering on the Sea of *Carolina*; on this Coast it is plentifully found, and in no other Place that I know of. It grows the most like Box, of any Vegetable that I know, being very like it in Leaf, only dented exactly like Tea, but the Leaf somewhat fatter. I cannot say, whether it bears any Flower, but a Berry it does, about the Bigness of a Grain of Pepper, being first red, then brown when ripe, which is in *December*; Some of these Bushes grow to be twelve Foot high, others are three or four. The Wood thereof is brittle as Myrtle, and affords a light ash-colour'd Bark. There is sometimes found of it in Swamps and rich low Grounds, which has the same figured Leaf, only it is larger, and of a deeper Green; This may be occasion'd by the Richness that attends the low Grounds thus situated. The third Sort has the same kind of Leaf, but never grows a Foot high, and is found both in rich, low Land, and on the Sand-Hills. I don't know that ever I found any Seed, or Berries on the

Yaupon.

dwarfish

dwarfish Sort, yet I find no Difference in Taste, when Infusion is made: Cattle and Sheep delight in this Plant very much, and so do the Deer, all which crop it very short, and browze thereon, wheresoever they meet with it. I have transplanted the Sand-Bank and dwarfish *Yaupon*, and find that the first Year, the Shrubs stood at a stand; but the second Year they throve as well as in their native Soil. This Plant is the *Indian* Tea, us'd and approv'd by all the Savages on the Coast of *Carolina*, and from them sent to the Westward *Indians*, and sold at a considerable Price. All which they cure after the same way, as they do for themselves; which is thus: They take this Plant (not only the Leaves, but the smaller Twigs along with them) and bruise it in a Mortar, till it becomes blackish, the Leaf being wholly defaced: Then they take it out, put it into one of their earthen Pots which is over the Fire, till it smoaks; stirring it all the time, till it is cur'd. Others take it, after it is bruis'd, and put it into a Bowl, to which they put live Coals, and cover them with the *Yaupon*, till they have done smoaking, often turning them over. After all, they spread it upon their Mats, and dry it in the Sun, to keep for Use. The *Spaniards* in *New-Spain* have this Plant very plentifully on the Coast of *Florida*, and hold it in great Esteem. Sometimes they cure it as the *Indians* do; or else beat it to a Powder, so mix it, as Coffee; yet before they drink it, they filter the same. They prefer it above all Liquids, to drink with Physick, to carry the same safely and speedily thro' the Passages, for which it is admirable, as I myself have experimented. *Curing the Yaupon.*

In the next Place, I shall speak of the *Timber* that *Carolina* affords, which is as follows. *Timber.*

Chesnut-Oak, is a very lofty Tree, clear of Boughs and Limbs, for fifty or 60 Foot. They bear sometimes four or five Foot through all clear Timber; and are the largest Oaks we have, yielding the fairest Plank. They grow chiefly in low Land, that is stiff and rich. I have seen of them so high, that a good Gun could not reach a Turkey, tho' loaded with Swan-Shot. They are call'd Chesnut, because of the Largeness and Sweetness of the Acorns. *Chesnut-Oak.*

White, Scaly-bark Oak; This is used, as the former, in building Sloops and Ships. Tho' it bears a large Acorn, yet it never grows to the Bulk and Height of the Chesnut Oak. *Scaly Oak.*

Oak. It is so call'd, because of a scaly, broken, white Bark, that covers this Tree, growing on dry Land.

Red Oak. We have Red Oak, sometimes, in good Land, very large, and lofty. 'Tis a porous Wood, and used to rive into Rails for Fences. 'Tis not very durable; yet some use this, as well as the two former, for Pipe and Barrel-Staves. It makes good Clap boards.

Spanish *Oak.* *Spanish* Oak is free to rive, bears a whitish, smooth Bark; and rives very well into Clap-boards. It is accounted durable, therefore some use to build Vessels with it for the Sea; it proving well and durable. These all bear good Mast for the Swine.

Bastard Spanish. Bastard-*Spanish* is an Oak betwixt the *Spanish* and Red Oak; the chief Use is for Fencing and Clap-boards. It bears good Acorns.

Black Oak. The next is Black Oak, which is esteem'd a durable Wood, under Water; but sometimes it is used in House-work. It bears a good Mast for Hogs.

White Iron. White Iron, or Ring-Oak, is so call'd, from the Durability and lasting Quality of this Wood. It chiefly grows on dry, lean Land, and seldom fails of bearing a plentiful Crop of Acorns. This Wood is found to be very durable, and is esteem'd the best Oak for Ship-work that we have in *Carolina*; for tho' Live Oak be more lasting, yet it seldom allows Planks of any considerable Length.

Turkey Oak. Turkey-Oak is so call'd from a small Acorn it bears, which the wild Turkeys feed on.

Live Oak. Live-Oak chiefly grows on dry, sandy Knolls. This is an Ever-green, and the most durable Oak all *America* affords. The Shortness of this Wood's Bowl, or Trunk, makes it unfit for Plank to build Ships withal. There are some few Trees, that would allow a Stock of twelve Foot, but the Firmness and great Weight thereof, frightens our Sawyers from the Fatigue that attends the cutting of this Timber. A Nail once driven therein, 'tis next to an Impossibility to draw it out. The Limbs thereof are so cur'd, that they serve for excellent Timbers, Knees, *&c.* for Vessels of any sort. The Acorns thereof are as sweet as Chesnuts, and the *Indians* draw an Oil from them, as sweet as that from the Olive, tho' of an Amber-Colour. With these Nuts, or Acorns, some have counterfeited the Cocoa, whereof they have

have made Chocolate, not to be distinguish'd by a good Palate. Window-Frames, Mallets, and Pins for Blocks, are made thereof, to an excellent Purpose. I knew two Trees of this Wood among the *Indians*, which were planted from the Acorn, and grew in the Freshes, and never saw any thing more beautiful of that kind. They are of an indifferent quick Growth; of which there are two sorts. The Acorns make very fine Pork.

Willow Oak. Willow-Oak is a sort of Water-Oak. It grows in Ponds and Branches, and is useful for many things. It is so call'd, from the Leaf, which very much resembles a Willow.

Fresh-water Oak. The Live Oak grows in the fresh Water Ponds and Swamps, by the River sides, and in low Ground overflown with Water; and is a perennial Green.

Ash. Of Ash we have two sorts, agreeing nearly with the *English* in the Grain. One of our sorts is tough, like the *English*, but differs something in the Leaf, and much more in the Bark. Neither of them bears Keys. The Water-Ash is brittle. The Bark is Food for the Bevers.

Elm. There are two sorts of Elm; the first grows on our High-Land, and approaches our *English*. The *Indians* take the Bark of its Root, and beat it, whilst green, to a Pulp; and then dry it in the Chimney, where it becomes of a reddish Colour. This they use as a Sovereign Remedy to heal a Cut or green Wound, or any thing that is not corrupted. It is of a very glutinous Quality. The other Elm grows in low Ground, of whose Bark the *English* and *Indians* make Ropes; for as soon as the Sap rises, it strips off, with the greatest ease imaginable. It runs in *March*, or thereabouts.

Tulip-Tree. The Tulip-Trees, which are, by the Planters, call'd Poplars, as nearest approaching that Wood in Grain, grow to a prodigious Bigness, some of them having been found One and twenty Foot in Circumference. I have been inform'd of a Tulip-Tree, that was ten Foot Diameter; and another, wherein a lusty Man had his Bed and Houshold Furniture, and liv'd in it, till his Labour got him a more fashionable Mansion. He afterwards became a noted Man, in his Country, for Wealth and Conduct. One of these sorts bears a white Tulip; the other a party-colour'd, mottled one. The Wood makes very pretty Wainscot, Shingles for

Houſes, and Planks for ſeveral Uſes. It is reckon'd very laſting; eſpecially, under Ground, for Mill-Work. The Buds, made into an Ointment, cure Scalds, Inflammations, and Burns. I ſaw ſeveral Buſhels thereon. The Cattle are apt to eat of theſe Buds, which give a very odd Taſte to the Milk.

Beech. Beech is here frequent, and very large. The Grain ſeems exactly the ſame as that in *Europe*. We make little Uſe thereof, ſave for Fire-Wood. 'Tis not a durable Timber. It affords a very ſweet Nut, yet the Pork fed thereon (tho' ſweet) is very oily, and ought to be harden'd with *Indian* Corn, before it is kill'd. Another ſort call'd Buck-Beech is here found.

Buck Beech

Horn-Beam. Horn-Beam grows, in ſome Places, very plentifully; yet the Plenty of other Wood makes it unregarded.

Saſſafras. The Vertues of Saſſafras are well known in *Europe*. This Wood ſometimes grows to be above two Foot over, and is very durable and laſting, uſed for Bowls, Timbers, Poſts for Houſes, and other Things that require ſtanding in the Ground. 'Tis very light. It bears a white Flower, which is very cleanſing to the Blood, being eaten in the Spring, with other Sallating. The Berry, when ripe, is black; 'tis very oily, Carminative, and extremely prevalent in Clyſters for the Colick. The Bark of the Root is a Specifick to thoſe afflicted with the Gripes. The ſame in Powder, and a Lotion made thereof, is much uſed by the Savages, to mundify old Ulcers, and for ſeveral other Uſes; being highly eſteem'd among them.

Dog-wood. Dog-Wood is plentiful on our light Land, inclining to a rich Soil. It flowers the firſt in the Woods; its white Bloſſom making the Foreſt very beautiful. It has a fine Grain, and ſerves for ſeveral Uſes within doors; but is not durable. The Bark of this Root infuſed, is held an infallible Remedy againſt the Worms.

Laurel. Laurel, before-mention'd; as to its Bigneſs and Uſe, I have ſeen Planks ſawn of this Wood; but 'tis not found durable in the Weather; yet pretty enough for many other Uſes.

Bay and Laurel generally delight in a low, ſwampy Ground. I know no Uſe they make of them, but for Fire-Wood, excepting what I ſpoke of before, amongſt the Ever-Greens.

A

A famous Ever-Green I must now mention, which was forgotten amongst the rest. It is in Leaf like a Jessamine, but larger, and of a harder Nature. This grows up to a large Vine, and twists itself round the Trees it grows near, making a very fine Shade. I never saw any thing of that Nature outdo it, and if it be cut away close to the Ground, it will presently spring up again, it being impossible to destroy it, when once it has got Root. 'Tis an ornamental Plant, and worth the Transplanting. Its Seed is a black Berry. *Ever-green.*

The Scarlet Trumpet-Vine bears a glorious red Flower, like a Bell, or Trumpet, and makes a Shade inferiour to none that I ever saw; yet it leaves us, when the Winter comes, and remains naked till the next Spring. It bears a large Cod, that holds its Seed. *Trumpet-Vine.*

The Maycock bears a glorious Flower, and Apple of an agreeable Sweet, mixt with an acid Taste. This is also a Summer-Vine. *Maycock.*

The Indico grows plentifully in our Quarters. *Indico-Trees.*

The Bay-Tulip-Tree is a fine Ever-green which grows frequently here. *Bay-Tulips.*

The sweet Gum-Tree, so call'd, because of the fragrant Gum it yields in the Spring-time, upon Incision of the Bark, or Wood. It cures the Herpes and Inflammations; being apply'd to the Morphew and Tettars. 'Tis an extraordinary Balsam, and of great Value to those who know how to use it. No Wood has scarce a better Grain; whereof fine Tables, Drawers, and other Furniture might be made. Some of it is curiously curl'd. It bears a round Bur, with a sort of Prickle, which is the Seed. *Sweet Gum.*

Of the Black Gum there grows, with us, two sorts; both fit for Cart-Naves. The one bears a black, well-tasted Berry, which the *Indians* mix with their Pulse and Soups, it giving 'em a pretty Flavour, and scarlet Colour. The Bears crop these Trees for the Berries, which they mightily covet, yet kill'd in that Season, they eat very unsavory; which must be occasion'd by this Fruit, because, at other times, when they feed on Mast, Bears-Flesh is a very well-tasted Food. The other Gum bears a Berry in shape like the other, tho' bitter and ill-tasted. This Tree (the *Indians* report) *Black Gums.*

is never wounded by Lightning. It has no certain Grain; and it is almoſt impoſſible to ſplit or rive it.

White Gum The white Gum, bearing a ſort of long bunch'd Flowers, is the moſt curled and knotted Wood I ever ſaw, which would make curious Furniture, in caſe it was handled by a good Workman.

Red Cedar. The red ſort of Cedar is an Ever-green, of which *Carolina* affords Plenty. That on the Salts, grows generally on the Sand-banks; and that in the Freſhes is found in the Swamps. Of this Wood, Tables, Wainſcot, and other Neceſſaries, are made, and eſteemed for its ſweet Smell. It is as durable a Wood as any we have, therefore much uſed in Poſts for Houſes and Sills; likewiſe to build Sloops, Boats, *&c.* by reaſon the Worm will not touch it, for ſeveral Years. The Veſſels built thereof are very durable, and good Swimmers. Of this Cedar, Ship-loads may be exported. It has been heretofore ſo plentiful in this Settlement, that they have fenced in Plantations with it, and the Coffins of the Dead are generally made thereof.

White Cedar. White Cedar, ſo call'd, becauſe it nearly approaches the other Cedar, in Smell, Bark, and Leaf; only this grows taller, being as ſtrait as an Arrow. It is extraordinary light, and free to rive. 'Tis good for Yard, Top-Maſts, Booms and Boltſprits, being very tough. The beſt Shingles for Houſes are made of this Wood, it being no Strain to the Roof, and never rots. Good Pails and other Veſſels, free from Leakage, are likewiſe made thereof. The Bark of this and the red Cedar, the *Indians* uſe to make their Cabins of, which prove firm, and reſiſt all Weathers.

Cypreſs. Cypreſs is not an Ever-green with us, and is therefore call'd the bald Cypreſs, becauſe the Leaves, during the Winter-Seaſon, turn red, not recovering their Verdure till the Spring. Theſe Trees are the largeſt for Height and Thickneſs, that we have in this Part of the World; ſome of them holding thirty-ſix Foot in Circumference. Upon Inciſion, they yield a ſweet-ſmelling Grain, tho' not in great Quantities; and the Nuts which theſe Trees bear plentifully, yield a moſt odoriferous Balſam, that infallibly cures all new and green Wounds, which the Inhabitants are well acquainted withal. Of theſe great Trees the Periaugers and Canoes are ſcoop'd and made; which ſort of Veſſels are chiefly

to

to pass over the Rivers, Creeks, and Bays; and to transport Goods and Lumber from one River to another. Some are so large, as to carry thirty Barrels, tho' of one entire Piece of Timber. Others, that are split down the Bottom, and a piece added thereto, will carry eighty, or an hundred. Several have gone out of our Inlets on the Ocean to *Virginia*, laden with Pork, and other Produce of the Country. Of these Trees curious Boats for Pleasure may be made, and other necessary Craft. Some Years ago, a foolish Man in *Albemarl* and his Son, had got one of these Canoes deck'd. She held, as I take it, sixteen Barrels. He brought her to the Collectors, to be clear'd for *Barbados*; but the Officer took him for a Man that had lost his Senses, and argu'd the Danger and Impossibility of performing such a Voyage, in a hollow Tree; but the Fellow would hearken to no Advice of that kind, till the Gentleman told him, if he did not value his own Life, he valu'd his Reputation and Honesty, and so flatly refus'd clearing him; Upon which, the Canoe was sold, and, I think, remains in being still. This Wood is very lasting, and free from the Rot. A Canoe of it will outlast four Boats, and seldom wants Repair. They say, that a Chest made of this Wood, will suffer no Moth, or Vermine, to abide therein.

Two sorts of Locust white and yellow, is rare if var-nish'd.

The Locust, for its enduring the Weather, is chosen for all sorts of Works that are exposed thereto. It bears a Leaf neareſt the Liquorice-Plant. 'Tis a pretty tall Tree. Of this the *Indians* make their choicest Bows, it being very tough and flexible. We have little or none of this Wood in *Pampticough*.

Honey Tree a Locust.

The Honey-Tree bears as great a Resemblance to the Locust, as a Shallot does to an Onion. It is of that Species, but more prickly. They bear a Cod, one side whereof contains the Seed, the other the Honey; They will bear in five Years, from the Kernel. They were first brought (by the *Indian* Traders) and propagated, by their Seed, at the *Apamaticks* in *Virginia*. Last Year, I planted the Seed, and had them sprung up before I came from thence, which was in *August*. Of the Honey, very good Metheglin is made, there being Orchards planted in *Virginia* for that intent.

The

Sowr Wood The Sorrel, or Sowr-Wood-Tree, is so call'd, because the Leaves taste like Sorrel. Some are about a Foot or ten Inches Diameter. I am unacquainted with its Vertues at present.

Pine. Of Pines, there are, in *Carolina*, at least, four sorts. The Pitch-Pine, growing to a great Bigness, most commonly has but a short Leaf. Its Wood (being replete with abundance of *Bitumen)* is so durable, that it seems to suffer no Decay, tho' exposed to all Weathers, for many Ages; and is used in several Domestick and Plantation Uses. This Tree affords the four great Necessaries, Pitch, Tar, Rozin, and Turpentine; which two last are extracted by tapping, and the Heat of the Sun, the other two by the Heat of the Fire.

The white and yellow Pines are saw'd into Planks for several Uses. They make Masts, Yards, and a great many other Necessaries therewith, the Pine being the most useful Tree in the Woods.

The Almond-Pine serves for Masts very well. As for the Dwarf-Pine, it is for Shew alone, being an Ever-green, as they all are.

Hiccory the best Fire-wood. The Hiccory is of the Walnut-kind, and bears a Nut as they do, of which there are found three sorts. The first is that which we call the common white Hiccory. It is not a durable Wood; for if cut down, and exposed to the Weather, it will be quite rotten, and spoil'd in three Years; as will likewise the Beech of this Country. Hiccory Nuts have very hard Shells, but excellent sweet Kernels, with which, in a plentiful Year, the old Hogs, that can crack them, fatten themselves, and make excellent Pork. These Nuts are gotten, in great Quantities, by the Savages, and laid up for Stores, of which they make several Dishes and Banquets. One of these I cannot forbear mentioning; it is this: They take these Nuts, and break them very small betwixt two Stones, till the Shells and Kernels are indifferent small; And this Powder you are presented withal in their Cabins, in little wooden Dishes; the Kernel dissolves in your Mouth, and the Shell is spit out. This tastes as well as any Almond. Another Dish is the Soup which they make of these Nuts, beaten, and put into Venison-Broth, which dissolves the Nut, and thickens, whilst the Shell precipitates, and remains at the bottom. This Broth tastes very

very rich. There is another ſort, which we call red Hiccory, the Heart thereof being very red, firm and durable; of which Walking-Sticks, Mortars, Peſtils, and ſeveral other fine Turnery-wares are made. The third is call'd the Flying-bark'd Hiccory, from its brittle and ſcaly Bark. It bears a Nut with a bitter Kernel and a ſoft Shell, like a *French* Walnut. Of this Wood, Coggs for Mills are made, *&c.* The Leaves ſmell very fragrant. *Red Hiccory.*

The Walnut-Tree of *America* is call'd Black Walnut. I ſuppoſe, that Name was, at firſt, to diſtinguiſh it from the Hiccories, it having a blacker Bark. This Tree grows, in good Land, to a prodigious Bigneſs. The Wood is very firm and durable, of which Tables and Cheſts of Drawers are made, and prove very well. Some of this is very knotty, which would make the beſt Returns for *England*, tho' the Maſters of Veſſels refuſe it, not underſtanding its Goodneſs. 'Tis a very good and durable Wood, to bottom Veſſels for the Sea withal; and they ſay, that it is never eaten by the Worm. The Nuts have a large Kernel, which is very oily, except lain by, a long time, to mellow. The Shell is very thick, as all the native Nuts of *America* are. When it has its yellow outward Coat on, it looks and ſmells much like a Lemon. *Walnut.*

The Maple, of which we have two ſorts, is uſed to make Trenchers, Spinning-wheels, *&c.* withal. *Maple.*

Chinkapin is a ſort of Cheſnut, whoſe Nuts are moſt commonly very plentiful; inſomuch that the Hogs get fat with them. They are rounder and ſmaller than a Cheſnut, but much ſweeter. The Wood is much of the Nature of Cheſnut, having a Leaf and Grain almoſt like it. It is uſed to timber Boats, Shallops, *&c.* and makes any thing that is to endure the Weather. This and the Hiccory are very tough Rods uſed to whip Horſes withal; yet their Wood, in Subſtance, is very brittle. This Tree the Vine much delights to twiſt about. It's good Fire-Wood, but very ſparkling, as well as Saſſafras. *Chinkapin.*

The Birch grows all on the Banks of our Rivers, very high up. I never ſaw a Tree on the Salts. It differs ſomething, in Bark, from the *European* Birch Its Buds in *April* are eaten by the Parrakeetos, which reſort, from all Parts, at that Seaſon, to feed thereon. Where this Wood grows, we are *Birch.*

not

not yet ſeated; and as to the Wine, or other Profits it would yield, we are, at preſent, Strangers to.

Willow. The Willow, here, likewiſe differs both in Bark and Leaf. It is frequently found on the Banks of freſh Water, as the Birch is.

Sycamore. The Sycamore, in theſe Parts, grows in a low, ſwampy Land, by River-ſides. Its Bark is quite different from the *Engliſh*, and the moſt beautiful I ever ſaw, being mottled and clowded with ſeveral Colours, as white, blue, *&c.* It bears no Keys but a Bur like the ſweet Gum. Its Uſes I am ignorant of.

Aſpin. I never ſaw any Aſpin, but in *Rapahannock*-River, from whence I brought one, (that was preſented me there as a great Preſent) but it died by the way.

Holly. Of Holly we have two ſorts; one having a large Leaf, the other a ſmaller. They grow very thick in our low Woods. Many of them are very ſtrait, and two Foot Diameter. They make good Trenchers, and other Turnery-Ware.

Red-Bud. The Red-Bud-Tree bears a purple Lark-Heel, and is the beſt Sallad, of any Flower I ever ſaw. It is ripe in *April* and *May*. They grow in Trees, generally ſmall, but ſome are a Foot Diameter.

Pelletory. Pelletory grows on the Sand-Banks and Iſlands. It is uſed to cure the Tooth-ach, by putting a Piece of the Bark in the Mouth, which being very hot, draws a Rhume from the Mouth, and cauſes much Spittle. The *Indians* uſe it to make their Compoſition, which they give to their young Men and Boys, when they are huſquenaw'd, of which you ſhall hear farther, when I come to treat of the Cuſtoms, *&c.* of that People.

Arrow-Wood. Arrow-Wood, growing on the Banks, is uſed, by the *Indians*, for Arrows and Gun-Sticks. It grows as ſtrait, as if plain'd, and is of all Sizes. 'Tis as tough and pliable, as the ſmalleſt Canes.

Cheſnut. The Cheſnut-Tree of *Carolina*, grows up towards the hilly Part thereof, is a very large and durable Wood, and fit for Houſe-Frames, Paliſado's, Sills, and many other Uſes. The Nut is ſmaller than thoſe from *Portugal*, but ſweeter.

Oak-Vine. This is no Tree, but call'd the Oak-Vine, by reaſon it bears a ſort of Bur as the Oak does, and generally runs up thoſe Trees. It's ſo porous, that you ſuck Liquors thro' a Length of two Foot.

Prickly-

Prickly-Aſh grows up like a Pole; of which the *Indians* and *Engliſh* make Poles to ſet their Canoes along in Shoal-Water. It's very light, and full of Thorns or Prickles, bearing Berries in large Cluſters, of a purple Colour, not much unlike the Alder. The Root of this Tree is Cathartick and Emetick, uſed in Cachexies.

The Poiſon Vine is ſo called, becauſe it colours the Hands of thoſe who handle it. What the Effects of it may be, I cannot relate; neither do I believe, that any has made an Experiment thereof. The Juice of this will ſtain Linnen, never to waſh out. It marks a blackiſh blue Colour, which is done only by breaking a bit of the Vine off, and writing what you pleaſe therewith. I have thought, that the *Eaſt-India* Natives ſet their Colours, by ſome ſuch Means, into their fineſt Callicoes. It runs up any Tree it meets withal, and claſps round about it. The Leaves are like Hemlock, and fall off in Winter. *Poiſon Vine.*

Of Canes and Reeds we have many ſorts. The hollow Reed, or Cane, ſuch as Angling-Rods are made of, and *Weavers* uſe, we have great Plenty of, though none to the Northward of *James*-River in *Virginia*. They always grow in Branches and low Ground. Their Leaves endure the Winter, in which Seaſon our Cattle eat them greedily. We have them (towards the Heads of our Rivers) ſo large, that one Joint will hold above a pint of Liquor. *Canes and Reeds.*

The ſmall *Bamboo* is next, which is a certain Vine, like the reſt of theſe Species, growing in low Land. They ſeldom, with us, grow thicker than a Man's little Finger, and are very tough. Their Root is a round Ball, which the *Indians* boil as we do Garden-Roots, and eat them. When theſe Roots have been ſome time out of the Ground, they become hard, and make good Heads to the Canes, on which ſeveral pretty Figures may be cut. There are ſeveral others of this kind, not thoroughly diſcover'd. Bamboo.

That *Palmeto* grows with us, which we call the dwarfiſh ſort; but the *Palmeto*-Tree I have not yet met withal in *North-Carolina*, of which you have a Deſcription elſewhere. We ſhall next treat of the Spontaneous Fruits of this Country; and then proceed to thoſe that have been tranſplanted from *Europe*, and other Parts. Palmeto.

Natural Vines. Among the natural Fruits, the Vine firſt takes place, of which I find ſix ſorts, very well known. The firſt is *Bunch-Grapes.* the black *Bunch-Grapes*, which yield a Crimſon Juice. Theſe grow common, and bear plentifully. They are of a good Reliſh, though not large, yet well knit in the Cluſters. They have a thickiſh Skin, and large Stone, which makes them not yield much Juice. There is another ſort of Black-Grapes like the former, in all reſpects, ſave that their Juice is of a light Fleſh-Colour, inclining to a White. I once ſaw a Spontaneous white Bunch-Grape in *Carolina*; but the Cattle browzing on the Sprouts thereof in the Spring, *Fox-Grapes.* it died. Of thoſe which we call *Fox-Grapes*, we have four ſorts; two whereof are called Summer-Grapes, becauſe ripe in *July*; the other two Winter-Fruit, becauſe not ripe till *September* or *October*. The Summer Fox-Grapes grow not in Cluſters, or great Bunches, but are about five or ſix in a Bunch, about the Bigneſs of a Damſon, or larger. The black ſort are frequent, the white not ſo commonly found. They always grow in Swamps, and low moiſt Lands, running ſometimes very high, and being ſhady, and therefore proper for Arbours. They afford the largeſt Leaf I ever ſaw, to my remembrance, the Back of which is of a white Horſe-fleſh Colour. This Fruit always ripens in the Shade. I have tranſplanted them into my Orchard, and find they thrive well, if manured: A Neighbour of mine has done the ſame; mine were by Slips, his from the Roots, which thrive to Admiration, and bear Fruit, tho' not ſo juicy as the *European* Grape, but of a glutinous Nature. However, it is pleaſant enough to eat.

The other Winter Fox-Grapes, are much of the ſame Bigneſs. Theſe refuſe no Ground, ſwampy or dry, but grow plentifully on the Sand-Hills along the Sea-Coaſt, and elſewhere, and are great Bearers. I have ſeen near twelve Buſhels upon one Vine of the black ſort. Some of theſe, when thoroughly ripe, have a very pretty vinous Taſte, and eat very well, yet are glutinous. The white ſort are clear and tranſparent, and indifferent ſmall Stones. Being removed by the Slip or Root, they thrive well in our Gardens, and make pleaſant Shades.

Perſimmons. *Perſimmon* is a Tree, that agrees with all Lands and Soils. Their Fruit, when ripe, is neareſt our Medlar; if eaten before,

before, draws your Mouth up like a Purſe, being the greateſt Aſtringent I ever met withal, therefore very uſeful in ſome Caſes. The Fruit, if ripe, will preſently cleanſe a foul Wound, but cauſes Pain. The Fruit is rotten, when ripe, and commonly contains four flat Kernels, call'd Stones, which is the Seed. 'Tis ſaid, the *Cortex Peruvianus* comes from a *Perſimmon*-Tree, that grows in *New-Spain*. I have try'd the Drying of this Bark, to imitate it, which it does tolerably well, and agrees therewith. It is binding enough to work the ſame Effect. The Tree, in extraordinary Land, comes ſometimes to two Foot Diameter, though not often. There are two ſorts of this Fruit; one ripe in Summer, the other when the Froſt viſits us.

We have three ſorts of Mulberries, beſides the different Bigneſs of ſome Trees Fruit. The firſt is the common red Mulberry, whoſe Fruit is the earlieſt we have, (except the Strawberries) and very ſweet. Theſe Trees make a very fine Shade, to ſit under in Summer-time. They are found wild in great Quantities, wherever the Land is light and rich; yet their Fruit is much better when they ſtand open. They are uſed inſtead of Raiſins and Currants, and make ſeveral pretty Kickſhaws. They yield a tranſparent Crimſon Liquor, which would make good Wine; but few Peoples Inclinations in this Country tend that way. The others are a ſmooth-leav'd Mulberry, fit for the Silk-Worm. One bears a white Fruit, which is common; the other bears a ſmall black Berry, very ſweet. They would perſuade me there, that the black Mulberry with the Silk-Worm ſmooth Leaf, was a white Mulberry, and changed its Fruit. The Wood hereof is very durable, and where the *Indians* cannot get Locuſt, they make uſe of this to make their Bows. This Tree grows extraordinary round and pleaſant to the Eye. *Mulberry.*

The Hiccory, Walnut, Chinkapin and Cheſnut, with their Fruits, we have mention'd before.

The Hazle-Nut grows plentifully in ſome places of this Country; eſpecially, towards the Mountains; but ours are not ſo good as the *Engliſh* Nuts, having a much thicker Shell (like all the Fruits of *America*, that I ever met withal) which in Hardneſs exceeds thoſe of *Europe*. *Hazle-Nut.*

Black-Cherries. The Cherries of the Woods grow to be very large Trees. One ſort, which is rarely found, is red, and not much unlike the Cornel-Berry. But the common Cherry grows high, and in Bunches, like *Engliſh* Currants, but much larger. They are of a bitteriſh ſweet Reliſh, and are equally valuable with our ſmall Black-Cherries, for an Infuſion in Spirits. They yield a crimſon Liquor, and are great Bearers.

Rasberries. Our Rasberries are of a purple Colour, and agreeable Reliſh, almoſt like the *Engliſh*; but I reckon them not quite ſo rich. When once planted, 'tis hard to root them out. They run wild all over the Country, and will bear the ſame Year you tranſplant them, as I have found by Experience.

Hurts. The Hurts, Huckle-Berries, or Blues of this Country, are four ſorts, which we are well acquainted withal; but more Species of this ſort, and all others, Time and Enquiry muſt diſcover. The firſt ſort is the ſame Blue or Bilberry, that grows plentifully in the *North* of *England*, and in other Places, commonly on your Heaths, Commons, and Woods, where Brakes or Fern grows.

The ſecond ſort grows on a ſmall Buſh in our *Savannas* and Meads, and in the Woods. They are larger than the common Fruit, and have larger Seed.

The third grows on the ſingle Stem of a Stick that grows in low good Land, and on the Banks of Rivers. They grow three or four Foot high, and are very pleaſant like the firſt ſort, but larger.

The fourth ſort grows upon Trees, ſome ten and twelve Foot high, and the Thickneſs of a Man's Arm; theſe are found in the Runs and low Grounds, and are very pleaſant, and bear wonderfully. The *Engliſh* ſometimes dry them in the Sun, and keep them to uſe in the Winter, inſtead of Currants. The *Indians* get many Buſhels, and dry them on Mats, whereof they make Plum-Bread, and many other Eatables. They are good in Tarts, or infuſed in Liquors.

Piemento. In the ſame Ground, commonly grows the *Piemento*, or All-Spice-Tree, whoſe Berries differ in ſhape from thoſe in the *Weſt-Indies*, being Taper or Conick, yet not inferiour to any of that ſort. This Tree grows much like the Hurts, and is of the ſame Bigneſs. I have known it tranſplanted to high Land, where it thrives.

Our

Our Dew-Berries are very good. But the Black-Berries are bitterish, and not so palatable, as in *England*. *Dews. Black-Berries.*

The Sugar-Tree ought to have taken place before. It is found in no other parts of *Carolina* or *America*, that I ever learnt, but in Places that are near the Mountains. It's most like one sort of Maple, of any Tree, and may be rank'd amongst that kind. This Tree, which, I am told, is of a very tedious Growth, is found very plentifully towards the Heads of some of our Rivers. The *Indians* tap it, and make Gourds to receive the Liquor, which Operation is done at distinct and proper times, when it best yields its Juice, of which, when the *Indians* have gotten enough, they carry it home, and boil it to a just Consistence of Sugar, which grains of itself, and serves for the same Uses, as other Sugar does. *Sugar Tree.*

The *Papau* is not a large Tree. I think, I never saw one a Foot through; but has the broadest Leaf of any Tree in the Woods, and bears an Apple about the Bigness of a Hen's Egg, yellow, soft, and as sweet, as any thing can well be. They make rare Puddings of this Fruit. The Apple contains a large Stone. *Papau.*

The wild Fig grows in *Virginia*, up in the Mountains, as I am inform'd by a Gentleman of my acquaintance, who is a Person of Credit, and a great Traveller in *America*. I shall be glad to have an Opportunity to make Tryal what Improvement might be made of this wild Fruit. *Wild Fig.*

The wild Plums of *America* are of several sorts. Those which I can give an account of from my own Knowledge, I will, and leave the others till a farther Discovery. The most frequent is that which we call the common *Indian* Plum, of which there are two sorts, if not more. One of these is ripe much sooner than the other, and differs in the Bark; one of the Barks being very scaly, like our *American* Birch. These Trees, when in Blossom, smell as sweet as any Jessamine, and look as white as a Sheet, being something prickly. You may make it grow to what Shape you please; they are very ornamental about a House, and make a wonderful fine Shew at a Distance, in the Spring, because of their white Livery. Their Fruit is red, and very palatable to the sick. They are of a quick Growth, and will bear from the Stone in five Years, on their Stock. The *Plum red.*

English

Engliſh large black Plum thrives well, as does the Cherry, being grafted thereon.

Damſons of America. The *American* Damſons are both black and white, and about the Bigneſs of an *European* Damſon. They grow any where, if planted from the Stone or Slip; bear a white Bloſſom, and are a good Fruit. They are found on the Sand-Banks all along the Coaſt of *America*. I have planted ſeveral in my Orchard, that came from the Stone, which thrive well amongſt the reſt of my Trees. But they never grow to the Bigneſs of the other Trees now ſpoken of. Theſe are plentiful Bearers.

There is a third ſort of Plum about the Bigneſs of the Damſon. The Tree is taller, ſeldom exceeding ten Inches in Thickneſs. The Plum ſeems to taſte phyſically, yet I never found any Operation it had, except to make their Lips ſore, that eat them. The Wood is ſomething porous, but exceeds any Box, for a beautiful Yellow.

Winter Currant. There is a very pretty, buſhy Tree, about ſeven or eight Foot high, very ſpreading, which bears a Winter-Fruit, that is ripe in *October*. They call 'em Currants, but they are nearer a Hurt. I have eaten very pretty Tarts made thereof. They dry them inſtead of Currants. This Buſh is very beautiful.

Bermudas *Currants.* The *Bermudas* Currants grow in the Woods on a Buſh, much like the *European* Currant. Some People eat them very much; but for my part, I can ſee nothing inviting in them, and reckon them a very indifferent Fruit.

April *Currants.* We have another Currant, which grows on the Banks of Rivers, or where only Clay hath been thrown up. This Fruit is red, and gone almoſt as ſoon as come. They are a pretty Fruit whilſt they laſt, and the Tree (for 'tis not a Buſh) they grow upon, is a very pleaſant Vegetable.

Red Haws. The Haw-thorn grows plentifully in ſome parts of this Country. The Haws are quite different from thoſe in *England*, being four times as big, and of a very pleaſant agreeable Taſte. We make no uſe of this Plant, nor any other, for Hedges, becauſe Timber is ſo plentiful at preſent. In my Judgment, the Honey-Locuſt would be the fitteſt for Hedges; becauſe it is very apt to ſhoot forth many Sprouts and Succours from the Roots; beſides, it is of a quick Growth, and very prickly.

The

The Black Haw grows on a ſlender Tree, about the Height of a Quince-Tree, or ſomething higher, and bears the black Haw, which People eat, and the Birds covet alſo. What Vertues the Fruit or Wood is of, I cannot reſolve you, at preſent. *Black-Haws.*

Thus have I given an Account of all the Spontaneous Fruits of *Carolina*, that have come to my Knowledge, excepting *Services*, which I have ſeen in the *Indians* Hands, and eat of them, but never ſaw, how nor where they grew. There may very well be expected a great many more Fruits, which are the natural Product of this Country, when we conſider the Fruitfulneſs of the Soil and Climate, and account for the vaſt Tract of Land, (great part of which is not yet found out) according to the Product of that which is already diſcover'd, which (as I once hinted before) is not as yet arriv'd to our Knowledge, we having very little or no Correſpondence amongſt the mountainous Parts of this Province, and towards the Country of *Meſſiaſippi*, all which we have ſtrange Accounts of, and ſome very large ones, with reſpect to the different and noble Fruits, and ſeveral other Ornaments and Bleſſings of Nature which *Meſſiaſippi* poſſeſſes; more to be coveted, than any of thoſe we enjoy, to the Eaſtward of the Mountains: Yet when I came to diſcourſe ſome of the Idolizers of that Country, I found it to be rather Novelty, than Truth and Reality, that induced thoſe Perſons to allow it ſuch Excellencies above others. It may be a brave and fertile Country, as I believe it is; but I cannot be perſuaded, that it can be near ſo advantageous as ours, which is much better ſituated for Trade, being faced all along with the Ocean, as the *Engliſh America* is; when the other is only a direct River, in the midſt of a wild unknown Land, greateſt part of whoſe Product muſt be fetch'd, or brought a great way, before it can come to a Market. Moreover, ſuch great Rivers commonly allow of more Princes Territories than one; and thus nothing but War and Contention accompanies the Inhabitants thereof. *Services.*

But not to trouble our Readers with any more of this, we will proceed, in the next place, to ſhew, what *Exotick* Fruits we have, that thrive well in *Carolina*; and what others, it may reaſonably be ſuppos'd, would do there, were they brought thither and planted. In purſuance of which, I will

ſet

ſet down a Catalogue of what Fruits we have; I mean Species: For ſhould I pretend to give a regular Name to every one; it's neither poſſible for me to do it, nor for any one to underſtand it, when done; if we conſider, that the chiefeſt part of our Fruit came from the Kernel, and ſome others from the Succours, or Sprouts of the Tree. Firſt, we will begin with Apples; which are the

Apples.

Golden Ruſſet.
Pearmain { Winter. / Summer.
Harvey-Apple, I cannot tell, whether the ſame as in *England.*
Winter Queening.
Leather Coat.
Juniting.
Codlin.
Redſtreak.
Long-ſtalk.
Lady-Finger.

The Golden Ruſſet thrives well.

The Pearmains, of both ſorts, are apt to ſpeck, and rot on the Trees; and the Trees are damaged and cut off by the Worm, which breeds in the Forks, and other parts thereof; and often makes a Circumpoſition, by deſtroying the Bark round the Branches, till it dies.

Harvey-Apple; that which we call ſo, is eſteem'd very good to make Cider of.

Winter Queening is a durable Apple, and makes good Cider.

Leather-Coat; both Apple and Tree ſtand well.

The Juniting is early ripe, and ſoon gone, in theſe warm Countries.

Codlin; no better, and fairer Fruit in the World; yet the Tree ſuffers the ſame Diſtemper, as the Pearmains, or rather worſe; the Trees always dying before they come to their Growth.

The Redſtreak thrives very well.

Long-ſtalk is a large Apple, with a long Stalk, and makes good Summer Cider.

We

We beat the firſt of our Codlin Cider, againſt reaping our Wheat, which is from the tenth of *June*, to the five and twentieth.

Lady-Finger, the long Apple, the ſame as in *England*, and full as good. We have innumerable ſorts; ſome call'd Rope-Apples which are ſmall Apples, hanging like Ropes of Onions; Flattings, Grigſons, Cheeſe-Apples, and a great number of Names, given according to every ones Diſcretion.

Pears. The *Warden-Pear* here proves a good eating Pear; and is not ſo long ripening as in *England*.

Katharine excellent.

Sugar-pear.

And ſeveral others without Name, The Bergamot we have not, nor either of the Bonne Chreſtiennes, though I hear, they are all three in *Virginia*. Thoſe ſorts of Pears which we have, are as well reliſht, as ever I eat any where; but that Fruit is of very ſhort Continuance with us, for they are gone almoſt as ſoon as ripe.

Quinces. I am not a Judge of the different ſorts of Quinces, which they call *Brunſwick*, *Portugal*, and *Barbary*; But as to the Fruit, in general, I believe no Place has fairer and better reliſht. They are very pleaſant eaten raw. Of this Fruit, they make a Wine, or Liquor, which they call Quince-Drink, and which I approve of beyond any Drink which that Country affords, though a great deal of Cider and ſome Perry is there made. The Quince-Drink moſt commonly purges thoſe that firſt drink it, and cleanſes the Body very well. The Argument of the Phyſicians, that they bind People, is hereby contradicted, unleſs we allow the Quinces to differ in the two Countries. The leaſt Slip of this Tree ſtuck in the Ground, comes to bear in three years.

Peaches. All Peaches, with us, are ſtanding; neither have we any Wall-Fruit in *Carolina*; for we have Heat enough, and therefore do not require it. We have a great many ſorts of this Fruit, which all thrive to Admiration, Peach-Trees coming to Perfection (with us) as eaſily as the Weeds. A Peach falling on the Ground, brings a Peach-Tree that ſhall bear in three years, or ſometimes ſooner. Eating Peaches in our Orchards makes them come up ſo thick from the Kernel, that we are forced to take a great deal of Care to weed them out; otherwiſe they make our Land a Wilderneſs of Peach-Trees.

They generally bear so full, that they break great part of their Limbs down. We have likewise very fair Nectarines, especially the red, that clings to the Stone, the other yellow Fruit, that leaves the Stone; of the last, I have a Tree, that, most Years, brings me fifteen or twenty Bushels. I see no Foreign Fruit like this, for thriving in all sorts of Land, and bearing its Fruit to Admiration. I want to be satisfy'd about one sort of this Fruit, which the *Indians* claim as their own, and affirm, they had it growing amongst them, before any *Europeans* came to *America*. The Fruit I will describe, as exactly as I can. The Tree grows very large, most commonly as big as a handsome Apple-tree; the Flowers are of a reddish, murrey Colour; the Fruit is rather more downy, than the yellow Peach, and commonly very large and soft, being very full of Juice. They part freely from the Stone, and the Stone is much thicker than all the other Peach Stones we have, which seems to me, that it is a Spontaneous Fruit of *America*; yet in those Parts of *America* that we inhabit, I never could hear that any Peach-Trees were ever found growing in the Woods; neither have the foreign *Indians*, that live remote from the *English*, any other sort. And those living amongst us have a hundred of this sort for one other; they are a hardy Fruit, and are seldom damaged by the North-East Blasts, as others are. Of this sort we make Vinegar; wherefore we call them Vinegar-Peaches, and sometimes *Indian*-Peaches.

Apricock. This Tree grows to a vast Bigness, exceeding most Apple-Trees. They bear well, tho' sometimes an early Spring comes on in *February*, and perhaps, when the Tree is fully blown the Cloudy North-East-Winds which attend the end of, that Month, or the beginning of *March*, destroy most of the Fruit. The biggest Apricock-Tree I ever saw, as they told me, was grafted on a Peach-Stock, in the Ground. I know of no other sort with us, than the Common. We generally raise this Fruit from the Stone, which never fails to bring the same Fruit. Likewise our Peach-Stones effect the same, without so much as once missing, to produce the same sort that the Stone came from.

Damson, Damazeen, and a large round black Plum are all I have met withal in *Carolina*. They thrive well enough; the

the laſt to Admiration, and becomes a very large Tree, if in ſtiff Ground; otherwiſe they will not do well.

Of Figs we have two ſorts; One is the low Buſh-Fig, which bears a large Fruit. If the Winter happens to have much Froſt, the tops thereof die, and in the Spring ſprout again, and bear two or three good Crops. *Figs.*

The Tree-Fig is a leſſer Fig, though very ſweet. The Tree grows to a large Body and Shade, and generally brings a good Burden; eſpecially, if in light Land. This Tree thrives no where better, than on the Sand-Banks by the Sea.

We have the common red and black Cherry, which bear well. I never ſaw any grafted in this Country, the common excepted, which was grafted on an *Indian* Plum-ſtock, and bore well. This is a good way, becauſe our common Cherry-Trees are very apt to put Scions all round the Tree, for a great Diſtance, which muſt needs be prejudicial to the Tree and Fruit. Not only our Cherries are apt to do ſo, but our Apples and moſt other Fruit-Trees, which may chiefly be imputed to the Negligence and Unskilfulneſs of the Gardener. Our Cherries are ripe a Month ſooner than in *Virginia*. *Cherries.*

Goosberries I have ſeen of the ſmaller ſort, but find they do not do ſo well as in *England*, and to the Northward. Want of Dreſſing may be ſome Reaſon for this. *Goosberry.*

Currants, White, Red, and Black, thrive here, as well as any where. *Currants.*

Rasberries, the red and white, I never ſaw any Trial made of. But there is no doubt of their thriving to Admiration, ſince thoſe of the Country do ſo well. *Raſps.*

The Mulberries are ſpontaneous. We have no others, than what I have already mentioned in the Claſs of Natural Fruits of *Carolina*. *Mulberry.*

Barberry red, with Stones, and without Stones, grow here. *Barberry.*

Strawberries, not Foreign, but thoſe of the Country, grow here in great Plenty. Laſt *April* I planted a Bed of two hunded Foot in Length, which bore the ſame Year. *Strawberry.*

Medlars we have none. *Medlar.*

All ſorts of Walnuts from *England*, *France*, and *Maderas*, thrive well from the Nut. *Walnut.*

Filbert. No Filberts, but Hazle-Nuts; the Filbert-Nut planted, becomes a good Hazle-Nut, and no better.

Vines. As for that noble Vegetable the Vine, without doubt, it may (in this Country) be improved, and brought to the same Perfection, as it is, at this Day, in the same Latitude in *Europe*, since the chiefest part of this Country is a deep, rich, black Mould, which is up towards the Freshes and Heads of our Rivers, being very rich and mix'd with Flint, Pebbles, and other Stones. And this sort of Soil is approv'd of (by all knowing Gardeners and Vigneroons) as a proper Earth, in which the Grape chiefly delights; and what seems to give a farther Confirmation hereof, is, that the largest Vines, that were ever discover'd to grow wild, are found in those Parts, oftentimes in such Plenty, and are so interwoven with one another, that 'tis impossible to pass through them. Moreover, in these Freshes, towards the Hills, the Vines are above five times bigger than those generally with us, who are seated in the Front-parts of this Country, adjoining to the Salts. Of the wild Vines, which are most of them great Bearers, some Wine has been made, which I drank of. It was very strong and well reliſht; but what detains them all from offering at great quantities, they add, that this Grape has a large Stone, and a thick Skin, and consequently yields but a small Quantity of Wine. Some Essays of this Nature have been made by that Honourable Knight, Sir *Nathanael Johnson*, in *South Carolina*, who, as I am inform'd, has rejected all Exotick Vines, and makes his Wine from the natural black Grape of *Carolina*, by grafting it upon its own Stock. What Improvement this may arrive to, I cannot tell; but in other Species, I own Grafting and Imbudding yields speedy Fruit, tho' I never found that it made them better.

New planted Colonies are generally attended with a Force and Necessity of Planting the known and approved Staple and Product of the Country, as well as all the Provisions their Families spend. Therefore we can entertain but small hopes of the Improvement of the Vine, till some skilful in dressing Vines shall appear amongst us, and go about it, with a Resolution, that Ordering the Vineyard shall be one half of their Employment. If this be begun and carried on, with that Assiduity and Resolution which it re-

requires, then we may reasonably hope to see this a Wine-Country; for then, when it becomes a general Undertaking, every one will be capable to add something to the common Stock, of that which he has gain'd by his own Experience. This way would soon make the Burden light, and a great many shorter and exacter Curiosities, and real Truths would be found out in a short time. The trimming of Vines, as they do in *France*, that is, to a Stump, must either here be not follow'd, or we are not sensible of the exact time, when they ought to be thus pruned; for Experience has taught us, that the *European* Grape, suffer'd to run and expand itself at large, has been found to bear as well in *America*, as it does in *Europe*; when, at the same time, the same sort of Vine trimm'd to a Stump, as before spoken of, has born a poor Crop for one Year or two; and by its spilling, after cutting, emaciated, and in three or four Years, died. This Experiment, I believe, has never fail'd; for I have trimm'd the natural Vine the *French* way, which has been attended, at last, with the same Fate. Wherefore, it seems most expedient, to leave the Vines more Branches here, than in *Europe*, or let them run up Trees, as some do, in *Lombardy*, upon Elms. The Mulberries and *Chinkapin* are tough, and trimm'd to what you please, therefore fit Supporters of the Vines. Gelding and plucking away the Leaves, to hasten the ripening of this Fruit, may not be unnecessary, yet we see the natural wild Grape generally ripens in the Shade. Nature in this, and many others, may prove a sure Guide. The Twisting of the Stems to make the Grapes ripe together, loses no Juice, and may be beneficial, if done in Season. A very ingenious *French* Gentleman, and another from *Switzerland*, with whom I frequently converse, exclaim against that strict cutting of Vines, the generally approved Method of *France* and *Germany*, and say, that they were both out in their Judgment, till of late, Experience has taught them otherwise. Moreover, the *French* in *North Carolina* assure me, that if we should trim our Apple and other Fruit-Trees, as they do in *Europe*, we should spoil them. As for Apples and Plums, I have found by Experience, what they affirm to be true. The *French*, from the *Mannakin* Town on the Freshes of *James* River in *Virginia*, had

had, for the most part, removed themselves to *Carolina*, to live there, before I came away; and the rest were following, as their Minister, (Monsieur *Philip de Rixbourg*) told me, who was at *Bath*-Town, when I was taking my leave of my Friends. He assur'd me, that their Intent was to propagate Vines, as far as their present Circumstances would permit; provided they could get any Slips of Vines, that would do. At the same time, I had gotten some Grape-Seed, which was of the *Jesuits* white Grape from *Madera*. The Seed came up very plentifully, and, I hope, will not degenerate, which if it happens not to do, the Seed may prove the best way to raise a Vineyard, as certainly it is most easy for Transportation. Yet I reckon we should have our Seed from a Country, where the Grape arrives to the utmost Perfection of Ripeness. These *French* Refugees have had small Encouragement in *Virginia*, because, at their first coming over, they took their Measures of Living, from *Europe*; which was all wrong; for the small Quantities of ten, fifteen, and twenty Acres to a Family did not hold out according to their way of Reckoning, by Reason they made very little or no Fodder; and the Winter there being much harder than with us, their Cattle fail'd; chiefly, because the *English* took up and survey'd all the Land round about them; so that they were hemm'd in on all Hands from providing more Land for themselves or their Children, all which is highly prejudicial in *America*, where the generality are bred up to Planting. One of these *French* Men being a Fowling, shot a Fowl in the River, upon which his Dog went down the Bank to bring it to his Master; but the Bank was so high and steep, that he could not get up again. Thereupon, the *French* Man went down, to help his Dog up, and breaking the Mould away, accidentally, with his Feet, he discover'd a very rich Coal-Mine. This Adventure he gave an Accouut of amongst the Neighbourhood, and presently one of the Gentlemen of that Part survey'd the Land, and the poor *French* Man got nothing by his Discovery. The *French* are good Neighbours amongst us, and give Examples of Industry, which is much wanted in this Country. They make good Flax, Hemp, Linnen-Cloth and Thread; which they exchange amongst the Neighbourhood for other Commodities, for which they have occasion.

We

RPJCB

p.115.
p.133.
p.132.
p.120.
p.118
p.120.
p.116.
p.121.

We have hitherto made no Tryal of foreign Herbage; but, doubtless, it would thrive well; especially, *Sanfoin*, and those Grasses, that endure Heat, and dry Grounds. As for our Low Lands, such as Marshes, Savannas and Percoarson-Ground, which lies low, all of them naturally afford good Land for Pasturage.

We will next treat of the Beasts, which you shall have an Account of, as they have been discover'd.

The Beasts of *Carolina* are the

Buffelo, or wild Beef.
Bear.
Panther.
Cat-a-mount.
Wild Cat.
Wolf.
Tyger.
Polcat.
Otter.
Bever.
Musk-Rat.
Possum.
Raccoon.
Minx.
Water-Rat.
Rabbet, two sorts.
Elks.
Stags.
Fallow-Deer.
Squirrel, four sorts.
Fox.
Lion, and Jackall on the Lake.
Rats, two sorts.
Mice, two sorts.
Moles.
Weasel, Dormouse.
Bearmouse.

The *Buffelo* is a wild Beast of *America*, which has a Bunch on his Back, as the Cattle of St. *Laurence* are said to have. He seldom appears amongst the *English* Inhabitants, his chief Haunt being in the Land of *Messiasippi*, which is, for the most part, a plain Country; yet I have known some kill'd on the Hilly Part of *Cape-Fair*-River, they passing the Ledges of vast Mountains from the said *Messiasippi*, before they can come near us. I have eaten of their Meat, but do not think it so good as our Beef; yet the younger Calves are cry'd up for excellent Food, as very likely they may be. It is conjectured, that these Buffelos, mixt in Breed with our tame Cattle, would much better the Breed for Largeness and Milk, which seems very probable. Of the wild Bull's Skin, Buff is made. The *Indians* cut the Skins into Quarters for the Ease of

Two killed one year in Virginia *at* Appamaticks.

of their Tranſportation, and make Beds to lie on. They ſpin the Hair into Garters, Girdles, Saſhes, and the like, it being long and curled, and often of a cheſnut or red Colour. Theſe Monſters are found to weigh (as I am informed by a Traveller of Credit) from 1600 to 2400 Weight.

Bear. The Bears here are very common, though not ſo large as in *Groenland*, and the more Northern Countries of *Ruſſia*. The Fleſh of this Beaſt is very good, and nouriſhing, and not inferiour to the beſt Pork in Taſte. It ſtands betwixt Beef and Pork, and the young Cubs are a Diſh for the greateſt *Epicure* living. I prefer their Fleſh before any Beef, Veal, Pork, or Mutton; and they look as well as they eat, their fat being as white as Snow, and the ſweeteſt of any Creature's in the World. If a Man drink a Quart thereof melted, it never will riſe in his Stomach. We prefer it above all things, to fry Fiſh and other things in. Thoſe that are Strangers to it, may judge otherwiſe; But I who have eaten a great deal of Bears Fleſh in my Life-time (ſince my being an Inhabitant in *America*) do think it equalizes, if not excels, any Meat I ever eat in *Europe*. The Bacon made thereof is extraordinary Meat; but it muſt be well ſaved, otherwiſe it will ruſt. This Creature feeds upon all ſorts of wild Fruits. When Herrings run, which is in *March*, the Fleſh of ſuch of thoſe Bears as eat thereof, is nought, all that Seaſon, and eats filthily. Neither is it good, when he feeds on Gum-berries, as I intimated before. They are great Devourers of Acorns, and oftentimes meet the Swine in the Woods, which they kill and eat, eſpecially when they are hungry, and can find no other Food. Now and then they get into the Fields of *Indian* Corn, or *Maiz*, where they make a ſad Havock, ſpoiling ten times as much as they eat. The Potatos of this Country are ſo agreeable to them, that they never fail to ſweep 'em all clean, if they chance to come in their way. They are ſeemingly a very clumſy Creature, yet are very nimble in running up Trees, and traverſing every Limb thereof. When they come down, they run Tail foremoſt. At catching of Herrings, they are moſt expert Fiſhers. They ſit by the Creek-ſides, (which are very narrow) where the Fiſh run in; and there they take them up, as faſt as it's poſſible they can dip their Paws into the Water. There is one thing more to be conſider'd of this

this Creature, which is, that no Man, either Chriſtian or *Indian*, has ever kill'd a She-bear with Young.

It is ſuppoſed, that the She-Bears, after Conception, hide themſelves in ſome ſecret and undiſcoverable Place, till they bring forth their Young, which, in all Probability, cannot be long; otherwiſe, the *Indians*, who hunt the Woods like Dogs, would, at ſome time or other, have found them out. Bear-Hunting is a great Sport in *America*, both with the *Engliſh* and *Indians*. Some Years ago, there were kill'd five hundred Bears, in two Counties of *Virginia*, in one Winter; and but two She-Bears amongſt them all, which were not with Young, as I told you of the reſt. The *Engliſh* have a breed of Dogs fit for this ſport, about the ſize of Farmers Curs, and, by Practice, come to know the Scent of a Bear, which as ſoon as they have found, they run him, by the Noſe, till they come up with him, and then bark and ſnap at him, till he trees, when the Huntſman ſhoots him out of the Trees, there being, for the moſt part, two or three with Guns, leſt the firſt ſhould miſs, or not quite kill him. Though they are not naturally voracious, yet they are very fierce when wounded. The Dogs often bring him to a Bay, when wounded, and then the Huntſmen make other Shots, perhaps with the Piſtols that are ſtuck in their Girdles. If a Dog is apt to faſten, and run into a Bear, he is not good, for the beſt Dog in *Europe* is nothing in their Paws; but if ever they get him in their Clutches, they blow his Skin from his Fleſh, like a Bladder, and often kill him; or if he recovers it, he is never good for any thing after. As the Paws of this Creature, are held for the beſt bit about him, ſo is the Head eſteem'd the worſt, and always thrown away, for what reaſon I know not. I believe, none ever made Trial thereof, to know how it eats. The Oil of the Bear is very Sovereign for Strains, Aches, and old Pains. The fine Fur at the bottom of the Belly, is uſed for making Hats, in ſome places. The Fur itſelf is fit for ſeveral Uſes; as for making Muffs, facing Caps, *&c.* but the black Cub-skin is preferable to all ſorts of that kind, for Muffs. Its Grain is like Hog-Skin.

The *Panther* is of the Cat's kind; about the height of a very large Greyhound of a reddiſh Colour, the ſame as a Lion. He climbs Trees with the greateſt Agility imaginable, *Panther.*

is very ſtrong-limb'd, catching a piece of Meat from any Creature he ſtrikes at. His Tail is exceeding long; his Eyes look very fierce and lively, are large, and of a grayiſh Colour; his Prey is, Swines-fleſh, Deer, or any thing he can take; no Creature is ſo nice and clean, as this, in his Food. When he has got his Prey, he fills his Belly with the Slaughter, and carefully lays up the Remainder, covering it very neatly with Leaves, which if any thing touches, he never eats any more of it. He purrs as Cats do; if taken when Young, is never to be reclaim'd from his wild Nature. He hollows like a Man in the Woods, when kill'd, which is by making him take a Tree, as the leaſt Cur will preſently do; then the Huntſmen ſhoot him; if they do not kill him outright, he is a dangerous Enemy, when wounded, eſpecially to the Dogs that approach him. This Beaſt is the greataſt Enemy to the Planter, of any Vermine in *Carolina*. His Fleſh looks as well as any Shambles-Meat whatſoever; a great many People eat him, as choice Food; but I never taſted of a Panther, ſo cannot commend the Meat, by my own Experience. His Skin is a warm Covering for the *Indians* in Winter, though not eſteem'd amongſt the choice Furs. This Skin dreſs'd, makes fine Womens Shooes, or Mens Gloves.

Cat-a-Moun. The Mountain-Cat, ſo call'd, becauſe he lives in the Mountainous Parts of *America*. He is a Beaſt of Prey, as the Panther is, and neareſt to him in Bigneſs and Nature.

Wild Cat. This Cat is quite different from thoſe in *Europe*; being more nimble and fierce, and larger; his Tail does not exceed four Inches. He makes a very odd ſort of Cry in the Woods, in the Night. He is ſpotted as the Leopard is, tho' ſome of them are not, (which may happen, when their Furs are out of Seaſon) he climbs a Tree very dexterouſly, and preys as the Panther does. He is a great Deſtroyer of young Swine. I knew an Iſland, which was poſſeſs'd by theſe Vermine, unknown to the Planter, who put thereon a conſiderable Stock of Swine; but never took one back; for the wild Cats deſtroy'd them all. He takes moſt of his Prey by Surprize, getting up the Trees, which they paſs by or under, and thence leaping directly upon them. Thus he takes Deer (which he cannot catch by running) and faſtens his Teeth into their Shoulders and ſucks them. They run with him, till they fall

fall down for want of ſtrength, and become a Prey to the Enemy. Hares, Birds, and all he meets, that he can conquer, he deſtroys. The Fur is approv'd to wear as a Stomacher, for weak and cold Stomachs. They are likewiſe uſed to line Muffs, and Coats withal, in cold Climates.

The Wolf of *Carolina*, is the Dog of the Woods. The *Indians* had no other Curs, before the Chriſtians came amongſt them. They are made domeſtick. When wild, they are neither ſo large, nor fierce, as the *European* Wolf. They are not Man-ſlayers; neither is any Creature in *Carolina*, unleſs wounded. They go in great Droves in the Night, to hunt Deer, which they do as well as the beſt Pack of Hounds. Nay, one of theſe will hunt down a Deer. They are often ſo poor, that they can hardly run. When they catch no Prey, they go to a Swamp, and fill their Belly full of Mud; if afterwards they chance to get any thing of Fleſh, they will diſgorge the Mud, and eat the other. When they hunt in the Night, that there is a great many together, they make the moſt hideous and frightful Noiſe, that ever was heard. The Fur makes good Muffs. The Skin dreſs'd to a Parchment makes the beſt Drum-Heads, and if tann'd makes the beſt ſort of Shooes for the Summer-Countries. *Wolf.*

Tygers are never met withal in the Settlement; but are more to the Weſtward, and are not numerous on this Side the Chain of Mountains. I once ſaw one, that was larger that a Panther, and ſeem'd to be a very bold Creature. The *Indians* that hunt in thoſe Quarters, ſay, they are ſeldom met withal. It ſeems to differ from the Tyger of *Aſia* and *Africa*. *Tyger.*

Polcats or Skunks in *America*, are different from thoſe in *Europe*. They are thicker, and of a great many Colours; not all alike, but each differing from another in the particular Colour. They ſmell like a Fox, but ten times ſtronger. When a Dog encounters them, they piſs upon him, and he will not be ſweet again in a Fortnight or more. The *Indians* love to eat their Fleſh, which has no manner of ill Smell, when the Bladder is out. I know no uſe their Furs are put to. They are eaſily brought up tame. *Polcat.*

There have been ſeen ſome Otters from the Weſtward of *Carolina*, which were of a white Colour, a little inclining to a yellow. They live on the ſame Prey here, as in *Europe*, and are the ſame in all other Reſpects; ſo I ſhall inſiſt no *Otters.*

farther on that Creature. Their Furs, if black, are valuable.

Bevers. Bevers are very numerous in *Carolina*, their being abundance of their Dams in all Parts of the Country, where I have travel'd. They are the moſt induſtrious and greateſt Artificers (in building their Dams and Houſes) of any four-footed Creatures in the World. Their Food is chiefly the Barks of Trees and Shrubs, *viz.* Saſſafras, Aſh, Sweet-Gum, and ſeveral others. If you take them young, they become very tame and domeſtick, but are very miſchievous in ſpoiling Orchards, by breaking the Trees, and blocking up your Doors in the Night, with the Sticks and Wood they bring thither. If they eat any thing that is ſalt, it kills them. Their Fleſh is a ſweet Food; eſpecially, their Tail, which is held very dainty. There Fore-Feet are open, like a Dog's; their Hind-Feet webb'd like a Water-Fowl's. The Skins are good Furs for ſeveral Uſes, which every one knows. The Leather is very thick; I have known Shooes made thereof in *Carolina*, which laſted well. It makes the beſt Hedgers Mittens that can be uſed.

Musk Rat. Musk Rats frequent freſh Streams and no other; as the Bever does. He has a Cod of Musk, which is valuable, as is likewiſe his Fur.

Poſſum. The *Poſſum* is found no where but in *America*. He is the Wonder of all the Land-Animals, being the ſize of a Badger, and near that Colour. The Male's Pizzle is placed retrograde; and in time of Coition, they differ from all other Animals, turning Tail to Tail, as Dog and Bitch when ty'd. The Female, doubtleſs, breeds her Young at her Teats; for I have ſeen them ſtick faſt thereto, when they have been no bigger than a ſmall Rasberry, and ſeemingly inanimate. She has a Paunch, or falſe Belly, wherein ſhe carries her Young, after they are from thoſe Teats, till they can ſhift for themſelves. Their Food is Roots, Poultry, or wild Fruits. They have no Hair on their Tails, but a ſort of a Scale, or hard Cruſt, as the Bevers have. If a Cat has nine Lives, this Creature ſurely has nineteen; for if you break every Bone in their Skin, and maſh their Skull, leaving them for Dead, you may come an hour after, and they will be gone quite away, or perhaps you meet them creeping away. They are a very ſtupid Creature, utterly neglecting their Safety. They

are

are moſt like Rats of any thing. I have, for Neceſſity in the Wilderneſs, eaten of them. Their Fleſh is very white, and well taſted; but their ugly Tails put me out of Conceit with that Fare. They climb Trees, as the Raccoons do. Their Fur is not eſteem'd nor uſed, ſave that the *Indians* ſpin it into Girdles and Garters.

The *Raccoon* is of a dark-gray Colour; if taken young, is eaſily made tame, but is the drunkeneſt Creature living, if he can get any Liquor that is ſweet and ſtrong. They are rather more unlucky than a Monkey. When wild, they are very ſubtle in catching their Prey. Thoſe that live in the Salt-Water, feed much on Oyſters which they love. They watch the Oyſter when it opens, and nimbly put in their Paw, and pluck out the Fiſh. Sometimes the Oyſter ſhuts, and holds faſt their Paw till the Tide comes in, that they are drown'd, tho' they ſwim very well. The way that this Animal catches Crabs, which he greatly admires, and which are plenty in *Carolina*, is worthy of Remark. When he intends to make a Prey of theſe Fiſh, he goes to a Marſh, where ſtanding on the Land, he lets his Tail hang in the Water. This the Crab takes for a Bait, and faſtens his Claws therein, which as ſoon as the *Raccoon* perceives, he, of a ſudden, ſprings forward, a conſiderable way, on the Land, and brings the Crab along with him. As ſoon as the Fiſh finds himſelf out of his Element, he preſently lets go his hold; and then the *Raccoon* encounters him, by getting him croſs-wiſe in his Mouth, and devours him. There is a ſort of ſmall Land-Crab, which we call a *Fiddler*, that runs into a Hole when any thing purſues him. This Crab the *Raccoon* takes by putting his Fore-Foot in the Hole, and pulling him out. With a tame *Raccoon*, this Sport is very diverting. The Chief of his other Food is all ſorts of wild Fruits, green Corn, and ſuch as the Bear delights in. This and the *Poſſum* are much of a Bigneſs. The Fur makes good Hats and Linings. The Skin dreſs'd makes fine Womens Shooes. *Raccoon.*

The *Minx* is an Animal much like the *Engliſh* Fillimart or Polcat. He is long, ſlender, and every way ſhap'd like him. His Haunts are chiefly in the Marſhes, by the Sea-ſide and Salt-Waters, where he lives on Fiſh, Fowl, Mice, and Inſects. They are bold Thieves, and will ſteal any thing *Minx.*

from

from you in the Night, when aſleep, as I can tell by Experience; for one Winter, by Misfortune, I ran my Veſſel a-ground, and went often to the Banks, to kill wild Fowl, which we did a great many. One Night, we had a mind to ſleep on the Banks (the Weather being fair) and wrapt up the Geeſe which we had kill'd, and not eaten, very carefully, in the Sail of a Canoe, and folded it ſeveral Doubles, and for their better Security, laid 'em all Night under my Head. In the Morning when I wak'd, a Minx had eaten thro' every Fold of the Canoe's Sail, and thro' one of the Geeſe, moſt part of which was gone. Theſe are likewiſe found high up in the Rivers, in whoſe ſides they live; which is known by the abundance of Freſh-Water Muſcle-Shells (ſuch as you have in *England*) that lie at the Mouth of their Holes. This is an Enemy to the Tortois, whoſe Holes in the Sand, where they hide their Eggs, the *Minx* finds out, and ſcratches up and eats. The *Raccoons* and Crows do the ſame. The *Minx* may be made domeſtick, and were it not for his paying a Viſit now and then to the Poultry, they are the greateſt Deſtroyers of Rats and Mice, that are in the World. Their Skins, if good of that kind, are valuable, provided they are kill'd in Seaſon.

Water-Rats. The Water-Rat is found here the ſame as in *England*. The Water-Snakes are often found to have of theſe Rats in their Bellies.

Coneys. That which the People of *Carolina* call a Hare, is nothing but a Hedge-Coney. They never borough in the Ground, but much frequent Marſhes and Meadow-Land. They hide their Young in ſome Place ſecure from the Diſcovery of the Buck, as the *European* Rabbets do, and are of the ſame Colour; but if you ſtart one of them, and purſue her, ſhe takes into a hollow Tree, and there runs up as far as ſhe can, in which Caſe the Hunter makes a Fire, and ſmoaks the Tree, which brings her down, and ſmothers her. At one time of the Year, great Bots or Maggots breed betwixt the Skin and the Fleſh of theſe Creatures. They eat juſt as the *Engliſh* ones do; but I never ſaw one of them fat. We fire the Marſhes, and then kill abundance.

Rabbet Engliſh. The *Engliſh*, or *European* Coneys are here found, tho' but in one place that I ever knew of, which was in *Trent*-River, where they borough'd among the Rocks. I cannot believe,

believe, these are Natives of the Country, any otherwise than that they might come from aboard some Wreck; the Sea not being far off. I was told of several that were upon *Bodies* Island by *Ronoak*, which came from that Ship of *Bodies*; but I never saw any. However the Banks are no proper Abode of Safety, because of the many *Minxes* in those Quarters. I carried over some of the tame sort from *England* to South *Carolina*, which bred three times going over, we having a long Passage. I turn'd them loose in a Plantation, and the young ones, and some of the old ones bred great Maggots in their Testicles. At last, the great Gust in *September*, 1700. brought a great deal of Rain, and drown'd them all in their Holes. I intend to make a second Tryal of them in North *Carolina*, and doubt not but to secure them.

Elks. The Elk is a Monster of the Venison sort. His Skin is used almost in the same Nature as the *Buffelo*'s. Some take him for the red Deer of *America*; but he is not: For, if brought and kept in Company with one of that sort, of the contrary Sex, he will never couple. His Flesh is not so sweet as the lesser Deers. His Horns exceed (in Weight) all Creatures which the new World affords. They will often resort and feed with the *Buffelo*, delighting in the same Range as they do.

Stags. The Stags of *Carolina* are lodg'd in the Mountains. They are not so large as in *Europe*, but much larger than any Fallow-Deer. They are always fat, I believe, with some delicate Herbage that grows on the Hills; for we find all Creatures that graze much fatter and better Meat on the Hills, than those in the Valleys: I mean towards and near the Sea. Some Deer on these Mountains afford the occidental *Bezoar*, not coming from a Goat, as some report. What sort of Beast affords the oriental *Bezoar*, I know not. The Tallow of the Harts make incomparable Candles. Their Horns and Hides are of the same Value, as others of their kind.

Fallow-Deer. Fallow-Deer in *Carolina*, are taller and longer-legg'd, than in *Europe*; but neither run so fast, nor are so well haunch'd. Their Singles are much longer, and their Horns stand forward, as the others incline backward; neither do they beam, or bear their Antlers, as the *English* Deer do. Towards the Salts, they are not generally so fat and good Meat, as on the Hills. I have known some kill'd on the Salts in *January*, that

that have had abundance of Bots in their Throat, which keep them very poor. As the Summer approaches, these Bots come out, and turn into the finest Butterfly imaginable, being very large, and having black, white, and yellow Stripes. Deer-Skins are one of the best Commodities *Carolina* affords, to ship off for *England*, provided they be large.

Fox Squirrel. Of Squirrels we have four Sorts. The first is the Fox-Squirrel, so call'd, because of his large Size, which is the Bigness of a Rabbet of two or three Months old. His Colour is commonly gray; yet I have seen several pied ones, and some reddish, and black; his chiefest Haunts are in the Piny Land, where the Almond-Pine grows. There he provides his Winter-Store; they being a Nut that never fails of bearing. He may be made tame, and is very good Meat, when killed.

Small gray Squirrel. The next sort of Squirrel is much of the Nature of the *English*, only differing in Colour. Their Food is Nuts (of all sorts the Country affords) and Acorns. They eat well; and, like the Bear, are never found with young.

Flying-Squirrel. This Squirrel is gray, as well as the others. He is the least of the Three. His Food is much the same with the small gray Squirrels. He has not Wings, as Birds or Bats have, there being a fine thin Skin cover'd with Hair, as the rest of the parts are. This is from the Fore-Feet to the Hinder-Feet, which is extended and holds so much Air, as buoys him up, from one Tree to another, that are greater distances asunder, than other Squirrels can reach by jumping or springing. He is made very tame, is an Enemy to a Corn-field, (as all Squirrels are) and eats only the germinating Eye of that Grain, which is very sweet.

Ground Squirrel. Ground Squirrels are so call'd, because they never delight in running up Trees, and leaping from Tree to Tree. They are the smallest of all Squirrels. Their Tail is neither so long not bushy; but flattish. They are of a reddish Colour, and striped down each Side with black Rows, which make them very beautiful. They may be kept tame, in a little Box with Cotton. They and the Flying-Squirrels seldom stir out in Cold Weather, being tender Animals.

The

The Fox of *Carolina* is gray, but ſmells not as the Foxes in *Great-Britain*, and elſewhere. They have reddiſh Hair about their Ears, and are generally very fat; yet I never ſaw any one eat them. When hunted, they make a ſorry Chace, becauſe they run up Trees, when purſued. They are never to be made familiar and tame, as the Raccoon is. Their Furs, if in Seaſon, are uſed for Muffs and other Ornaments. They live chiefly on Birds and Fowls, and ſuch ſmall Prey. *Fox.*

I have been inform'd by the *Indians*, that on a Lake of Water towards the Head of *Neus* River, there haunts a Creature, which frightens them all from Hunting thereabouts. They ſay, he is the Colour of a Panther, but cannot run up Trees; and that there abides with him a Creature like an *Engliſhman*'s Dog, which runs faſter than he can, and gets his Prey for him. They add, that there is no other of that Kind that ever they met withal; and that they have no other way to avoid him, but by running up a Tree. The Certainty of this I cannot affirm by my own Knowledge, yet they all agree in this Story. As for Lions, I never ſaw any in *America*; neither can I imagine, how they ſhould come there. *Suppoſed Lion and Jackall.*

Of Rats we have two ſorts; the Houſe-Rat, as in *Europe*; and the Marſh-Rat, which differs very much from the other, being more hairy, and has ſeveral other Diſtinctions, too long here to name. *Rats.*

Mice are the ſame here, as thoſe in *England*, that belong to the Houſe. There is one ſort that poiſons a Cat, as ſoon as ſhe eats of them, which has ſometimes happen'd. Theſe Mice reſort not to Houſes. *Mice.*

The Dormouſe is the ſame as in *England*; and ſo is the Weaſel, which is very ſcarce. *Dormouſe.*

The Bat or Rearmouſe, the ſame as in *England*. The *Indian* Children are much addicted to eat Dirt, and ſo are ſome of the Chriſtians. But roaſt a Bat on a Skewer, then pull the Skin off, and make the Child that eats Dirt, eat the roaſted Rearmouſe; and he will never eat Dirt again. This is held as an infallible Remedy. I have put this amongſt the Beaſts, as partaking of both Natures; of the Bird, and Mouſe-Kind. *Rearmouſe.*

Having mention'd all the ſorts of terreſtrial or Land-Animals, which *Carolina* affords and are yet known to us, except

the Tame and Domeſtick Creatures (of which I ſhall give an Account hereafter, when I come to treat of the Ways and Manners of Agriculture in that Province) I ſhall now proceed to the known *Inſects* of that Place. Not that I pretend to give an ample Account of the whole Tribe, which is too numerous, and contains too great a Diverſity of Species, many not yet diſcovered, and others that have ſlipt my Memory at preſent; But thoſe which I can remember, I here preſent my Readers withal.

Inſects of *Carolina*.

Allegators.
Rattle-Snakes.
Ground Rattle-Snakes.
Horn-Snakes.
Water-Snakes, four ſorts.
Swamp Snakes three ſorts.
Red-bellied Land-Snakes.
Red-back'd Snake.
Black Truncheon Snake.
Scorpion-Lizard.
Green Lizard.
Frogs, many ſorts.
Long black Snake.
King-Snake.
Green Snake.
Corn Snake.
Vipers black and gray.
Tortois.
Terebin Land and Water.
Brimſtone-Snake.
Egg, or Chicken-Snake.
Eel-Snake, or great Loach.
Brown Lizard.
Rotten-wood Worm, &c.

Strange Genitors. The Allegator is the ſame, as the Crocodile, and differs only in Name. They frequent the ſides of Rivers, in the Banks of which they make their Dwellings a great way under Ground; the Hole or Mouth of their Dens lying commonly two Foot under Water, after which it riſes till it be conſiderably above the Surface thereof. Here it is, that this amphibious Monſter dwells all the Winter, ſleeping away his time till the Spring appears, when he comes from his Cave, and daily ſwims up and down the Streams. He always breeds in ſome freſh Stream, or clear Fountain of Water, yet ſeeks his Prey in the broad Salt Waters, that are brackiſh, not on the Sea-ſide, where I never met with any. He never devours Men in *Carolina*, but uſes all ways to avoid them, yet he kills Swine and Dogs, the former as they come to feed in the Marſhes, the others as they ſwim over the Creeks and Waters. They are very miſchievous to the Wares

Wares made for taking Fiſh, into which they come to prey on the Fiſh that are caught in the Ware, from whence they cannot readily extricate themſelves, and ſo break the Ware in Pieces, being a very ſtrong Creature. This Animal, in theſe Parts, ſometimes exceeds ſeventeen Foot long. It is impoſſible to kill them with a Gun, unleſs you chance to hit them about the Eyes, which is a much ſofter Place, than the reſt of their impenetrable Armour. They roar, and make a hideous Noiſe againſt bad Weather, and before they come out of their Dens in the Spring. I was pretty much frightned with one of theſe once; which happened thus: I had built a Houſe about half a Mile from an *Indian* Town, on the Fork of *Neus*-River, where I dwelt by my ſelf, excepting a young *Indian* Fellow, and a Bull-Dog, that I had along with me. I had not then been ſo long a Sojourner in *America*, as to be throughly acquainted with this Creature. One of them had got his Neſt directly under my Houſe, which ſtood on pretty high Land, and by a Creek-ſide, in whoſe Banks his Entring-place was, his Den reaching the Ground directly on which my Houſe ſtood. I was ſitting alone by the Fire-ſide (about nine a Clock at Night, ſome time in *March*) the *Indian* Fellow being gone to the Town, to ſee his Relations; ſo that there was no body in the Houſe but my ſelf and my Dog; when, all of a ſudden, this ill-favour'd Neighbour of mine, ſet up ſuch a Roaring, that he made the Houſe ſhake about my Ears, and ſo continued, like a Bittern, (but a hundred times louder, if poſſible) for four or five times. The Dog ſtared, as if he was frightned out of his Senſes; nor indeed, could I imagine what it was, having never heard one of them before. Immediately again I had another Leſſon; and ſo a third. Being at that time amongſt none but Savages, I began to ſuſpect, they were working ſome Piece of Conjuration under my Houſe, to get away my Goods; not but that, at another time, I have as little Faith in their, or any others working Miracles, by diabolical Means, as any Perſon living. At laſt, my Man came in, to whom when I had told the Story, he laugh'd at me, and preſently undeceiv'd me, by telling me what it was that made that Noiſe. Theſe Allegators lay Eggs, as the Ducks do; only they are longer ſhap'd, larger, and a thicker Shell, than they have. How long they are in hatching, I cannot

tell; but, as the *Indians* ſay, it is moſt part of the Summer, they always lay by a Spring-Side, the young living in and about the ſame, as ſoon as hatch'd. Their Eggs are laid in Neſts made in the Marſhes, and contain twenty or thirty Eggs. Some of theſe Creatures afford a great deal of Musk. Their Tail, when cut of, looks very fair and white, ſeemingly like the beſt of Veal. Some People have eaten thereof, and ſay, it is delicate Meat, when they happen not to be musky. Their Fleſh is accounted proper for ſuch as are troubled with the lame Diſtemper, (a ſort of Rhumatiſm) ſo is the Fat very prevailing to remove Aches and Pains, by Unction. The Teeth of this Creature, when dead, are taken out, to make Chargers for Guns, being of ſeveral Sizes, fit for all Loads. They are white, and would make pretty Snuff Boxes, if wrought by an Artiſt. After the Tail of the Allegator is ſeparated from the Body, it will move very freely for four days.

Rattle-Snake. The Rattle-Snakes are found on all the Main of *America*, that I ever had any Account of; being ſo call'd from the Rattle at the end of their Tails, which is a Connexion of jointed Coverings, of an excrementitious Matter, betwixt the Subſtance of a Nail, and a Horn, though each *Tegmen* is very thin. Nature ſeems to have deſign'd theſe, on purpoſe to give Warning of ſuch an approaching Danger, as the venomous Bite of theſe Snakes is. Some of them grow to a very great Bigneſs, as ſix Foot in Length, their Middle being the Thickneſs of the Small of a luſty Man's Leg. We have an Account of much larger Serpents of this Kind; but I never met them yet, although I have ſeen and kill'd abundance in my time. They are of an Orange, tawny, and blackiſh Colour, on the Back; differing (as all Snakes do) in Colour, on the Belly; being of an Aſh-Colour, inclining to Lead. The Male is eaſily diſtinguiſh'd from the Female, by a black Velvet-Spot on his Head; and beſides, his Head is ſmaller ſhaped, and long. Their Bite is venomous, if not ſpeedily remedied; eſpecially, if the Wound be in a Vein, Nerve, Tendon, or Sinew; when it is very difficult to cure. The *Indians* are the beſt Phyſicians for the Bite of theſe and all other venomous Creatures of this Country. There are four ſorts of Snake-Roots already diſcover'd, which Knowledge came from the *Indians*, who have perform'd ſeveral great Cures.

Cures. The Rattle-Snakes are accounted the peaceableſt in the World; for they never attack any one, or injure them, unleſs they are trod upon, or moleſted. The moſt Danger of being bit by theſe Snakes, is for thoſe that ſurvey Land in *Carolina*; yet I never heard of any Surveyor that was kill'd, or hurt by them. I have myſelf gone over ſeveral of this Sort, and others; yet it pleaſed God, I never came to any harm. They have the Power, or Art (I know not which to call it) to charm Squirrels, Hares, Partridges, or any ſuch thing, in ſuch a manner, that they run directly into their Mouths. This I have ſeen by a Squirrel and one of theſe Rattle-Snakes; and other Snakes have, in ſome meaſure, the ſame Power. The Rattle-Snakes have many ſmall Teeth, of which I cannot ſee they make any uſe; for they ſwallow every thing whole; but the Teeth which poiſon, are only four; two on each ſide of their Upper-Jaws. Theſe are bent like a Sickle, and hang looſe as if by a Joint. Towards the ſetting on of theſe, there is, in each Tooth, a little Hole, wherein you may juſt get in the Point of a ſmall Needle. And here it is, that the Poiſon comes out, (which is as green as Graſs) and follows the Wound, made by the Point of their Teeth. They are much more venomous in the Months of *June* and *July*, than they are in *March*, *April* or *September*. The hotter the Weather, the more poiſonous. Neither may we ſuppoſe, that they can renew their Poiſon as oft as they will; for we have had a Perſon bit by one of theſe, who never rightly recover'd it, and very hardly eſcaped with Life; a ſecond Perſon bit in the ſame Place by the ſame Snake, and receiv'd no more Harm, that if bitten with a Rat. They caſt their Skins every Year, and commonly abide near the Place where the old Skin lies. Theſe caſt Skins are uſed in Phyſick, and the Rattles are reckon'd good to expedite the Birth. The Gall is made up into Pills, with Clay, and kept for Uſe; being given in Peſtilential Fevers and the Small-Pox. It is accounted a noble Remedy, known to few, and held as a great *Arcanum*. This Snake has two Noſtrils on each ſide of his Noſe. Their Venom, I have Reaſon to believe, effects no Harm, any otherwiſe than when darted into the Wound by the Serpents Teeth.

Ground Rattle-Snakes.

The Ground Rattle-Snake, wrong nam'd, becauſe it has nothing like Rattles. It reſembles the Rattle-Snake a little in

in Colour, but is darker, and never grows to any conſiderable Bigneſs, not exceeding a Foot, or ſixteen Inches. He is reckon'd amongſt the worſt of Snakes; and ſtays out the longeſt of any Snake I know, before he returns (in the Fall of the Leaf) to his Hole.

Horn-Snake. Of the Horn-Snakes I never ſaw but two, that I remember. They are like the Rattle-Snake in Colour, but rather lighter. They hiſs exactly like a Gooſe, when any thing approaches them. They ſtrike at their Enemy with their Tail, and kill whatſoever they wound with it, which is arm'd at the End with a horny Subſtance, like a Cock's Spur. This is their Weapon. I have heard it credibly reported, by thoſe who ſaid they were Eye-Witneſſes, that a ſmall Locuſt-Tree, about the Thickneſs of a Man's Arm, being ſtruck by one of theſe Snakes, at Ten a Clock in the Morning, then verdant and flouriſhing, at four in the Afternoon was dead, and the Leaves red and wither'd. Doubtleſs, be it how it will, they are very venomous. I think, the *Indians* do not pretend to cure their Wound.

Water-Snakes. Of Water-Snakes there are four ſorts. The firſt is of the Horn-Snakes Colour, though leſs. The next is a very long Snake, differing in Colour, and will make nothing to ſwim over a River a League wide. They hang upon Birches and other Trees by the Water-Side. I had the Fortune once to have one of them leap into my Boat, as I was going up a narrow River; the Boat was full of Mats, which I was glad to take out, to get rid of him. They are reckon'd poiſonous. A third is much of an *Engliſh* Adder's Colour, but always frequents the Salts, and lies under the Drift Sea-weed, where they are in abundance, and are accounted miſchievous, when they bite. The laſt is of a ſooty black Colour, and frequents Ponds and Ditches. What his Qualities are, I cannot tell.

Swamp-Snakes. Of the Swamp-Snakes there are three ſorts, which are very near akin to the Water-Snakes, and may be rank'd amongſt them.

The Belly of the firſt is of a Carnation or Pink Colour; his Back a dirty brown; they are large, but have not much Venom in them, as ever I learnt. The next is a large Snake, of a brown Dirt Colour, and always abides in the Marſhes.

The

The laſt is mottled, and very poiſonous. They dwell in Swamps Sides, and Ponds, and have prodigious wide Mouths, and (though not long) arrive to the Thickneſs of the Calf of a Man's Leg.

Theſe frequent the Land altogether, and are ſo call'd, becauſe of their red Bellies, which incline to an Orange-Colour. Some have been bitten with theſe ſort of Snakes, and not hurt; when others have ſuffer'd very much by them. Whether there be two ſorts of theſe Snakes, which we make no Difference of, I cannot at preſent determine. *Red-Belly Land-Snakes.*

I never ſaw but one of theſe, which I ſtept over, and did not ſee him; till he that brought the Chain after me, ſpy'd him. He has a red Back, as the laſt has a red Belly. They are a long, ſlender Snake, and very rare to be met withal. I enquired of the *Indian* that was along with me, whether they were very venomous, who made Anſwer, that if he had bitten me, even the *Indians* could not have cured it. *Red-Back Snakes.*

This ſort of Snake might very well have been rank'd with the Water-Snakes. They lie under Roots of Trees, and on the Banks of Rivers. When any thing diſturbs them, they dart into the Water (which is Salt) like an Arrow out of a Bow. They are thick, and the ſhorteſt Snake I ever ſaw. What Good, or Harm, there is in them, I know not. Some of theſe Water-Snakes will ſwallow a black Land-Snake, half as long again as themſelves. *Black Truncheon-Snake.*

The Scorpion Lizard, is no more like a Scorpion, than a Hedge-Hog; but they very commonly call him a Scorpion. He is of the Lizard Kind, but much bigger; his Back is of a dark Copper-Colour; his Belly an Orange; he is very nimble in running up Trees, or on the Land, and is accounted very poiſonous. He has the moſt Sets of Teeth in his Mouth and Throat, that ever I ſaw. *Scorpion Lizard.*

Green Lizards are very harmleſs and beautiful, having a little Bladder under their Throat, which they fill with Wind, and evacuate the ſame at Pleaſure. They are of a moſt glorious Green, and very tame. They reſort to the Walls of Houſes in the Summer Seaſon, and ſtand gazing on a Man, without any Concern or Fear. There are ſeveral other Colours of theſe Lizards; but none ſo beautiful as the green ones are. *Green Lizard.*

Of

Frogs. Of Frogs we have ſeveral ſorts; the moſt famous is the Bull-Frog, ſo call'd, becauſe he lows exactly like that Beaſt, which makes Strangers wonder (when by the ſide of a Marſh) what's the matter, for they hear the Frogs low, and can ſee no Cattle; he is very large. I believe, I have ſeen one with as much Meat on him, as a Pullet, if he had been dreſs'd. The ſmall green Frogs get upon Trees, and make a Noiſe. There are ſeveral other colour'd ſmall Frogs; but the Common Land-Frog is likeſt a Toad, only he leaps, and is not poiſonous. He is a great Devourer of Ants, and the Snakes devour him. Theſe Frogs baked and beat to Powder, and taken with Orrice-Root cures a Tympany.

Long black Snake. The long, black Snake frequents the Land altogether, and is the nimbleſt Creature living. His Bite has no more Venom, than a Prick with a Pin. He is the beſt Mouſer that can be; for he leaves not one of that Vermine alive, where he comes. He alſo kills the Rattle-Snake, whereſoever he meets him, by twiſting his Head about the Neck of the Rattle-Snake, and whipping him to Death with his Tail. This Whipſter haunts the Dairies of careleſs Houſewives, and never miſſes to skim the Milk clear of the Cream. He is an excellent Egg-Merchant, for he does not ſuck the Eggs, but ſwallows them whole (as all Snakes do.) He will often ſwallow all the Eggs from under a Hen that ſits, and coil himſelf under the Hen, in the Neſt, where ſometimes the Houſewife finds him. This Snake, for all his Agility, is ſo brittle, that when he is purſued, and gets his Head into the Hole of a Tree, if any body gets hold of the other end, he will twiſt, and break himſelf off in the middle. One of theſe Snakes, whoſe Neck is no thicker that a Woman's little Finger, will ſwallow a Squirrel; ſo much does that part ſtretch, in all theſe Creatures.

King Snake. The King-Snake is the longeſt of all others, and not common; no Snake (they ſay) will meddle with them. I think they are not accounted very venomous. The *Indians* make Girdles and Saſhes of their Skins.

Green Snake. Green-Snakes are very ſmall, tho' pretty (if any Beauty be allow'd to Snakes.) Every one makes himſelf very familiar with them, and puts them in their Boſom, becauſe there is no manner of Harm in them.

The

The Corn-Snakes are but ſmall ones; they are of a brown Colour, mixed with tawny. There is no more hurt in this, than in the green Snake. *Corn-Snake.*

Of thoſe we call Vipers, there are two ſorts. People call theſe Vipers, becauſe they ſpread a very flat Head at any time when they are vex'd. One of theſe is a grayiſh like the *Italian* Viper, the other black and ſhort; and is reckon'd amongſt the worſt of Snakes, for Venom. *Vipers.*

Tortois, vulgarly call'd Turtle; I have rank'd theſe among the Inſects, becauſe they lay Eggs, and I did not know well where to put them. Among us there are three ſorts. The firſt is the green Turtle, which is not common, but is ſometimes found on our Coaſt. The next is the Hawks-bill, which is common. Theſe two ſorts are extraordinary Meat. The third is Logger-Head, which Kind ſcarce any one covets, except it be for the Eggs, which of this and all other Turtles, are very good Food. None of theſe ſorts of Creatures Eggs will ever admit the White to be harder than a Jelly; yet the Yolk, with boiling, becomes as hard as any other Egg. *Tortois.*

Of Terebins there are divers ſorts, all which, to be brief, we will comprehend under the Diſtinction of Land and Water-Terebins. *Terebin.*

The Land-Terebin is of ſeveral Sizes, but generally Round-Mouth'd, and not Hawks-Bill'd, as ſome are. The *Indians* eat them. Moſt of them are good Meat, except the very large ones; and they are good Food too, provided they are not Musky. They are an utter Enemy to the Rattle-Snake, for when the Terebin meets him, he catches hold of him a little below his Neck, and draws his Head into his Shell, which makes the Snake beat his Tail, and twiſt about with all the Strength and Violence imaginable, to get away; but the Terebin ſoon diſpatches him, and there leaves him. Theſe they call in *Europe* the Land Tortois; their Food is Snails, Tad-pools, or young Frogs, Muſhrooms, and the Dew and Slime of the Earth and Ponds. *Land-Terebin.*

Water Terebins are ſmall; containing about as much Meat as a Pullet, and are extraordinary Food; eſpecially, in *May* and *June*. When they lay, their Eggs are very good; but they have ſo many Enemies that find them out, that the hundredth part never comes to Perfection. The Sun and *Water-Terebin.*

Sand hatch them, which come out the Bigneſs of a ſmall Cheſnut, and ſeek their own Living.

Brimſtone-Snake. We now come again to the Snakes. The Brimſtone is ſo call'd, I believe, becauſe it is almoſt of a Brimſtone Colour. They might as well have call'd it a Glaſs-Snake, for it is as brittle as a Tobacco-Pipe, ſo that if you give it the leaſt Touch of a ſmall Twigg, it immediately breaks into ſeveral Pieces. Some affirm, that if you let it remain where you broke it, it will come together again. What Harm there is in this brittle Ware, I cannot tell; but I never knew any body hurt by them.

Chicken-Snake. The Egg or Chicken-Snake is ſo call'd, becauſe it is frequent about the Hen-Yard, and eats Eggs and Chickens, they are of a dusky Soot Colour, and will roll themſelves round, and ſtick eighteen, or twenty Foot high, by the ſide of a ſmooth-bark'd Pine, where there is no manner of Hold, and there ſun themſelves, and ſleep all the Sunny Part of the Day. There is no great matter of Poiſon in them.

Wood-Worm. The Wood-Worms are of a Copper, ſhining Colour, ſcarce ſo thick as your little Finger; are often found in Rotten-Trees. They are accounted venomous, in caſe they bite, though I never knew any thing hurt by them. They never exceed four or five Inches in length.

The Reptiles, or ſmaller *Inſects*, are too numerous to relate here, this Country affording innumerable Quantities thereof; as the Flying-Stags with Horns, Beetles, Butterflies, Graſhoppers, Locuſt, and ſeveral hundreds of uncouth Shapes, which in the Summer-Seaſon are diſcovered here in *Carolina*, the Deſcription of which requires a large Volume, which is not my Intent at preſent. Beſides, what the Mountainous Part of this Land may hereafter lay open to our View, Time and Induſtry will diſcover, for we that have ſettled but a ſmall Share of this large Province, cannot imagine, but there will be a great number of Diſcoveries made by thoſe that ſhall come hereafter into the Back-part of this Land, and make Enquiries therein, when, at leaſt, we conſider that the Weſtward of *Carolina* is quite different in Soil, Air, Weather, Growth of Vegetables, and ſeveral Animals too, which we at preſent are wholly Strangers to, and to ſeek for. As to a right Knowledge thereof, I ſay, when another Age is come, the Ingenious then in being may ſtand upon

upon the Shoulders of thoſe that went before them, adding their own Experiments to what was delivered down to them by their Predeceſſors, and then there will be ſomething towards a complete Natural Hiſtory, which (in theſe days) would be no eaſie Undertaking to any Author that writes truly and compendiouſly, as he ought to do. It is ſufficient at preſent, to write an honeſt and fair Account of any of the Settlements, in this new World, without wandring out of the Path of Truth, or beſpattering any Man's Reputation any wiſe concern'd in the Government of the Colony; he that mixes Invectives with Relations of this Nature rendering himſelf ſuſpected of Partiality in whatever he writes. For my part, I wiſh all well, and he that has received any ſevere Dealings from the Magiſtrate or his Superiours, had beſt examine himſelf well, if he was not firſt in the Fault; if ſo, then he can juſtly blame none but himſelf for what has happen'd to him.

Having thus gone thro' the *Inſects*, as in the Table, except the Eel-Snake, (ſo call'd, though very improperly, becauſe he is nothing but a Loach, that ſucks, and cannot bite, as the Snakes do.) He is very large, commonly ſixteen Inches, or a Foot and half long; having all the Properties that other Loaches have, and dwells in Pools and Waters, as they do. Notwithſtanding, we have the ſame Loach as you have, in Bigneſs.

This is all that at preſent I ſhall mention, touching the *Inſects*, and ſo go on to give an Account of the Fowls and Birds, that are properly found in *Carolina*, which are theſe.

Birds of *Carolina*.

Birds in America *more beautiful than in* Europe.

Eagle bald.
Eagle gray.
Fiſhing Hawk.
Turkey Buzzard, or Vulture.
Herring-tail'd Hawk.
Goſhawk.
Falcon.
Merlin.
Sparrow-hawk.
Hobby.
Ring-tail.
Raven.
Crow.
Black Birds, two ſorts.
Buntings two ſorts.
Pheaſant.
Woodcock.
Snipe.
Partridge.
Moorhen.

Jay.
Green Plover.
Plover gray or whiſtling.
Pigeon.
Turtle Dove.
Parrakeeto.
Thruſh.
Wood-Peckers, five ſorts.
Mocking-birds, two ſorts.
Cat-Bird.
Cuckoo.
Blue-Bird.
Bulfinch.
Nightingale.
Hedge-Sparrow.
Wren.
Sparrows, two ſorts.
Lark.
Red Bird.
Eaſt-India Bat.
Martins, two ſorts.
Diveling, or Swift.
Swallow.
Humming Bird.
The Tom-Tit, or Ox-Eye.
Owls, two ſorts.
Scritch Owl.
Baltimore bird.
Throſtle, no Singer.
Whippoo Will.
Reed Sparrow.
Weet bird.
Rice bird.
Cranes and Storks.
Snow-birds.
Yellow-wings.

Water Fowl.

Water Fowl are,

Swans, called Trompeters.
Swans, called Hoopers.
Geeſe, three ſorts.
Brant gray.
Brant white.
Sea-pies or pied Curlues.
Will Willets.
Great Gray Gulls.
Old Wives.
Sea Cock.
Curlues, three ſorts.
Coots.
Kings-fiſher.
Loons, two ſorts.
Bitterns, three ſorts.
Hern gray.
Hern white.
Water Pheaſant.
Little gray Gull.
Little Fiſher, or Dipper.
Ducks, as in England.
Ducks black, all Summer.
Ducks pied, build on Trees.
Ducks whiſtling, at Sapona.
Ducks ſcarlet-eye at Eſaw.
Blue-wings.
Widgeon.
Teal, two ſorts.
Shovelers.
Whifflers.
Black Fluſterers, or bald Coot.
Turkeys wild.
Fiſhermen.
Divers.
Raft Fowl.
Bull-necks.
Redheads.
Tropick-birds.
Pellican.
Cormorant.

Gan-

Gannet.
Shear-water.
Great black pied Gull.
Marſh-hens.
Blue Peter's.
Sand-birds.
Runners.
Tutcocks.
Swaddle-bills.
Men.
Sheldrakes.
Bald Faces.
Water Witch, or Ware Coot.

As the Eagle is reckon'd the King of Birds I have begun with him. The firſt I ſhall ſpeak of, is the bald Eagle; ſo call'd, becauſe his Head, to the middle of his Neck, and his Tail, is as white as Snow. Theſe Birds continually breed the Year round; for when the young Eagles are juſt down'd, with a ſort of white woolly Feathers, the Hen-Eagle lays again, which Eggs are hatch'd by the Warmth of the young ones in the Neſt, ſo that the Flight of one Brood makes Room for the next, that are but juſt hatch'd. They prey on any living thing they can catch. They are heavy of Flight, and cannot get their Food by Swiftneſs, to help which there is a Fiſhawk that catches Fiſhes, and ſuffers the Eagle to take them from her, although ſhe is long-wing'd and a ſwift Flyer, and can make far better way in her Flight than the Eagle can. The bald Eagle attends the Gunners in Winter, with all the Obſequiouſneſs imaginable, and when he ſhoots and kills any Fowl, the Eagle ſurely comes in for his Bird; and beſides, thoſe that are wounded, and eſcape the Fowler, fall to the Eagle's ſhare. He is an excellent Artiſt at ſtealing young Pigs, which Prey he carries alive to his Neſt, at which time the poor Pig makes ſuch a Noiſe over Head, that Strangers that have heard them cry, and not ſeen the Bird and his Prey, have thought there were Flying Sows and Pigs in that Country. The Eagle's Neſt is made of Twigs, Sticks and Rubbiſh. It is big enough to fill a handſome Carts Body, and commonly ſo full of naſty Bones and Carcaſſes that it ſtinks moſt offenſively. This Eagle is not bald, till he is one or two years old. *Bald-Eagle.*

The gray Eagle is altogether the ſame ſort of Bird, as the Eagle in *Europe*; therefore, we ſhall treat no farther of him. *Gray-Eagle.*

The Fiſhing-Hawk is the Eagle's Jackal, which moſt commonly (though not always) takes his Prey for him. He is a large. *Fiſhing-Hawk.*

large Bird, being above two thirds as big as the Eagle. He builds his Neſt as the Eagles do; that is, in a dead Cypreſs-Tree, either ſtanding in, or hard by, the Water. The Eagle and this Bird ſeldom ſit on a living Tree. He is of a gray pied Colour, and the moſt dexterous Fowl in Nature at Catching of Fiſh, which he wholly lives on, never eating any Fleſh.

Turkey-Buzzard. The Turkey-Buzzard of *Carolina* is a ſmall Vulture, which lives on any dead Carcaſſes. They are about the Bigneſs of the Fiſhing-Hawk, and have a naſty Smell with them. They are of the Kites Colour, and are reported to be an Enemy to Snakes, by killing all they meet withal of that Kind.

Herring-tail'd Hawk. The Herring, or Swallow-tail'd Hawk, is about the Bigneſs of a Falcon, but a much longer Bird. He is of a delicate Aurora-Colour; the Pinions of his Wings, and End of his Tail are black. He is a very beautiful Fowl, and never appears abroad but in the Summer. His Prey is chiefly on Snakes, and will kill the biggeſt we have, with a great deal of Dexterity and Eaſe.

Goſhawk. Goſhawks are very plentiful in *Carolina*. They are not ſeemingly ſo large as thoſe from *Muſcovy*; but appear to be a very briſk Bird.

Falcon. The Falcon is much the ſame as in *Europe*, and promiſes to be a brave Bird, tho' I never had any of them in my Hand; neither did I ever ſee any of them in any other Poſture than on the Wing, which always happen'd to be in an Evening, and flying to the Weſtward; therefore, I believe, they have their Abode and Neſt among the Mountains, where we may expect to find them, and ſeveral other Species that we are at preſent Strangers to.

Merlin. The Merlin is a ſmall Bird in *Europe*, but much ſmaller here; yet he very nimbly kills the ſmaller ſorts of Birds, and ſometimes the Partridge; if caught alive, he would be a great Rarity, becauſe of his Beauty and Smalneſs.

Sparrow-Hawk. The Sparrow-Hawk in *Carolina* is no bigger than a Field-fare in *England*. He flies at the Buſh and ſometimes kills a ſmall Bird, but his chiefeſt Food is Reptiles, as Beetles, Graſhoppers, and ſuch ſmall things. He is exactly of the ſame Colour, as the Sparrow-Hawk in *England*, only has a blackiſh Hood by his Eyes.

Hob-

Hobbies are the ſame here as in *England*, and are not often met withal. *Hobby.*

The Ring-tail is a ſhort-wing'd Hawk, preying on Mice, and ſuch Vermine in the Marſhes, as in *England*. *Ring-Tail.*

Ravens, the ſame as in *England*, though very few. I have not ſeen above ſix in eight Years time. *Ravens.*

Crows are here leſs than in *England*. They are as good Meat as a Pigeon; and never feed on any Carrion. They are great Enemies to the Corn-Fields; and cry and build almoſt like Rooks. *Crows.*

Of theſe we have two ſorts, which are the worſt Vermine in *America*. They fly ſometimes in ſuch Flocks, that they deſtroy every thing before them. They (both ſorts) build in hollow Trees, as Starlings do. The firſt ſort is near as big as a Dove, and is very white and delicate Food. The other ſort is very beautiful, and about the Bigneſs of the Owſel. Part of their Head, next to the Bill, and the Pinions of their Wings, are of an Orange, and glorious Crimſon Colour. They are as good Meat as the former, tho' very few here (where large Fowl are ſo plenty) ever trouble themſelves to kill or dreſs them. *Black-Birds.*

Of the Bunting-Larks we have two ſorts, though the Heel of this Bird is not ſo long as in *Europe*. The firſt of theſe often accompany the Black-birds, and ſing as the Bunting-Larks in *England* do, differing very little. The firſt ſort has an Orange-Colour on the Tops of their Wings, and are as good Meat as thoſe in *Europe*. The other ſort is ſomething leſs, of a lighter Colour; nothing differing therein from thoſe in *England*, as to Feathers, Bigneſs, and Meat. *Bunting two ſorts.*

The Pheaſant of *Carolina* differs ſome ſmall matter from the *Engliſh* Pheaſant, being not ſo big, and having ſome difference in Feather; yet he is not any wiſe inferiour in Delicacy, but is as good Meat, or rather finer. He haunts the back Woods, and is ſeldom found near the Inhabitants. *Pheaſant.*

The Woodcocks live and breed here, though they are not in great plenty, as I have ſeen them in ſome Parts of *England*, and other Places. They want one third of the *Engliſh* Woodcock in Bigneſs; but differ not in Shape, or Feather, ſave that their Breaſt is of a Carnation Colour; and they make a Noiſe (when they are on the Wing) like the Bells about a Hawk's Legs. They are certainly as dainty Meat, *Woodcock.*

as

as any in the World. Their Abode is in all Parts of this Country, in low, boggy Ground, Springs, Swamps, and Percoarſons.

Snipe. The Snipes here frequent the ſame Places, as they do in *England*, and differ nothing from them. They are the only wild Bird that is nothing different from the Species of *Europe*, and keeps with us all the Year. In ſome Places, there are a great many of theſe Snipes.

Partridge. Our Partridges in *Carolina*, very often take upon Trees, and have a ſort of Whiſtle and Call, quite different from thoſe in *England*. They are a very beautiful Bird, and great Deſtroyers of the Peaſe in Plantations; wherefore, they ſet Traps, and catch many of them. They have the ſame Feather, as in *Europe*; only the Cock wants the Horſe-Shooe, in lieu of which he has a fair Half-Circle over each Eye. Theſe (as well as the Woodcock) are leſs than the *European* Bird, but far finer Meat. They might be eaſily tranſported to any Place, becauſe they take to eating, after caught.

Moorhen. The Moorhens are of the black Game. I am inform'd, that the gray Game haunts the Hills. They never come into the Settlement, but keep in the hilly Parts.

Jay. Jays are here common, and very miſchievous, in devouring our Fruit, and ſpoiling more than they eat. They are abundantly more beautiful, and finer feather'd than thoſe in *Europe*, and not above half ſo big.

Green-Plover. The Lap-wing or Green-Plover are here very common. They cry pretty much, as the *Engliſh* Plovers do; and differ not much in Feather, but want a third of their Bigneſs.

Gray-Plover. The gray or whiſtling Plover, are very ſcarce amongſt us. I never ſaw any but three times, that fell and ſettled on the Ground. They differ very little from thoſe in *Europe*, as far as I could diſcern. I have ſeen ſeveral great Flocks of them fly over head; therefore, believe, they inhabit the Valleys near the Mountains.

Pigeons. Our wild Pigeons, are like the Wood-Queeſe or Stock-Doves, only have a longer Tail. They leave us in the Summer. This ſort of Pigeon (as I ſaid before) is the moſt like our Stock-Doves, or Wood-Pigeons that we have in *England*; only theſe differ in their Tails, which are very long, much like a Parrakeeto's? You muſt underſtand, that theſe Birds

Birds do not breed amongſt us, (who are ſettled at, and near the Mouths of the Rivers, as I have intimated to you before) but come down (eſpecially in hard Winters) amongſt the Inhabitants, in great Flocks, as they were ſeen to do in the Year 1707, which was the hardeſt Winter that ever was known, ſince *Carolina* has been ſeated by the Chriſtians. And if that Country had ſuch hard Weather, what muſt be expected of the ſevere Winters in *Penſylvania*, *New-York*, and *New-England*, where Winters are ten times (if poſſible) colder than with us. Although the Flocks are, in ſuch Extremities, very numerous; yet they are not to be mention'd in Compariſon with the great and infinite Numbers of theſe Fowl, that are met withal about a hundred, or a hundred and fifty, Miles to the Weſtward of the Places where we at preſent live; and where theſe Pigeons come down, in queſt of a ſmall ſort of Acorns, which in thoſe Parts are plentifully found. They are the ſame we call Turky-Acorns, becauſe the wild Turkies feed very much thereon; And for the ſame Reaſon, thoſe Trees that bear them, are call'd Turky-Oaks. I ſaw ſuch prodigious Flocks of theſe Pigeons, in *January* or *February*, 1701-2, (which were in the hilly Country, between the great Nation of the *Eſaw Indians*, and the pleaſant Stream of *Sapona*, which is the Weſt-Branch of *Clarendon*, or *Cape-Fair* River) that they had broke down the Limbs of a great many large Trees all over thoſe Woods, whereon they chanced to ſit and rooſt; eſpecially the great Pines, which are a more brittle Wood, than our ſorts of Oak are. Theſe Pigeons, about Sun-Riſe, when we were preparing to march on our Journey, would fly by us in ſuch vaſt Flocks, that they would be near a Quarter of an Hour, before they were all paſs'd by; and as ſoon as that Flock was gone, another would come; and ſo ſucceſſively one after another, for great part of the Morning. It is obſervable, that whereever theſe Fowl come in ſuch Numbers, as I ſaw them then, they clear all before them, ſcarce leaving one Acorn upon the Ground, which would, doubtleſs, be a great Prejudice to the Planters that ſhould ſeat there, becauſe their Swine would be thereby depriv'd of their Maſt. When I ſaw ſuch Flocks of the Pigeons I now ſpeak of, none of our Company had any other ſort of Shot, than that which is caſt in Moulds, and was ſo very large, that we could not put above ten or a

dozen of them into our largeſt Pieces; Wherefore, we made but an indifferent Hand of ſhooting them; although we commonly kill'd a Pigeon for every Shot. They were very fat, and as good Pigeons, as ever I eat. I enquired of the *Indians* that dwell'd in thoſe Parts, where it was that thoſe Pigeons bred, and they pointed towards the vaſt Ridge of Mountains, and ſaid, they bred there. Now, whether they make their Neſts in the Holes in the Rocks of thoſe Mountains, or build in Trees, I could not learn; but they ſeem to me to be a Wood-Pigeon, that build in Trees, becauſe of their frequent ſitting thereon, and their Rooſting on Trees always at Night, under which their Dung commonly lies half a Foot thick, and kills every thing that grows where it falls.

Turtle Doves. Turtle Doves are here very plentiful; they devour the Peaſe; for which Reaſon, People make Traps and catch them.

Parrakeetos. The Parrakeetos are of a green Colour, and Orange-Colour'd half way their Head. Of theſe and the Allegators, there is none found to the Northward of this Province. They viſit us firſt, when Mulberries are ripe, which Fruit they love extremely. They peck the Apples, to eat the Kernels, ſo that the Fruit rots and periſhes. They are miſchievous to Orchards. They are often taken alive, and will become familiar and tame in two days. They have their Neſts in hollow Trees, in low, ſwampy Ground. They devour the Birch-Buds in *April*, and lie hidden when the Weather is froſty and hard.

Thruſhes. The Thruſhes in *America*, are the ſame as in *England*, and red under the Wings. They never appear amongſt us but in hard Weather, and preſently leave us again.

Wood-Peckers. Of Wood-peckers, we have four ſorts. The firſt is as big as a Pigeon, being of a dark brown Colour, with a white Croſs on his Back, his Eyes circled with white, and on his Head ſtands a Tuft of beautiful Scarlet Feathers. His Cry is heard a long way; and he flies from one rotten Tree to another, to get Grubs, which is the Food he lives on.

Second. The ſecond ſort are of an Olive-Colour, ſtriped with yellow. They eat Worms as well as Grubs, and are about the Bigneſs of thoſe in *Europe*.

The

The third is the same Bigness as the last; he is pied with black and white, has a Crimson Head, without a Topping, and is a Plague to the Corn and Fruit; especially the Apples. He opens the Covering of the young Corn, so that the Rain gets in, and rots it. *Third.*

The fourth sort of these Wood-peckers, is a black and white speckled, or mottled; the finest I ever saw. The Cock has a red Crown; he is not near so big as the others; his Food is Grubs, Corn, and other creeping Insects. He is not very wild, but will let one come up to him, then shifts on the other side the Tree, from your sight; and so dodges you for a long time together. He is about the size of an *English* Lark. *Fourth.*

The Mocking-Bird is about as big as a Throstle in *England*, but longer; they are of a white, and gray Colour, and are held to be the Choristers of *America*, as indeed they are. They sing with the greatest Diversity of Notes, that is possible for a Bird to change to. They may be bred up, and will sing with us tame in Cages; yet I never take any of their Nests, altho' they build yearly in my Fruit-Trees, because I have their Company, as much as if tame, as to the singing Part. They often sit upon our Chimneys in Summer, there being then no Fire in them, and sing the whole Evening and most part of the Night. They are always attending our Dwellings; and feed upon Mulberries and other Berries and Fruits; especially the *Mechoacan*-berry, which grows here very plentifully. *Mocking-Birds.*

There is another sort call'd the Ground-Mocking-Bird. She is the same bigness, and of a Cinnamon Colour. This Bird sings excellently well, but is not so common amongst us as the former. *2d. sort.*

The Cat-Bird, so nam'd, because it makes a Noise exactly like young Cats. They have a blackish Head, and an Ash-coloured Body, and have no other Note that I know of. They are no bigger than a Lark, yet will fight a Crow or any other great Bird. *Cat-Bird.*

The Cuckoo of *Carolina* may not properly be so call'd, because she never uses that Cry; yet she is of the same Bigness and Feather, and sucks the Small-Birds Eggs, as the *English* Cuckoo does. *Cuckoo.*

Blue-Bird. A Blue-Bird is the exact Bigneſs of a Robin-red-breaſt. The Cock has the ſame colour'd Breaſt as the Robin has, and his Back, and all the other Parts of him, are of as fine a Blue, as can poſſibly be ſeen in any thing in the World. He has a Cry, and a Whiſtle. They hide themſelves all the Winter.

Bulfinch. Bulfinches, in *America*, differ ſomething from thoſe in *Europe*, in their Feathers, tho' not in their Bigneſs. I never knew any one tame, therefore know not, what they might be brought to.

Nightingale. The Nightingales are different in Plumes from thoſe in *Europe*. They always frequent the low Groves, where they ſing very prettily all Night.

Hedge-Sparrow. Hedge-Sparrows are here, though few Hedges. They differ ſcarce any thing in Plume or Bigneſs, only I never heard this Whiſtle, as the *Engliſh* one does; eſpecially after Rain.

Wren. The Wren is the ſame as in *Europe*, yet I never heard any Note ſhe has in *Carolina*.

Sparrow. Sparrows here differ in Feather from the *Engliſh*. We have ſeveral Species of Birds call'd Sparrows, one of them much reſembling the Bird call'd a *Corinthian* Sparrow.

Lark. The Lark with us reſorts to the Savannas, or natural Meads, and green Marſhes. He is colour'd and heel'd as the Lark is; but his Breaſt is of a glittering fair Lemon-Colour, and he is as big as a Fieldfare, and very fine Food.

Red-Birds. The Red-Birds (whoſe Cock is all over of a rich Scarlet Feather, with a tufted Crown on his Head, of the ſame Colour) are the Bigneſs of a Bunting-Lark, and very hardy, having a ſtrong thick Bill. They will ſing very prettily, when taken old, and put in a Cage. They are good Birds to turn a Cage with Bells; or if taught, as the Bulfinch is, I believe, would prove very docible.

Eaſt-India Bats. *Eaſt-India* Bats or Muſqueto Hawks, are the Bigneſs of a Cuckoo, and much of the ſame Colour. They are ſo call'd, becauſe the ſame ſort is found in the *Eaſt-Indies*. They appear only in the Summer, and live on Flies, which they catch in the Air, as Gnats, Muſquetos, *&c.*

Martins. Martins are here of two ſorts. The firſt is the ſame as in *England*; the other as big as a Black-Bird. They have white Throats and Breaſts, with black Backs. The Planters put Gourds

Gourds on ſtanding Poles, on purpoſe for theſe Fowl to build in, becauſe they are a very Warlike Bird, and beat the Crows from the Plantations.

The Swift, or Diveling, the ſame as in *England*. *Swift.*

Swallows, the ſame as in *England*. *Swallow.*

The Humming-Bird is the Miracle of all our wing'd Animals; He is feather'd as a Bird, and gets his Living as the Bees, by ſucking the Honey from each Flower. In ſome of the larger ſort of Flowers, he will bury himſelf, by diving to ſuck the bottom of it, ſo that he is quite cover'd, and oftentimes Children catch them in thoſe Flowers, and keep them alive for five or ſix days. They are of different Colours, the Cock differing from the Hen. The Cock is of a green, red, *Aurora*, and other Colours mixt. He is much leſs than a Wren, and very nimble. His Neſt is one of the greateſt Pieces of Workmanſhip the whole Tribe of wing'd Animals can ſhew, it commonly hanging on a ſingle Bryar, moſt artificially woven, a ſmall Hole being left to go in and out at. The Eggs are the Bigneſs of Peaſe. *Humming-Bird.*

The Tom-Tit, or Ox-Eyes, as in *England*. *Tom-Tit.*

Of Owls we have two ſorts; the ſmaller ſort is like ours in *England*; the other ſort is as big as a middling Gooſe, and has a prodigious Head. They make a fearful Hollowing in the Night-time, like a Man, whereby they often make Strangers loſe their way in the Woods. *Owls.*

Scritch Owls, much the ſame as in *Europe*. *Scritch Owls.*

The *Baltimore-Bird*, ſo call'd from the Lord *Baltimore*, Proprietor of all *Maryland*, in which Province many of them are found. They are the Bigneſs of a Linnet, with yellow Wings, and beautiful in other Colours. *Baltimore-Bird.*

Throſtle, the ſame Size and Feather as in *Europe*, but I never could hear any of them ſing. *Throſtle.*

The Weet, ſo call'd becauſe he cries always before Rain; he reſembles neareſt the Fire-tail. *Weet Bird.*

Cranes uſe the Savannas, low Ground, and Frogs; they are above five Foot-high, when extended; are of a Cream Colour, and have a Crimſon Spot on the Crown of their Heads. Their Quills are excellent for Pens; their Fleſh makes the beſt Broth, yet is very hard to digeſt. Among them often frequent Storks, which are here ſeen, and no where beſides in *America*, that I have yet heard of. The Cranes are eaſily bred, *Cranes and Storks.*

bred up tame, and are excellent in a Garden to deſtroy Frogs, Worms, and other Vermine.

Snow-Birds. The Snow-Birds are moſt numerous in the North Parts of *America*, where there are great Snows. They viſit us ſometimes in *Carolina*, when the Weather is harder than ordinary. They are like the Stones Smach, or Wheat-Ears, and are delicate Meat.

Yellow Wings. Theſe Yellow-Wings are a very ſmall Bird, of a Linnet's Colour, but Wings as yellow as Gold. They frequent high up in our Rivers, and Creeks, and keep themſelves in the thick Buſhes, very difficult to be ſeen in the Spring. They ſing very prettily.

Whippoo-Will. *Whippoo-Will*, ſo nam'd, becauſe it makes thoſe Words exactly. They are the Bigneſs of a Thruſh, and call their Note under a Buſh, on the Ground, hard to be ſeen, though you hear them never ſo plain. They are more plentiful in *Virginia*, than with us in *Carolina*; for I never heard but one that was near the Settlement, and that was hard-by an *Indian* Town.

Red Sparrow. This neareſt reſembles a Sparrow, and is the moſt common Small-Bird we have, therefore we call them ſo. They are brown, and red, cinnamon Colour, ſtriped.

Water Fowl. Of the Swans we have two ſorts; the one we call Trompeters; becauſe of a ſort of trompeting Noiſe they make.

Swans. Theſe are the largeſt ſort we have, which come in great Flocks in the Winter, and ſtay, commonly, in the freſh Rivers till *February*, that the Spring comes on, when they go to the Lakes to breed. A Cygnet, that is, a laſt Year's Swan, is accounted a delicate Diſh, as indeed it is. They are known by their Head and Feathers, which are not ſo white as Old ones.

Hooper. The ſort of Swans call'd Hoopers, are the leaſt. They abide more in the Salt-Water, and are equally valuable, for Food, with the former. It is obſervable, that neither of theſe have a black Piece of horny Fleſh down the Head, and Bill, as they have in *England*.

Wild Geeſe. Of Geeſe we have three ſorts, differing from each other only in ſize. Ours are not the common Geeſe that are in the Fens in *England*, but the other ſorts, with black Heads and Necks.

The

The gray Brant, or Barnicle, is here very plentiful, as all other Water-Fowl are, in the Winter-Seaſon. They are the ſame which they call Barnicles in *Great-Britain*, and are a very good Fowl, and eat well. *Gray Brants.*

There is alſo a white Brant, very plentiful in *America*. This Bird is all over as white as Snow, except the Tips of his Wings, and thoſe are black. They eat the Roots of Sedge and Graſs in the Marſhes and Savannas, which they tear up like Hogs. The beſt way to kill theſe Fowl is, to burn a Piece of Marſh, or Savanna, and as ſoon as it is burnt, they will come in great Flocks to get the Roots, where you kill what you pleaſe of them. They are as good Meat as the other, only their Feathers are ſtubbed, and good for little. *White Brant.*

The Sea-Pie, or gray Curlue, is about the Bigneſs of a very large Pigeon, but longer. He has a long Bill as other Curlues have, which is the Colour of an *Engliſh* Owſel's, that is, yellow; as are his Legs. He frequents the Sand-beaches on the Sea-ſide, and when kill'd, is inferiour to no Fowl I ever eat of. *Sea-Pie, or Curlue.*

Will Willet is ſo called from his Cry, which he very exactly calls *Will Willet*, as he flies. His Bill is like a Curlue's, or Woodcock's, and has much ſuch a Body as the other, yet not ſo tall. He is good Meat. *Will Willet.*

The great gray Gulls are good Meat, and as large as a Pullet. They lay large Eggs, which are found in very great Quantities, on the Iſlands in our Sound, in the Months of *June*, and *July*. The young Squabs are very good Victuals, and often prove a Relief to Travellers by Water, that have ſpent their Proviſions. *Great gray Gull.*

Old Wives are a black and white pied Gull with extraordinary long Wings, and a golden colour'd Bill and Feet. He makes a diſmal Noiſe, as he flies, and ever and anon dips his Bill in the Salt-Water. I never knew him eaten. *Old Wives.*

The Sea-Cock is a Gull that crows at Break of Day, and in the Morning, exactly like a Dunghil Cock, which Cry ſeems very pleaſant in thoſe uninhabited Places. He is never eaten. *Sea-Cock.*

Of Curlues there are three ſorts, and vaſt Numbers of each. They have all long Bills, and differ neither in Colour, nor Shape, only in Size. The largeſt is as big as a good *Curlues. Coots, Kingfiſher, Loons, two ſorts.*

good Hen, the ſmaller the Bigneſs of a Snipe, or ſome thing bigger.

Bitterns, three ſorts. We have three ſorts of Bitterns in *Carolina*. The firſt is the ſame as in *England*; the ſecond of a deep brown, with a great Topping, and yellowiſh white Throat and Breaſt, and is leſſer than the former; the laſt is no bigger than a Wood-cock, and near the Colour of the ſecond.

Herns. We have the ſame Herns, as in *England*.

White-Herns. White Herns are here very plentiful. I have ſeen above thirty ſit on one Tree, at a time. They are as white as Milk, and fly very ſlowly.

Water-Pheaſant. The Water-Pheaſant (very improperly call'd ſo) are a Water-Fowl of the Duck-Kind, having a Topping, of pretty Feathers, which ſets them out. They are very good Meat.

Little gray Gull. The little Gray-Gull is of a curious gray Colour, and abides near the Sea. He is about the Bigneſs of a Whiſtling-Plover, and delicate Food.

Dipper. We have the little Dipper or Fiſher, that catches Fiſh ſo dexterouſly, the ſame as you have in the Iſlands of *Scilly*.

Duck and Mallard. We have of the ſame Ducks, and Mallards with green Heads, in great Flocks. They are accounted the coarſeſt ſort of our Water-Fowl.

Black Duck. The black Duck is full as large as the other, and good Meat. She ſtays with us all the Summer, and breeds. Theſe are made tame by ſome, and prove good Domeſticks.

Summer Duck. We have another Duck that ſtays with us all the Summer. She has a great Topping, is pied, and very beautiful. She builds her Neſt in a Wood-pecker's Hole, very often ſixty or ſeventy Foot high.

Whiſtling Duck. Towards the Mountains in the hilly Country, on the Weſt-Branch of *Caip-Fair* Inlet, we ſaw great Flocks of pretty pied Ducks, that whiſtled as they flew, or as they fed. I did not kill any of them.

Scarlet Ey'd Duck. We kill'd a curious ſort of Ducks, in the Country of the *Eſaw-Indians*, which were of many beautiful Colours. Their Eyes were red, having a red Circle of Fleſh for their Eye-lids; and were very good to eat.

Blue-Wings. The Blue-Wings are leſs than a Duck, but fine Meat. Theſe are the firſt Fowls that appear to us in the Fall of the Leaf, coming then in great Flocks, as we ſuppoſe, from *Canada*, and the Lakes that lie behind us.

Wid-

Widgeons, the ſame as in *Europe*, are here in great Plenty. *Widgeon.*

We have the ſame Teal, as in *England*, and another ſort that frequents the Freſh-Water, and are always nodding their Heads. They are ſmaller than the common Teal, and dainty Meat. *Teal two ſorts.*

Shovellers (a ſort of Duck) are gray, with a black Head. They are a very good Fowl. *Shovellers.*

Theſe are called Whiſtlers, from the whiſtling Noiſe they make, as they fly. *Whiſtlers.*

Black Fluſterers; ſome call theſe Old Wives. They are as black as Ink. The Cocks have white Faces. They always remain in the midſt of Rivers, and feed upon drift Graſs, Carnels or Sea-Nettles. They are the fatteſt Fowl I ever ſaw, and ſometimes ſo heavy with Fleſh, that they cannot riſe out of the Water. They make an odd ſort of Noiſe when they fly. What Meat they are, I could never learn. Some call theſe the great bald Coot. *Black-Fluſterers. or Bald-Coot.*

The wild Turkeys I ſhould have ſpoken of, when I treated of the Land-Fowl. There are great Flocks of theſe in *Carolina*. I have ſeen about five hundred in a Flock; ſome of them are very large. I never weigh'd any myſelf, but have been inform'd of one that weigh'd near ſixty Pound Weight. I have ſeen half a Turkey feed eight hungry Men two Meals. Sometimes the wild breed with the tame ones, which, they reckon, makes them very hardy, as I believe it muſt. I ſee no manner of Difference betwixt the wild Turkeys and the tame ones; only the wild are ever of one Colour, (*viz.*) a dark gray, or brown, and are excellent Food. They feed on Acorns, Huckle-Berries, and many other ſorts of Berries that *Carolina* affords. The Eggs taken from the Neſt, and hatch'd under a Hen, will yet retain a wild Nature, and commonly leave you, and run wild at laſt, and will never be got into a Houſe to rooſt, but always pearch on ſome high Tree, hard-by the Houſe, and ſeparate themſelves from the tame ſort, although (at the ſame time) they tread and breed together. I have been inform'd, that if you take theſe wild Eggs, when juſt on the point of being hatch'd, and dip them (for ſome ſmall time) in a Bowl of Milk-warm Water, it will take off their wild Nature, and make them as tame and domeſtick as the others. Some *Indians* have brought theſe wild Breed hatch'd at home, to be a Decoy to bring *Turkeys.*

others to roost near their Cabins, which they have shot. But to return to the Water-Fowl.

Fishermen. Fishermen are like a Duck, but have a narrow Bill, with Setts of Teeth. They live on very small Fish, which they catch as they swim along. They taste Fishy. The best way to order them, is, upon occasion, to pull out the Oil-Box from the Rump, and then bury them five or six Hours under Ground. Then they become tolerable.

Divers. Of Divers there are two sorts; the one pied, the other gray; both good Meat.

Raft-Fowl. Raft-Fowl includes all the sorts of small Ducks and Teal, that go in Rafts along the Shoar, and are of several sorts, that we know no Name for.

Bull-Necks. These are a whitish Fowl, about the Bigness of a Brant; they come to us after *Christmas*, in very great Flocks, in all our Rivers. They are a very good Meat, but hard to kill, because hard to come near. They will dive and endure a great deal of Shot.

Red-Heads. Red-Heads, a lesser Fowl than Bull-Necks, are very sweet Food, and plentiful in our Rivers and Creeks.

Tropick-Birds. Tropick-Birds are a white Mew, with a forked Tail. They are so call'd, because they are plentifully met withal under the Tropicks, and thereabouts.

Pellican. The Pellican of the Wilderness cannot be the same as ours; this being a Water-Fowl, with a great natural Wen or Pouch under his Throat, in which he keeps his Prey of Fish, which is what he lives on. He is Web-footed, like a Goose, and shap'd like a Duck, but is a very large Fowl, bigger than a Goose. He is never eaten as Food; They make Tobacco-pouches of his Maw.

Cormorant. Cormorants are very well known in some Parts of *England*; we have great Flocks of them with us, especially against the Herrings run, which is in *March* and *April*; then they sit upon Logs of dry Wood in the Water, and catch the Fish.

Gannet. The Gannet is a large white Fowl, having one Part of his Wings black; he lives on Fish, as the Pellican. His Fat or Grease, is as yellow as Saffron, and the best thing known, to preserve Fire-Arms, from Rust.

Shear-Water. Shear-Waters are a longer Fowl than a Duck; some of them lie on the Coast, whilst others range the Seas all over.

Some-

Sometimes they are met five hundred Leagues from Land. They live without drinking any fresh Water.

We have a great pied Gull, black and white, which seems to have a black Hood on his Head; these lay very fair Eggs which are good; as are the young ones in the Season. *Pied-Gull.*

Marsh-Hen, much the same as in *Europe*, only she makes another sort of Noise, and much shriller. *Marsh-Hen.*

The same as you call Water-Hens in *England*, are here very numerous, and not regarded for eating. *Blue-Peters.*

The Sand-Birds are about the Bigness of a Lark, and frequent our Sand-Beaches; they are a dainty Food, if you will bestow Time and Ammunition to kill them. *Sand-Birds.*

These are called Runners; because if you run after them, they will run along the Sands and not offer to get up; so that you may often drive them together to shoot as you please. They are a pleasant small Bird. *Runners.*

A sort of Snipe, but sucks not his Food; they are almost the same as in *England*. *Tutcocks.*

Swaddle-Bills are a sort of an ash-colour'd Duck, which have an extraordinary broad Bill, and are good Meat; they are not common as the others are.

The same Mew as in *England*, being a white, slender Bird, with red Feet. *Mew.*

The same as in *England*. *Shel-Drakes.*

The bald, or white Faces are a good Fowl. They cannot dive, and are easily shotten. *Bald-Faces.*

Water-Witch, or Ware-Coots, are a Fowl with Down and no Feathers; they dive incomparably, so that no Fowler can hit them. They can neither fly, nor go; but get into the Fish-wares, and cannot fly over the Rods, and so are taken. *Water-Witch.*

Thus have we given an Account of what Fowl has come to our Knowledge, since our Abode in *Carolina*; except some that, perhaps, have slipt our Memory, and so are left out of our Catalogue. Proceed we now to treat of the Inhabitants of the Watry Element, which tho' we can as yet do but very imperfectly; yet we are willing to oblige the Curious with the best Account that is in our Power to present them withal.

The Fish in the salt, and fresh Waters of *Carolina*, are,

Whales, several sorts.
Thrashers.
Divel-Fish.
Sword-Fish.
Crampois.
Bottle-Noses.
Porpoises.
Sharks, two sorts.
Dog-Fish.
Spanish-*Mackarel.*
Cavallies.
Boneto's.
Blue-Fish.
Drum, red.
Drum-Fish, black.
Angel-Fish.
Bass, or Rock-Fish.
Sheeps-Heads.
Plaice.
Flounder.
Soles.
Mullets.
Shad.
Fat-Backs.
Guard, white.
Guard, green.
Scate or Stingray.
Thornback.
Congar-Eels.
Lamprey-Eels.
Eels.
Sun-Fish.
Toad-Fish.
Sea-Tench.
Trouts of the Salt Water.
Crocus.
Herring.
Smelts.
Shads.
Breams.
Taylors.

Fresh-Water Fish are,

Sturgeon.
Pike.
Trouts.
Gudgeon.
Pearch English.
Pearch, white.
Pearch, brown, or Welch-men.
Pearch, flat, and mottled, or Irishmen.
Pearch small and flat, with red Spots, call'd round Robins.
Carp.
Roach.
Dace.
Loaches.
Sucking-Fish.
Cat-Fish.
Grindals.
Old-Wives.
Fountain-Fish.
White-Fish.

The

The Shell-Fish are.

Large Crabs, call'd Stone-Crabs.
Smaller flat Crabs.
Oysters great and small.
Cockles.
Clams.
Muscles.
Conks.
Skellop.
Man of Noses.
Periwinkles, or Wilks.
Sea-Snail-Horns.
Fidlars.
Runners.
Spanish or Pearl-Oysters.
Flattings.
Tortois and Terebin, accounted for among the Insects.
Finger-Fish.
Shrimps.

Fresh Water.

Craw-Fish.
Muscles.

Whales are very numerous, on the Coast of North *Carolina*, from which they make Oil, Bone, *&c.* to the great Advantage of those inhabiting the Sand-Banks, along the Ocean, where these Whales come ashore, none being struck or kill'd with a Harpoon in this Place, as they are to the Northward, and elsewhere; all those Fish being found dead on the Shoar, most commonly by those that inhabit the Banks, and Sea-side, where they dwell, for that Intent, and for the Benefit of Wrecks, which sometimes fall in upon that Shoar. *Whale.*

Of these Monsters there are four sorts; the first, which is most choice and rich, is the *Sperma Cati* Whale, from which the *Sperma Cati* is taken. These are rich Prizes; but I never heard but of one found on this Coast, which was near *Currituck*-Inlet.

The other sorts are of a prodigious Bigness. Of these the Bone and Oil is made; the Oil being the Blubber, or oily Flesh, or Fat of that Fish boil'd. These differ not only in Colour, some being pied, others not, but very much in shape, one being call'd a Bottle-Nosed Whale, the other a Shovel-Nose, which is as different as a Salmon from a Sturgeon. These Fish seldom come ashoar with their Tongues in their Heads, the Thrasher (which is the Whale's mortal Enemy, wheresoever he meets him) eating that out of his Head, as soon as he and the Sword-Fish have kill'd him. For when

when the Whale-catchers (in other Parts) kill any of these Fish, they eat the Tongue, and esteem it an excellent Dish.

There is another sort of these Whales, or great Fish, though not common. I never knew of above one of that sort, found on the Coast of North *Carolina*, and he was contrary, in Shape, to all others ever found before him; being sixty Foot in Length, and not above three or four Foot Diameter. Some *Indians* in *America* will go out to Sea, and get upon a Whales Back, and peg or plug up his Spouts, and so kill him.

Thrashers The Thrashers are large Fish, and mortal Enemies to the Whale, as I said before. They make good Oil; but are seldom found.

Divel-Fish. The Divel-Fish lies at some of our Inlets, and, as near as I can describe him, is shap'd like a Scate, or Stingray; only he has on his Head a Pair of very thick strong Horns, and is of a monstrous Size, and Strength; for this Fish has been known to weigh a Sloop's Anchor, and run with the Vessel a League or two, and bring her back, against Tide, to almost the same Place. Doubtless, they may afford good Oil; but I have no Experience of any Profits which arise from them.

Sword-Fish. The Sword-Fish is the other of the Whale's Enemies, and joins with the Thrasher to destroy that Monster. After they have overcome him, they eat his Tongue, as I said before, and the Whale drives ashoar.

Crampois. Crampois is a large Fish, and by some accounted a young Whale; but it is not so; neither is it more than twenty five or thirty Foot long. They spout as the Whale does, and when taken yield good Oil.

Bottle-Noses. Bottle-Noses are between the Crampois and Porpois, and lie near the Soundings. They are never seen to swim leisurely, as sometimes all other Fish do, but are continually running after their Prey in Great Shoals, like wild Horses, leaping now and then above the Water. The *French* esteem them good Food, and eat them both fresh and salt.

Porpoises. Porpoises are frequent, all over the Ocean and Rivers that are salt; nay, we have a Fresh-Water Lake in the great Sound of North *Carolina* that has Porpoises in it. And several sorts of other unknown Fish, as the *Indians* say, that we are wholly Strangers to. As to the Porpoises, they make good Oil;

Oil; they prey upon other Fiſh as Drums, yet never are known to take a Bait, ſo as to be catch'd with a Hook.

Of theſe there are two ſorts; one call'd *Paracooda*-Noſes; the other Shovel-Noſes; they cannot take their Prey before they turn themſelves on their Backs; wherefore ſome Negro's, and others, that can ſwim and dive well, go naked into the Water, with a Knife in their Hand, and fight the Shark, and very commonly kill him, or wound him ſo, that he turns Tail, and runs away. Their Livors make good Oil to dreſs Leather withal; the Bones found in their Head are ſaid to haſten the Birth, and eaſe the Stone, by bringing it away. Their Meat is eaten in ſcarce times; but I never could away with it, though a great Lover of Fiſh. Their Back-Bone is of one entire Thickneſs. Of the Bones, or Joints, I have known Buttons made, which ſerve well enough in ſcarce Times, and remote Places. *Sharks.*

The Dog-Fiſh are a ſmall ſort of the Shark Kind; and are caught with Hook and Line, fiſhing for Drums. They ſay, they are good Meat; but we have ſo many other ſorts of delicate Fiſh, that I ſhall hardly ever make Tryal what they are. *Dog-Fiſh.*

Spaniſh Mackarel are, in Colour and Shape, like the common Mackarel, only much thicker. They are caught with Hook and Line at the Inlets, and ſometimes out a little way at Sea. They are a very fine hard Fiſh, and of good Taſte. They are about two Foot long, or better. *Spaniſh-Mackarel.*

Cavallies are taken in the ſame Places. They are of a browniſh Colour, have exceeding ſmall Scales, and a very thick Skin; they are as firm a Fiſh as ever I ſaw; therefore will keep ſweet (in the hot Weather) two days, when others will ſtink in half a day, unleſs ſalted. They ought to be ſcaled as ſoon as taken; otherwiſe you muſt pull off the Skin and Scales, when boiled; the Skin being the choiceſt of the Fiſh. The Meat, which is white and large, is dreſs'd with this Fiſh. *Cavallies.*

Boneto's are a very palatable Fiſh, and near a Yard long. They haunt the Inlets and Water near the Ocean; and are killed with the Harpoon, and Fiſhgig. *Boneto's.*

The Blue Fiſh is one of our beſt Fiſhes, and always very fat. They are as long as a Salmon, and indeed, I think, full as good Meat. Theſe Fiſh come (in the Fall of the Year) generally *Blue-Fiſh.*

generally after there has been one black Froſt, when there appear great Shoals of them. The *Hatteras Indians*, and others, run into the Sands of the Sea, and ſtrike them, though ſome of theſe Fiſh have cauſed Sickneſs and violent Burnings after eating of them, which is found to proceed from the Gall that is broken in ſome of them, and is hurtful. Sometimes, many Cart-loads of theſe are thrown and left dry on the Sea ſide, which comes by their eager Purſuit of the ſmall Fiſh, in which they run themſelves aſhoar, and the Tide leaving them, they cannot recover the Water again. They are called Blue-Fiſh, becauſe they are of that Colour, and have a forked Tail, and are ſhaped like a Dolphin.

Red-Drum The Red Drum is a large Fiſh much bigger than the Blue-Fiſh. The Body of this is good firm Meat, but the Head is beyond all the Fiſh I ever met withal for an excellent Diſh. We have greater Numbers of theſe Fiſh, than of any other ſort. People go down and catch as many Barrels full as they pleaſe, with Hook and Line, eſpecially every young Flood, when they bite. Theſe are ſalted up, and tranſported to other Colonies, that are bare of Proviſions.

Black-Drum. Black Drums are a thicker-made Fiſh than the Red Drum, being ſhap'd like a fat Pig; they are a very good Fiſh, but not ſo common with us as to the Northward.

Angel-Fiſh. The Angel-Fiſh is ſhaped like an *Engliſh* Bream. He is ſo call'd, from his golden Colour, which ſhines all about his Head and Belly. This is accounted a very good Fiſh, as are moſt in theſe Parts. The *Bermudians* have the ſame ſort of Fiſh, and eſteem them very much.

Rock-Fiſh. Baſs or Rock is both in Salt and Freſh-Water; when young, he much reſembles a Grayling, but grows to the ſize of the large Cod-Fiſh. They are a very good firm Fiſh. Their Heads are ſouced, and make a noble Diſh, if large.

Sheeps-Head. Sheeps-Head has the general Vogue of being the choiceſt Fiſh in this Place. Indeed, it is a very delicate Fiſh, and well reliſh'd; yet I think, there are ſeveral others full as good as the Sheeps-Head. He is much of the Bigneſs of the Angel-Fiſh, and flat as he is; they ſometimes weigh two or three Pound Weight. This Fiſh hath Teeth like a Sheep, and is therefore ſo call'd.

Plaice. Plaice are here very large, and plentiful, being the ſame as in *England*.

Flounders

Flounders ſhould have gone amongſt the Freſh-Water Fiſh, becauſe they are caught there, in great Plenty. *Flounder.*

Soles are a Fiſh we have but lately diſcover'd; they are as good, as in any other Part. *Soles.*

Mullets, the ſame as in *England*, and great Plenty in all Places where the Water is ſalt or brackiſh. *Mullets.*

Shads are a ſweet Fiſh, but very bony; they are very plentiful at ſome Seaſons. *Shads.*

Fat-Backs are a ſmall Fiſh, like Mullets, but the fatteſt ever known. They put nothing into the Pan, to fry theſe. They are excellent ſweet Food. *Fat-Backs.*

The white Guard-Fiſh is ſhaped almoſt like a Pike, but ſlenderer; his Mouth has a long ſmall Bill ſet with Teeth, in which he catches ſmall Fiſh; his Scales are knit together like Armour. When they dreſs him, they ſtrip him, taking off Scales and Skin together. His Meat is very white, and rather looks like Fleſh than Fiſh. The *Engliſh* account them no good Fiſh; but the *Indians* do. The Gall of this Fiſh is green, and a violent Cathartick, if taken inwardly. *White Guard-Fiſh.*

The green Guard is ſhaped, in all reſpects, like the other, ſave that his Scales are very ſmall and fine. He is indifferent good Meat; his Bones, when boil'd or fry'd, remain as green as Graſs. The ſame ſort of Fiſh come before the Mackarel in *England*. *Green-Guard.*

Scate, or Stingray, the ſame as in *England*, and very common; but the great Plenty of other Fiſh makes theſe not regarded; for few or none eat them in *Carolina*, though they are almoſt at every ones Door. *Scate.*

Thornbacks are the ſame as in *England*. They are not ſo common as the Scate and Whip-Rays. *Thornback.*

Congar-Eels always remain in the Salt-Water; they are much more known in the Northward Parts of *America*, than with us. *Congar-Eels.*

Lampreys are not common; I never ſaw but one, which was large, and caught by the *Indians*, in a Ware. They would not eat him, but gave him to me. *Lamprey.*

Eels are no where in the World better, or more plentiful, than in *Carolina*. *Eels.*

Sun-Fiſh are flat and rounder than a Bream, and are reckon'd a fine-taſted Fiſh, and not without Reaſon. They are much the ſize of Angel-Fiſh. *Sun-Fiſh.*

Toad-Fish. Toad-Fish are nothing but a Skin full of Prickles, and a few Bones; they are as ugly as a Toad, and preserv'd to look upon, and good for nothing else.

Sea-Tench. They are taken by a Bait, near the Inlet, or out at Sea a little way. They are blackish, and exactly like a Tench, except in the Back-fins, which have Prickles like a Pearch. They are as good, if not better than any Tench.

Salt-Water Trouts. Trouts of the Salt-Water are exactly shaped like the Trouts in *Europe*, having blackish, not red Spots. They are in the Salts, and are not red within, but white, yet a very good Fish. They are so tender, that if they are in or near fresh Water, and a sudden Frost come, they are benumm'd, and float on the Surface of the Water, as if dead; and then they take up Canoe-Loads of them. If you put them into warm Water, they presently recover.

Crocus. The Crocus is a Fish, in Shape like a Pearch, and in Taste like a Whiting. They croke and make a Noise in your Hand, when taken with Hook or Net. They are very good.

Herring. The Herrings in *Carolina* are not so large as in *Europe*. They spawn there in *March* and *April*, running up the fresh Rivers and small fresh Runs of Water in great Shoals, where they are taken. They become red if salted; and, dress't with Vinegar and Oil, resemble an Anchovy very much; for they are far beyond an *English* Herring, when pickled.

Smelts. The same as in *England*; they lie down a great way in the Sound, towards the Ocean, where (at some certain Seasons) are a great many very fine ones.

Breams. The fresh Water affords no such Bream as in *England*, that I have as yet discover'd; yet there is a Sea-Bream, which is a flat and thin Fish, as the *European* Breams are.

Taylors. The Taylor is a Fish about the Bigness of a Trout, but of a bluish and green Colour, with a forked Tail, as a Mackarel has. They are a delicate Fish, and plentiful in our Salt-Waters. Infinite numbers of other Species will be hereafter discover'd as yet unknown to us; although I have seen and eaten of several other sorts of Fish, which are not here mention'd, because, as yet, they have no certain Names assign'd them. Therefore, I shall treat no farther of our Salt-Water Fish, but proceed to the Fresh.

Fresh Water Sturgeon. The first of these is the Sturgeon, of which we have Plenty, all the fresh Parts of our Rivers being well stor'd therewith.

The

The *Indians* upon and towards the Heads and Falls of our Rivers, ſtrike a great many of theſe, and eat them; yet the *Indians* near the Salt-Waters will not eat them. I have ſeen an *Indian* ſtrike one of theſe Fiſh, ſeven Foot long, and leave him on the Sands to be eaten by the Gulls. In *May*, they run up towards the Heads of the Rivers, where you ſee ſeveral hundreds of them in one day. The *Indians* have another way to take them, which is by Nets at the end of a Pole. The Bones of theſe Fiſh make good Nutmeg-Graters.

The Jack, Pike, or Pickerel, is exactly the ſame, in *Carolina*, as they are in *England*. Indeed, I never ſaw this Fiſh ſo big and large in *America*, as I have in *Europe*, theſe with us being ſeldom above two Foot long, as far as I have yet ſeen. They are very plentiful with us in *Carolina*, all our Creeks and Ponds being full of them. I once took out of a Ware, above three hundred of theſe Fiſh, at a time. *Pike.*

The ſame in *England* as in *Carolina*; but ours are a great way up the Rivers and Brooks, that are freſh, having ſwift Currents, and ſtony, and gravelly Bottoms. *Trouts.*

The ſame Gudgeons as in *Europe* are found in *America*. *Gudgeon.*

The ſame ſort of Pearch as are in *England*, we have likewiſe in *Carolina*, though, I think, ours never riſe to be ſo large as in *England*. *Firſt Pearch.*

We have a white Pearch, ſo call'd, becauſe he is of a Silver Colour, otherwiſe like the *Engliſh* Pearch. Theſe we have in great Plenty, and they are preferable to the red ones. *Second Pearch.*

The brown Pearch, which ſome call *Welch-men*, are the largeſt ſort of Pearches that we have, and very firm, white and ſweet Fiſh. Theſe grow to be larger than any Carp, and are very frequent in every Creek and Pond. *Third Pearch.*

The flat or mottled Pearch are ſhaped almoſt like a Bream. They are called *Iriſh-men*, being freckled or mottled with black, and blue Spots. They are never taken any where, but in the freſh Water. They are good Fiſh; but I do not approve of them, no more than of the other ſorts of Pearch. *Fourth flat.*

We have another ſort of Pearch, which is the leaſt ſort of all, but as good Meat as any. Theſe are diſtinguiſh'd from the other ſorts, by the Name of *Round-Robins*; being flat, and very round-ſhap'd; they are ſpotted with red Spots very *Fifth Pearch, or* Round Robin.

beautiful, and are eaſily caught with an Angle, as all the other ſort of Pearches are.

Carp. We have the ſame Carp as you have in *England*,

Roach. And the ſame Roach, only ſcarce ſo large.

Dace. Dace are the ſame as yours too; but neither are theſe ſo large nor plentiful, as with you.

Loach. The ſame as in *England*.

Sucking-Fiſh. Sucking-Fiſh are the neareſt in Taſte and Shape to a Barbel, only they have no Barbs.

Cat-Fiſh. Cat Fiſh are a round blackiſh Fiſh, with a great flat Head, a wide Mouth, and no Scales; they ſomething reſemble Eels in Taſte. Both this ſort, and another that frequents the Salt Water, are very plentiful.

Grindals. Grindals are a long ſcaled Fiſh with ſmall Eyes; and frequent Ponds, Lakes, and ſlow-running Creeks and Swamps. They are a ſoft ſorry Fiſh, and good for nothing; though ſome eat them for good Fiſh.

Old-Wives. Theſe are a bright ſcaly Fiſh, which frequent the Swamps, and freſh Runs; they ſeem to be between an *Engliſh* Roach and a Bream, and eat much like the latter. The *Indians* kill abundance of theſe, and barbakue them, till they are criſp, then tranſport them, in wooden Hurdles, to their Towns and Quarters.

Fountain-Fiſh. The Fountain-Fiſh are a white ſort which breed in the clear Running Springs and Fountains of Water, where the Clearneſs thereof makes them very difficult to be taken. I cannot ſay how good they are; becauſe I have not as yet taſted of them.

White-Fiſh. The white Fiſh are very large; ſome being two Foot and a half long and more. They are found a great way up in the Freſhes of the Rivers; and are firm Meat, and an extraordinary well-reliſh'd Fiſh.

Barbouts Millers Thumbs. Barbouts and Millers-Thumbs, are the very ſame here, in all reſpects, as they are in *England*. What more are in the freſh Waters we have not diſcover'd, but are ſatisfied, that we are not acquainted with one third part thereof; for we are told by the *Indians*, of a great many ſtrange and uncouth ſhapes and ſorts of Fiſh, which they have found in the Lakes laid down in my Chart. However as we can give no farther Account of theſe than by Hear-ſay; I proceed to treat of the

Shell-

Shell-Fiſh that are found in the Salt-Water, ſo far as they have already come to our Knowledge.

The large Crabs, which we call Stone-Crabs, are the ſame ſort as in *England*, having black Tips at the end of their Claws. Theſe are plentifully met withal, down in *Core* Sound, and the South Parts of North-*Carolina*. *Large Crabs*

The ſmaller flat Crabs I look upon to be the ſweeteſt of all the Species. They are the Breadth of a luſty Man's Hand, or rather larger. Theſe are innumerable, lying in moſt prodigious quantities, all over the Salts of *Carolina*. They are taken not only to eat, but are the beſt Bait for all ſorts of Fiſh, that live in the Salt-Water. Theſe Fiſh are miſchievous to Night-Hooks, becauſe they get away all the Bait from the Hooks. *Small flat Crabs.*

Oyſters, great and ſmall, are found almoſt in every Creek and Gut of Salt-Water, and are very good and well-reliſh'd. The large Oyſters are excellent, pickled. *Oyſters.*

One Cockle in *Carolina* is as big as five or ſix in *England*. They are often thrown upon the Sands on the Sound-Side, where the Gulls are always ready to open and eat them. *Cockles.*

Clams are a ſort of Cockles, only differing in Shell, which is thicker and not ſtreak'd, or ribb'd. Theſe are found throughout all the Sound and Salt-Water-Ponds. The Meat is the ſame for Look and Taſte as the Cockle. Theſe make an excellent ſtrong Broth, and eat well, either roaſted or pickled. *Clams.*

The Muſcles in *Carolina* have a very large Shell, ſtriped with Dents. They grow by the ſide of Ponds and Creeks, in Salt-Water, wherein you may get as many of them as you pleaſe. I do not like them ſo well as the *Engliſh* Muſcle, which is no good Shell-Fiſh. *Muſcles.*

Some of the Shells of theſe are as large as a Man's Hand, but the leſſer ſort are the beſt Meat, and thoſe not extraordinary. They are ſhap'd like the end of a Horſes Yard. Of their Shells, the Peak or *Wampum* is made, which is the richeſt Commodity amongſt the *Indians*. They breed like a long Thing ſhap'd like a Snake, but containing a ſort of Joints, in the Hollowneſs whereof are thouſands of ſmall Coaks, no bigger then ſmall Grains of Pepper. *Conks.*

The

Skellops. The Skellops, if well dreſs'd, are a pretty Shell-Fiſh; but to eat them only roaſted, without any other Addition, in my Judgment, are too luſcious.

Man of Noſes. Man of Noſes are a Shell-Fiſh commonly found amongſt us. They are valued for increaſing Vigour in Men, and making barren Women fruitful; but I think they have no need of that Fiſh; for the Women in *Carolina* are fruitful enough without their Helps.

Wilks. Wilks, or Periwinkles, are not ſo large here, as in the Iſlands of *Scilly*, and in other Parts of *Europe*, though very ſweet.

Snail-Horn. The Sea-Snail-Horn is large, and very good Meat; they are exactly ſhaped as other Snail-Horns are.

Fidlar. Fidlars are a ſort of ſmall Crabs, that lie in Holes in the Marſhes. The Raccoons eat them very much. I never knew any one try, whether they were good Meat or no.

Runner. Runners live chiefly on the Sands, but ſometimes run into the Sea. They have Holes in the Sand-Beaches and are a whitiſh ſort of a Crab. Tho' ſmall, they run as faſt as a Man, and are good for nothing but to look at.

Spaniſh-*Oyſters.* *Spaniſh* Oyſters have a very thin Shell, and rough on the outſide. They are very good Shell-Fiſh, and ſo large, that half a dozen are enow to ſatisfy an hungry Stomach.

Flattings. The Flattings are incloſed in a broad, thin Shell, the whole Fiſh being flat. They are inferiour to no Shell-Fiſh this Country affords.

Finger-Fiſh. Finger-Fiſh are very plentiful in this Country; they are of the Length of a Man's Finger, and lie in the Bottom of the Water about one or two Foot deep. They are very good.

Shrimps. Shrimps are here very plentiful and good, and are to be taken with a Small-Bow-Net, in great Quantities.

Small-Cockles. The ſmall Cockles are about the Bigneſs of the largeſt *Engliſh* Cockles, and differ nothing from them, unleſs in the Shells, which are ſtriped croſs-wiſe as well as long-wiſe.

The Freſh-Water Shell-Fiſh are,

Muſcles. Muſcles, which are eaten by the *Indians*, after five or ſix hours Boiling, to make them tender, and then are good for nothing.

Craw-

Craw-Fiſh, in the Brooks, and ſmall Rivers of Water, amongſt the *Tuskeruro Indians*, and up higher, are found very plentifully, and as good as any in the World. *Craw-Fiſh*

And thus I have gone through the ſeveral Species of Fiſh, ſo far as they have come to my Knowledge, in the eight Years that I have lived in *Carolina*. I ſhould have made a larger Diſcovery, when travelling ſo far towards the Mountains, and amongſt the Hills, had it not been in the Winter-Seaſon, which was improper to make any Enquiry into any of the Species before recited. Therefore, as my Intent was, I proceed to what remains of the *Preſent State* of *Carolina*, having already accounted for the Animals, and Vegetables, as far as this Volume would allow of; whereby the Remainder, though not exactly known, may yet be gueſs'd at, if we conſider what Latitude *Carolina* lies in, which reaches from 29 to 36 deg. 30 min. Northern Latitude, as I have before obſerv'd. Which Latitude is as fertile and pleaſant, as any in the World, as well for the Produce of Minerals, Fruit, Grain, and Wine, as other rich Commodities. And indeed, all the Experiments that have been made in *Carolina*, of the Fertility and natural Advantages of the Country, have exceeded all Expectation, as affording ſome Commodities, which other Places, in the ſame Latitude, do not. As for Minerals, as they are ſubterraneous Products, ſo, in all new Countries, they are the Species that are laſt diſcover'd; and eſpecially, in *Carolina*, where the *Indians* never look for any thing lower than the Superficies of the Earth, being a Race of Men the leaſt addicted to delving of any People that inhabit ſo fine a Country as *Carolina* is. As good if not better Mines than thoſe the *Spaniards* poſſeſs in *America*, lie full Weſt from us; and I am certain, we have as Mountainous Land, and as great Probability of having rich Minerals in *Carolina*, as any of thoſe Parts that are already found to be ſo rich therein. But, waving this Subject, till ſome other Opportunity, I ſhall now give you ſome Obſervations in general, concerning *Carolina*; which are, firſt, that it lies as convenient for Trade as any of the Plantations in *America*; that we have Plenty of Pitch, Tar, Skins of Deer, and Beeves, Furs, Rice, Wheat, Rie, *Indian Grain*, ſundry ſorts of Pulſe, Turpentine, Rozin, Maſts, Yards, Planks and Boards, Staves and Lumber, Timber of many common ſorts, fit for any Uſes; Hemp, Flax, Barley, Oats,

Oats, Buck-Wheat, Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Whale-Bone and Oil, Wax, Cheese, Butter, *&c.* besides Drugs, Dyes, Fruit, Silk, Cotton, Indico, Oil, and Wine that we need not doubt of, as soon as we make a regular Essay, the Country being adorn'd with pleasant Meadows, Rivers, Mountains, Valleys, Hills, and rich Pastures, and blessed with wholesome pure Air; especially a little backwards from the Sea, where the wild Beasts inhabit, none of which are voracious. The Men are active, the Women fruitful to Admiration, every House being full of Children, and several Women that have come hither barren, having presently prov'd fruitful. There cannot be a richer Soil, no Place abounding more in Flesh and Fowl, both wild and tame, besides Fish, Fruit, Grain, Cider, and many other pleasant Liquors; together with several other Necessaries for Life and Trade, that are daily found out, as new Discoveries are made. The Stone and Gout seldom trouble us; the Consumption we are wholly Strangers to, no Place affording a better Remedy for that Distemper, than *Carolina*. For Trade, we lie so near to *Virginia*, that we have the Advantage of their Convoys; as also Letters from thence, in two or three Days at most, in some Places in as few Hours. Add to this, that the great Number of Ships which come within those Capes, for *Virginia* and *Maryland*, take off our Provisions, and give us Bills of Exchange for *England*, which is Sterling Money. The Planters in *Virginia* and *Maryland* are forc'd to do the same, the great Quantities of Tobacco that are planted there, making Provisions scarce; and Tobacco is a Commodity oftentimes so low, as to bring nothing, whereas Provisions and Naval Stores never fail of a Market. Besides, where these are raised, in such Plenty as in *Carolina*, there always appears good Housekeeping, and Plenty of all manner of delicate Eatables. For Instance, the Pork of *Carolina* is very good, the younger Hogs fed on Peaches, Maiz, and such other natural Produce; being some of the sweetest Meat that the World affords, as is acknowledged by all Strangers that have been there. And as for the Beef, in *Pampticough*, and the Southward Parts, it proves extraordinary. We have not only Provisions plentiful, but Cloaths of our own Manufactures, which are made, and daily increase; Cotton, Wool, Hemp, and Flax, being of our own Growth; and the Women

men to be highly commended for their Induſtry in Spinning, and ordering their Houſwifry to ſo great Advantage as they generally do; which is much more eaſy, by reaſon this happy Climate, viſited with ſo mild Winters, is much warmer than the Northern Plantations, which ſaves abundance of Cloaths; fewer ſerving our Neceſſities, and thoſe of our Servants. But this is not all; for we can go out with our Commodities, to any other Part of the *Weſt-Indies*, or elſewhere, in the Depth of Winter; whereas, thoſe in *New-England*, *New-York*, *Penſylvania*, and the Colonies to the Northward of us, cannot ſtir for Ice, but are faſt lock'd into their Harbours. Beſides, we can trade with South-*Carolina*, and pay no Duties or Cuſtoms, no more than their own Veſſels, both North and South being under the ſame *Lords-Proprietors*. We have, as I obſerv'd before, another great Advantage, in not being a Frontier, and ſo continually alarm'd by the Enemy; and what has been accounted a Detriment to us, proves one of the greateſt Advantages any People could wiſh; which is, our Country's being faced with a Sound near ten Leagues over in ſome Places, through which, although their be Water enough for as large Ships to come in at, as in any part hitherto ſeated in both *Carolinas*; yet the Difficulty of that Sound to Strangers, hinders them from attempting any Hoſtilities againſt us; and, at the ſame time, if we conſider the Advantages thereof, nothing can appear to be a better Situation, than to be fronted with ſuch a Bulwark, which ſecures us from our Enemies. Furthermore, our Diſtance from the Sea rids us of two Curſes, which attend moſt other Parts of *America*, *viz.* Muskeetos, and the Worm-biting, which eats Ships Bottoms out; whereas at *Bath-Town*, there is no ſuch thing known; and as for Muskeetos, they hinder us of as little Reſt, as they do you in *England*. Add to this, the unaccountable Quantities of Fiſh this great Water, or Sound, ſupplies us withal, whenever we take the Pains to fiſh for them; Advantages I have no where met withal in *America*, except here. As for the Climate, we enjoy a very wholſome and ſerene Sky, and a pure and thin Air, the Sun ſeldom miſſing to give us his daily Bleſſing, unleſs now and then on a Winters Day, which is not often; and when cloudy, the firſt Appearance of a North-Weſt Wind clears the Horizon, and reſtores the Light of the Sun. The Weather, in Summer, is very plea-

ſant; the hotter Months being refreſh'd with continual Breezes of cool reviving Air; and the Spring being as pleaſant, and beautiful, as in any Place I ever was in. The Winter, moſt commonly, is ſo mild, that it looks like an Autumn, being now and then attended with clear and thin North-Weſt Winds, that are ſharp enough to regulate *Engliſh* Conſtitutions, and free them from a great many dangerous Diſtempers, that a continual Summer afflicts them withal, nothing being wanting, as to the natural Ornaments and Bleſſings of a Country, that conduce to make reaſonable Men happy. And, for thoſe that are otherwiſe, they are ſo much their own Enemies, where they are, that they will ſcarce ever be any ones Friends, or their own, when they are tranſplanted; ſo, it's much better for all ſides, that they remain as they are. Not but that there are ſeveral good People, that, upon juſt Grounds, may be uneaſy under their preſent Burdens; and ſuch I would adviſe to remove to the Place I have been treating of, where they may enjoy their Liberty and Religion, and peaceably eat the Fruits of their Labour, and drink the Wine of their own Vineyards, without the Alarms of a troubleſome worldly Life. If a Man be a *Botaniſt*, here is a plentiful Field of *Plants* to divert him in; If he be a *Gardner*, and delight in that pleaſant and happy Life, he will meet with a Climate and Soil, that will further and promote his Deſigns, in as great a Meaſure, as any Man can wiſh for; and as for the Conſtitution of this Government, it is ſo mild and eaſy, in reſpect to the Properties and Liberties of a Subject, that without rehearſing the Particulars, I ſay once for all, it is the mildeſt and beſt eſtabliſh'd Government in the World, and the Place where any Man may peaceably enjoy his own, without being invaded by another; Rank and Superiority ever giving Place to Juſtice and Equity, which is the Golden Rule that every Government ought to be built upon, and regulated by. Beſides, it is worthy our Notice, that this Province has been ſettled, and continued the moſt free from the Inſults and Barbarities of the *Indians*, of any Colony that was ever yet ſeated in *America*; which muſt be eſteem'd as a particular Providence of God handed down from Heaven, to theſe People; eſpecially, when we conſider, how irregularly they ſettled North-*Carolina*, and yet how undiſturb'd they have ever remain'd, free from any foreign Danger

ger or Loſs, even to this very Day. And what may well be look'd upon for as great a Miracle, this is a Place, where no Malefactors are found, deſerving Death, or even a Priſon for Debtors; there being no more than two Perſons, that, as far as I have been able to learn, ever ſuffer'd as Criminals, although it has been a Settlement near ſixty Years; One of whom was a *Turk* that committed *Murder*; the other, an old Woman, for *Witchcraft*. Theſe, 'tis true, were on the Stage, and acted many Years, before I knew the Place; but as for the laſt, I wiſh it had been undone to this day; although they give a great many Arguments, to juſtifie the Deed, which I had rather they ſhould have a Hand in, than myſelf; ſeeing I could never approve of taking Life away upon ſuch Accuſations, the Juſtice whereof I could never yet underſtand.

But, to return to the Subject in Hand; we there make extraordinary good Bricks throughout the Settlement. All ſorts of Handicrafts, as *Carpenters*, *Joiners*, *Maſons*, *Plaiſterers*, *Shoemakers*, *Tanners*, *Taylors*, *Weavers*, and moſt others, may, with ſmall Beginnings, and God's Bleſſing, thrive very well in this Place, and provide Eſtates for their Children, Land being ſold at a much cheaper Rate there, than in any other Place in *America*, and may, as I ſuppoſe, be purchaſed of the *Lords-Proprietors* here in *England*, or of the Governour there for the time being, by any that ſhall have a mind to tranſport themſelves to that Country. The Farmers that go thither (for which ſort of Men it is a very thriving Place) ſhould take with them ſome particular Seeds of Graſs, as Trefoil, Clover-graſs all ſorts, Sanfoin, and Common Graſs, or that which is a Rarity in *Europe*; eſpecially, what has ſprung and roſe firſt from a warm Climate, and will endure the Sun without flinching. Likewiſe, if there be any extraordinary ſort of Grain for Increaſe or Hardineſs, and ſome Fruit-Trees of choice Kinds, they will be both profitable and pleaſant to have with you, where you may ſee the Fruits of your Labour in Perfection, in a few Years. The neceſſary Inſtruments of Husbandry I need not acquaint the Husbandman withal; Hoes of all ſorts, and Axes muſt be had, with Saws, Wedges, Augurs, Nails, Hammers, and what other Things may be neceſſary for building with Brick, or Stone, which ſort your Inclination and Conveniency lead you to.

For, after having look'd over this Treatiſe, you muſt needs be acquainted with the Nature of the Country, and therefore cannot but be Judges, what it is that you will chiefly want. As for Land, none need want it for taking up, even in the Places there ſeated on the Navigable Creeks, Rivers, and Harbours, without being driven into remoter Holes and Corners of the Country, for Settlements, which all are forced to do, who, at this day, ſettle in moſt or all of the other *Engliſh* Plantations in *America*; which are already become ſo populous, that a New-Comer cannot get a beneficial and commodious Seat, unleſs he purchaſes, when, in moſt Places in *Virginia* and *Maryland*, a thouſand Acres of good Land, ſeated on a Navigable Water, will coſt a thouſand Pounds; whereas, with us, it is at preſent obtain'd for the fiftieth Part of the Money. Beſides, our Land pays to the *Lords*, but an eaſy Quit-Rent, or yearly Acknowledgement; and the other Settlements pay two Shillings *per* hundred. All theſe things duly weighed, any rational Man that has a mind to purchaſe Land in the Plantations for a Settlement of himſelf and Family, will ſoon diſcover the Advantages that attend the Settlers and Purchaſers of Land in *Carolina*, above all other Colonies in the *Engliſh* Dominions in *America*. And as there is a free Exerciſe of all Perſuaſions amongſt Chriſtians, the *Lords-Proprietors*, to encourage Miniſters of the Church of *England*, have given free Land towards the Maintenance of a Church, and eſpecially, for the Pariſh of S. *Thomas* in *Pampticough*, over-againſt the Town, is already laid out for a Glebe of two hundred and twenty three Acres of rich well-ſituated Land, that a Parſonage-Houſe may be built upon. And now I ſhall proceed to give an Account of the *Indians*, their Cuſtoms and Ways of Living, with a ſhort Dictionary of their Speech.

AN ACCOUNT OF THE *INDIANS* OF *NORTH-CAROLINA.*

THE *Indians*, which were the Inhabitants of *America*, when the *Spaniards* and other *Europeans* discover'd the several Parts of that Country, are the People which we reckon the Natives thereof; as indeed they were, when we first found out those Parts, and appear'd therein. Yet this has not wrought in me a full Satisfaction, to allow these People to have been the Ancient Dwellers of the New-World, or Tract of Land we call *America*. The Reasons that I have to think otherwise, are too many to set down here; but I shall give the Reader a few, before I proceed; and some others he will find scatter'd in my Writings elsewhere.

In *Carolina* (the Part I now treat of) are the fairest Marks of a Deluge, (that at some time has probably made strange Alterations, as to the Station that Country was then in) that ever I saw, or, I think, read of, in any History. Amongst the other Subterraneous Matters, that have been discover'd, we found, in digging of a Well that was twenty six foot deep, at the Bottom thereof, many large Pieces of the Tulip-Tree, and several other sorts of Wood, some of which were cut and notch'd, and some squared, as the Joices of a House are, which appear'd (in the Judgment of all that saw them) to be wrought with Iron Instruments; *Woods under Ground.*

it

it seeming impossible for any thing made of Stone, or what they were found to make use of, to cut Wood in that manner. It cannot be argu'd, that the Wood so cut, might float from some other Continent; because Hiccory and the Tulip-Tree are spontaneous in *America*, and in no other Places, that I could ever learn. It is to be acknowledg'd, that the *Spaniards* give us Relations of magnificent Buildings, which were raised by the *Indians* of *Mexico* and other Parts, which they discover'd, and conquer'd; amongst whom no Iron Instruments were found: But 'tis a great Misfortune, that no Person in that Expedition was so curious, as to take an exact Draught of the Fabricks of those People, which would have been a Discovery of great Value, and very acceptable to the Ingenious; for, as to the Politeness of Stones, it may be effected by Collision, and Grinding, which is of a contrary Nature, on several Accounts, and disproves not my Arguments, in the least.

Shells some Fathoms in the Earth, the Sea probably has thrown up in part of this Country.

Mexico *Buildings.*

Earthen Pots under Ground.

The next is, the Earthen Pots that are often found under Ground, and at the Foot of the Banks where the Water has wash'd them away. They are for the most part broken in pieces; but we find them of a different sort, in Comparison of those the *Indians* use at this day, who have had no other, ever since the *English* discover'd *America*. The Bowels of the Earth cannot have alter'd them, since they are thicker, of another Shape, and Composition, and nearly approach to the Urns of the Ancient *Romans*.

Indian *Peaches.*

The Stone-Water-Melon and Gourds the Indians have always had.

Again, the Peaches, which are the only tame Fruit, or what is Foreign, that these People enjoy, which is an Eastern Product, and will keep and retain its vegetative and growing Faculty, the longest of any thing of that Nature, that I know of. The Stone, as I elsewhere have remark'd, is thicker than any other sort of the Peaches in *Europe*, or of the *European* sort, now growing in *America*, and is observed to grow if planted, after it has been for several Years laid by; and it seems very probable, that these People might come from some Eastern Country; for when you ask them whence their Fore-Fathers came, that first inhabited the Country, they will point to the Westward and say, *Where the Sun sleeps, our Forefathers came thence*, which, at that distance, may be reckon'd amongst the Eastern Parts of the World. And to this day, they are a shifting, wandring People; for I know some

ſome *Indian* Nations, that have chang'd their Settlements, many hundred Miles; ſometimes no leſs than a thouſand, as is prov'd by the *Savanna Indians*, who formerly lived on the Banks of the *Meſſiaſippi*, and remov'd thence to the Head of one of the Rivers of South-*Carolina*; ſince which, (for ſome Diſlike) moſt of them are remov'd to live in the Quarters of the *Iroquois* or *Sinnagars*, which are on the Heads of the Rivers that diſgorge themſelves into the Bay of *Cheſapeak*. I once met with a young *Indian* Woman, that had been brought from beyond the Mountains, and was ſold a Slave into *Virginia*. She ſpoke the ſame Language, as the *Coranine Indians*, that dwell near Cape-*Look-out*, allowing for ſome few Words, which were different, yet no otherwiſe, than that they might underſtand one another very well.

The *Indians* of North-*Carolina* are a well-ſhap'd clean-made People, of different Statures, as the *Europeans* are, yet chiefly inclin'd to be tall. They are a very ſtreight People, and never bend forwards, or ſtoop in the Shoulders, unleſs much overpower'd by old Age. Their Limbs are exceeding well-ſhap'd. As for their Legs and Feet, they are generally the handſomeſt in the World. Their Bodies are a little flat, which is occaſion'd, by being laced hard down to a Board, in their Infancy. This is all the Cradle they have, which I ſhall deſcribe at large elſewhere. Their Eyes are black, or of a dark Hazle; The White is marbled with red Streaks, which is ever common to theſe People, unleſs when ſprung from a white Father or Mother. Their Colour is of a tawny, which would not be ſo dark, did they not dawb themſelves with Bears Oil, and a Colour like burnt Cork. This is begun in their Infancy, and continued for a long time, which fills the Pores, and enables them better to endure the Extremity of the Weather. They are never bald on their Heads, although never ſo old, which, I believe, proceeds from their Heads being always uncover'd, and the greaſing their Hair (ſo often as they do) with Bears Fat, which is a great Nouriſher of the Hair, and cauſes it to grow very faſt. Amongſt the Bears Oil (when they intend to be fine) they mix a certain red Powder, that comes from a Scarlet Root which they get in the hilly Country, near the Foot of the great Ridge of Mountains, and it is no where elſe to be found. They have this Scarlet Root in great Eſteem, and ſell it for a very great

Indian well ſhap'd People.

Price

Price, one to another. The Reaſon of its Value is, becauſe they not only go a long way for it, but are in great Danger of the *Sinnagars* or *Iroquois*, who are mortal Enemies to all our *Indians*, and very often take them Captives, or kill them, before they return from this Voyage. The *Tuskeruros* and other *Indians* have often brought this Seed with them from the Mountains; but it would never grow in our Land. With this and Bears Greaſe they anoint their Heads and Temples, which is eſteem'd as ornamental, as ſweet Powder to our Hair. Beſides, this Root has the Virtue of killing Lice, and ſuffers none to abide or breed in their Heads. For want of this Root, they ſometimes uſe *Pecoon*-Root, which is of a Crimſon Colour, but it is apt to die the Hair of an ugly Hue.

Their Eyes are commonly full and manly, and their Gate ſedate and majeſtick. They never walk backward and forward as we do, nor contemplate on the Affairs of Loſs and Gain; the things which daily perplex us. They are dexterous and ſteady both as to their Hands and Feet, to Admiration. They will walk over deep Brooks, and Creeks, on the ſmalleſt Poles, and that without any Fear or Concern. Nay, an *Indian* will walk on the Ridge of a Barn or Houſe and look down the Gable-end, and ſpit upon the Ground, as unconcern'd, as if he was walking on *Terra firma*. In Running, Leaping, or any ſuch other Exerciſe, their Legs ſeldom miſcarry, and give them a Fall; and as for letting any thing fall out of their Hands, I never yet knew one Example. They are no Inventers of any Arts or Trades worthy mention; the Reaſon of which I take to be, that they are not poſſeſs'd with that Care and Thoughtfulneſs, how to provide for the Neceſſaries of Life, as the *Europeans* are; yet they will learn any thing very ſoon. I have known an *Indian* ſtock Guns better than moſt of our *Joiners*, although he never ſaw one ſtock'd before; and beſides, his Working-Tool was only a ſorry Knife. I have alſo known ſeveral of them that were Slaves to the *Engliſh*, learn Handicraft-Trades very well and ſpeedily. I never ſaw a Dwarf amongſt them, nor but one that was Hump-back'd. Their Teeth are yellow with Smoaking Tobacco, which both Men and Women are much addicted to. They tell us, that they had Tobacco amongſt them, before the *Europeans* made any Diſcovery of

No Dwarf.

that

that Continent. It differs in the Leaf from the ſweet-ſcented, and *Oroonoko*, which are the Plants we raiſe and cultivate in *America*. Theirs differs likewiſe much in the Smell, when green, from our Tobacco, before cured. They do not uſe the ſame way to cure it as we do; and therefore, the Difference muſt be very conſiderable in Taſte; for all Men (that know Tobacco) muſt allow, that it is the Ordering thereof which gives a Hogoo to that Weed, rather than any Natural Reliſh it poſſeſſes, when green. Although they are great Smokers, yet they never are ſeen to take it in Snuff, or chew it. *Indian Tobacco.*

They have no Hairs on their Faces (except ſome few) and thoſe but little, nor is there often found any Hair under their Arm-Pits. They are continually plucking it away from their Faces, by the Roots. As for their Privities, ſince they wore Tail-Clouts, to cover their Nakedneſs, ſeveral of the Men have a deal of Hair thereon. It is to be obſerv'd, that the Head of the *Penis* is cover'd (throughout all the Nations of the *Indians* I ever ſaw) both in Old and Young. Although we reckon theſe a very ſmooth People, and free from Hair; yet I once ſaw a middle-aged Man, that was hairy all down his Back; the Hairs being above an Inch long.

As there are found very few, or ſcarce any, Deformed, or Cripples, amongſt them, ſo neither did I ever ſee but one blind Man; and then they would give me no Account how his Blindneſs came. They had a Uſe for him, which was, to lead him with a Girl, Woman, or Boy, by a String; ſo they put what Burdens they pleaſed upon his Back, and made him very ſerviceable upon all ſuch Occaſions. No People have better Eyes, or ſee better in the Night or Day, than the *Indians*. Some alledge, that the Smoke of the Pitch-Pine, which they chiefly burn, does both preſerve and ſtrengthen the Eyes; as, perhaps, it may do, becauſe that Smoak never offends the Eyes, though you hold your Face over a great Fire thereof. This is occaſion'd by the volatile Part of the Turpentine, which riſes with the Smoke, and is of a friendly, balſamick Nature; for the Aſhes of the Pine-Tree afford no fix'd Salt in them. *Few Cripples.* *Indians good Eyes.*

They let their Nails grow very long, which, they reckon, is the Uſe Nails are deſign'd for, and laugh at the *Europeans* for *Nails*. *Not pair their*

for pairing theirs, which, they ſay, diſarms them of that which Nature deſign'd them for.

Indians *not robuſt.* They are not of ſo robuſt and ſtrong Bodies, as to lift great Burdens, and endure Labour and ſlaviſh Work, as the *Europeans* are; yet ſome that are Slaves, prove very good and laborious: But, of themſelves, they never work as the *Engliſh* do, taking care for no farther than what is abſolutely neceſſary to ſupport Life. In Travelling and Hunting, they are very indefatigable; becauſe that carries a Pleaſure along with the Profit. I have known ſome of them very ſtrong; and as for Running and Leaping, they are extraordinary Fellows, and will dance for ſeveral Nights together, with the greateſt Briskneſs imaginable, their Wind never failing them.

No hard Workers.

Indians *Dance of War.* Their Dances are of different Natures; and for every ſort of Dance, they have a Tune, which is allotted for that Dance; as, if it be a War-Dance, they have a warlike Song, wherein they expreſs, with all the Paſſion and Vehemence imaginable, what they intend to do with their Enemies; how they will kill, roaſt, ſculp, beat, and make Captive, ſuch and ſuch Numbers of them; and how many they have deſtroy'd before. All theſe Songs are made new for every Feaſt; nor is one and the ſame Song ſung at two ſeveral Feſtivals. Some one of the Nation (which has the beſt Gift of expreſſing their Deſigns) is appointed by their King, and War-Captains, to make theſe Songs.

On what Account they make War.

Indian *Poet.*

Others are made for Feaſts of another Nature; as, when ſeveral Towns, or ſometimes, different Nations have made Peace with one another; then the Song ſuits both Nations, and relates, how the bad Spirit made them go to War, and deſtroy one another; but it ſhall never be ſo again; but that their Sons and Daughters ſhall marry together, and the two Nations love one another, and become as one People.

Dance of Peace.

They have a third ſort of Feaſts and Dances, which are always when the Harveſt of Corn is ended, and in the Spring. The one, to return Thanks to the good Spirit, for the Fruits of the Earth; the other, to beg the ſame Bleſſings for the ſucceeding Year. And, to encourage the young Men to labour ſtoutly, in planting their Maiz and Pulſe, they ſet a ſort of an Idol in the Field, which is dreſs'd up exactly like an *Indian*, having all the *Indians* Habit, beſides abundance

of

of *Wampum*, and their Money, made of Shells, that hangs about his Neck. The Image none of the young Men dare approach; for the old ones will not ſuffer them to come near him, but tell them, that he is ſome famous *Indian* Warriour, that died a great while ago, and now is come amongſt them, to ſee if they work well, which if they do, he will go to the good Spirit, and ſpeak to him to ſend them Plenty of Corn, and to make the young Men all expert Hunters and mighty Warriours. All this while, the King and old Men ſit round the Image, and ſeemingly pay a profound Reſpect to the ſame. One great Help to theſe *Indians*, in carrying on theſe Cheats, and inducing Youth to do what they pleaſe, is, the uninterrupted Silence, which is ever kept and obſerv'd, with all the Reſpect and Veneration imaginable. *Plantation Idol.*

At theſe Feaſts, which are ſet out with all the Magnificence their Fare allows of, the Maſquerades begin at Night, and not before. There is commonly a Fire made in the middle of the Houſe, which is the largeſt in the Town, and is very often the Dwelling of their King, or War-Captain; where ſit two Men on the Ground, upon a Mat; one with a Rattle, made of a Gourd, with ſome Beans in it; the other with a Drum, made of an earthen Pot, cover'd with a dreſs'd-Deer-Skin, and one Stick in his Hand to beat thereon; and ſo they both begin the Song appointed. At the ſame time, one drums, and the other rattles, which is all the artificial Muſick of their own making I ever ſaw amongſt them. To theſe two Inſtruments they ſing, which carries no Air with it, but is a ſort of unſavoury Jargon; yet their Cadences and Raiſing of their Voices are form'd with that Equality and Exactneſs, that (to us *Europeans*) it ſeems admirable, how they ſhould continue theſe Songs, without once miſſing to agree, each with the others Note and Tune. *Maſquerade.* *Indian Muſicians.*

As for their Dancing, were there Maſters of that Profeſſion amongſt them, as there are with us, they would dearly earn their Money; for theſe Creatures take the moſt Pains at it, that Men are able to endure. I have ſeen thirty odd together a dancing, and every one dropp'd down with Sweat, as if Water had been poured down their Backs. They uſe thoſe hard Labours, to make them able to endure Fatigue, *Dancing.*

Indians *long winded.* and improve their Wind, which indeed is very long and durable, it being a hard matter, in any Exerciſe, to diſpoſſeſs them of it.

At theſe Feaſts, they meet from all the Towns within fifty or ſixty Miles round, where they buy and ſell ſeveral Commodities, as we do at Fairs and Markets. Beſides, they game very much, and often ſtrip one another of all they have in the World; and what is more, I have known ſeveral of them play themſelves away, ſo that they have remain'd the Winners Servants, till their Relations or themſelves could pay the Money to redeem them; and when this happens, the Loſer is never dejected or melancholy at the Loſs, but laughs, and ſeems no leſs contented than if he had won. They never differ at Gaming, neither did I ever ſee a Diſpute, about the Legality thereof, ſo much as riſe amongſt them.

Indian *Gaming.*

Their chiefeſt Game is a ſort of Arithmetick, which is managed by a Parcel of ſmall ſplit Reeds, the Thickneſs of a ſmall Bent; theſe are made very nicely, ſo that they part, and are tractable in their Hands. They are fifty one in Number, their Length about ſeven Inches; when they play, they throw part of them to their Antagoniſt; the Art is, to diſcover, upon ſight, how many you have, and what you throw to him that plays with you. Some are ſo expert at their Numbers, that they will tell ten times together, what they throw out of their Hands. Although the whole Play is carried on with the quickeſt Motion it's poſſible to uſe, yet ſome are ſo expert at this Game, as to win great *Indian* Eſtates by this Play. A good Sett of theſe Reeds, fit to play withal, are valued and ſold for a dreſs'd Doe-Skin.

Indian *Cards.*

They have ſeveral other Plays and Games; as, with the Kernels or Stones of Perſimmons, which are in effect the ſame as our Dice, becauſe Winning or Loſing depend on which ſide appear uppermoſt, and how they happen to fall together.

Indian *Dice.*

Another Game is managed with a Batoon and a Ball, and reſembles our Trap-ball; beſides, ſeveral Nations have ſeveral Games and Paſtimes, which are not uſed by others.

Indian *Trap-Ball.*

Theſe Savages live in *Wigwams*, or Cabins built of Bark, which are made round like an Oven, to prevent any Damage by hard Gales of Wind. They make the Fire in the middle of the Houſe, and have a Hole at the Top of the Roof right

Indian *Cabins.*

right above the Fire, to let out the Smoke. These Dwellings are as hot as Stoves, where the *Indians* sleep and sweat all Night. The Floors thereof are never paved nor swept, so that they have always a loose Earth on them. They are often troubled with a multitude of Fleas, especially near the Places where they dress their Deer-Skins, because that Hair harbours them; yet I never felt any ill, unsavory Smell in their Cabins, whereas, should we live in our Houses, as they do, we should be poison'd with our own Nastiness; which confirms these *Indians* to be, as they really are, some of the sweetest People in the World.

Fleas.

Indians a sweet People.

The Bark they make their Cabins withal, is generally Cypress, or red or white Cedar; and sometimes, when they are a great way from any of these Woods, they make use of Pine-Bark, which is the worser sort. In building these Fabricks, they get very long Poles, of Pine, Cedar, Hiccory, or any Wood that will bend; these are the Thickness of the Small of a Man's Leg, at the thickest end, which they generally strip of the Bark, and warm them well in the Fire, which makes them tough and fit to bend; afterwards, they stick the thickest ends of them in the Ground, about two Yards asunder, in a Circular Form, the distance they design the Cabin to be, (which is not always round, but sometimes oval) then they bend the Tops and bring them together, and bind their ends with Bark of Trees, that is proper for that use, as Elm is, or sometimes the Moss that grows on the Trees, and is a Yard or two long, and never rots; then they brace them with other Poles, to make them strong; afterwards, cover them all over with Bark, so that they are very warm and tight, and will keep firm against all the Weathers that blow. They have other sorts of Cabins without Windows, which are for their Granaries, Skins, and Merchandizes; and others that are cover'd over head; the rest left open for the Air. These have Reed-Hurdles, like Tables, to lie and sit on, in Summer, and serve for pleasant Banqueting-Houses in the hot Season of the Year. The Cabins they dwell in have Benches all round, except where the Door stands; on these they lay Beasts-Skins, and Mats made of Rushes, whereon they sleep and loll. In one of these, several Families commonly live, though all related to one another.

Making Cabins.

Black Moss.

Indians Store-Houses.

Indians Banqueting Houses.

As

As to the *Indians* Food, it is of ſeveral ſorts, which are as follows.

Indian Food. Veniſon, and Fawns in the Bags, cut out of the Doe's Belly; Fiſh of all ſorts, the Lamprey-Eel excepted, and the Sturgeon our Salt-Water *Indians* will not touch; Bear and Bever; Panther; Pole-cat; Wild-cat; Poſſum; Raccoon; Hares, and Squirrels, roaſted with their Guts in; Snakes, all *Indians* will not eat them, tho' ſome do; All wild Fruits that are palatable, ſome of which they dry and keep againſt Winter, as all ſort of Fruits, and Peaches, which they dry, and make Quiddonies, and Cakes, that are very pleaſant, and a little tartiſh; young Waſps, when they are white in the Combs, before they can fly, this is eſteemed a Dainty; All ſorts of Tortois and Terebins; Shell-Fiſh, and Stingray, or Scate, dry'd; Gourds; Melons; Cucumbers; Squaſhes; Pulſe of all ſorts; *Rockahomine* Meal, which is their Maiz, parch'd and pounded into Powder; Fowl of all ſorts, that are eatable; Ground-Nuts, or wild Potato's; Acorns and Acorn Oil; Wild-Bulls, Beef, Mutton, Pork, *&c.* from the *Engliſh*; *Indian* Corn, or Maiz, made into ſeveral ſorts of Bread; Ears of Corn roaſted in the Summer, or preſerv'd againſt Winter.

The Victuals is common, throughout the whole Kindred Relations, and often to the whole Town; eſpecially, when they are in Hunting-Quarters, then they all fare alike, whichſoever of them kills the Game. They are very kind, and charitable to one another, but more eſpecially to thoſe of their own Nation; for if any one of them has ſuffer'd any Loſs, by Fire or otherwiſe, they order the griev'd Perſon to make a Feaſt, and invite them all thereto, which, on the day appointed, they come to, and after every Man's Meſs of Victuals is dealt to him, one of their Speakers, or grave old Men, makes an Harangue, and acquaints the Company, That that Man's Houſe has been burnt, wherein all his Goods were deſtroy'd; That he, and his Family, very narrowly eſcaped; That he is every Man's Friend in that Company; and, That it is all their Duties to help him, as he would do to any of them, had the like Misfortune befallen them. After this Oration is over, every Man, according to his Quality, throws him down upon the Ground ſome Preſent, which is commonly Beads, *Ronoak*, *Peak*, Skins or Furs, and which very often amounts to treble the Loſs he has ſuffer'd.

Feaſts of Charity. Indians *diſcern not between fat and lean Meat.*

fer'd. The ſame Aſſiſtance they give to any Man that wants to build a Cabin, or make a Canoe. They ſay, it is our Duty thus to do; for there are ſeveral Works that one Man cannot effect, therefore we muſt give him our Help, otherwiſe our Society will fall, and we ſhall be depriv'd of thoſe urgent Neceſſities which Life requires. They have no Fence to part one anothers Lots in their Corn-Fields; but every Man knows his own, and it ſcarce ever happens, that they rob one another of ſo much as an Ear of Corn, which if any is found to do, he is ſentenced by the Elders to work and plant for him that was robb'd, till he is recompenſed for all the Damage he has ſuffer'd in his Corn-Field; and this is punctually perform'd, and the Thief held in Diſgrace, that ſteals from any of his Country-Folks. It often happens, that a Woman is deſtitute of her Husband, and has a great many Children to maintain; ſuch a Perſon they always help, and make their young men plant, reap, and do every thing that ſhe is not capable of doing herſelf; yet they do not allow any one to be idle, but to employ themſelves in ſome Work or other.

Indians *no Fences.*

Indians *Charity to Widows.*

They never fight with one another, unleſs drunk, nor do you ever hear any Scolding amongſt them. They ſay, the *Europeans* are always rangling and uneaſy, and wonder they do not go out of this World, ſince they are ſo uneaſy and diſcontented in it. All their Misfortunes and Loſſes end in Laughter; for if their Cabins take Fire, and all their Goods are burnt therein, (indeed, all will ſtrive to prevent farther Damage, whilſt there is any Poſſibility) yet ſuch a Misfortune ends in a hearty Fitt of Laughter, unleſs ſome of their Kinsfolks and Friends have loſt their Lives; but then the Caſe is alter'd, and they become very penſive, and go into deep Mourning, which is continued for a conſiderable Time; ſometimes longer, or ſhorter, according to the Dignity of the Perſon, and the Number of Relations he had near him.

Indian *Women no Scolds.*

The Burial of their Dead is perform'd with a great deal of Ceremony, in which one Nation differs, in ſome few Circumſtances, from another, yet not ſo much but we may, by a general Relation, pretty nearly account for them all.

When an *Indian* is dead, the greater Perſon he was, the more expenſive is his Funeral. The firſt thing which is done, is, to place the neareſt Relations near the Corps, who mourn and weep very much, having their Hair hanging down their Shoulders,

Indian *Burial of their Dead.*

Shoulders, in a very forlorn manner. After the dead Perſon has lain a Day and a Night, in one of their Hurdles of Canes, commonly in ſome Out-Houſe made for that purpoſe, thoſe that officiate about the Funeral, go into the Town, and the firſt young Men they meet withal, that have Blankets or Match Coats on, whom they think fit for their Turn, they ſtrip them from their Backs, who ſuffer them ſo to do, without any Reſiſtance. In theſe they wrap the dead Bodies, and cover them with two or three Mats, which the *Indians* make of Ruſhes or Cane; and laſt of all, they have a long Web of woven Reeds, or hollow Canes, which is the Coffin of the *Indians*, and is brought round ſeveral times, and tied faſt at both ends, which indeed, looks very decent and well. Then the Corps is brought out of the Houſe, into the Orchard of Peach-Trees, where another Hurdle is made to receive it, about which comes all the Relations and Nation that the dead Perſon belong'd to, beſides ſeveral from other Nations in Alliance with them; all which ſit down on the Ground, upon Mats ſpread there, for that purpoſe; where the Doctor or Conjurer appears; and, after ſome time, makes a Sort of *O-yes*, at which all are very ſilent; then he begins to give an Account, who the dead Perſon was, and how ſtout a Man he approv'd himſelf; how many Enemies and Captives he had kill'd and taken; how ſtrong, tall, and nimble he was; that he was a great Hunter, a Lover of his Country, and poſſeſs'd of a great many beautiful Wives and Children, eſteem'd the greateſt of Bleſſings among theſe Savages, in which they have a true Notion. Thus this Orator runs on, highly extolling the dead Man, for his Valour, Conduct, Strength, Riches, and Good-Humour; and enumerating his Guns, Slaves and almoſt every thing he was poſſeſs'd of, when living. After which, he addreſſes himſelf to the People of that Town or Nation, and bids them ſupply the dead Man's Place, by following his ſteps, who, he aſſures them, is gone into the Country of Souls, (which they think lies a great way off, in this World, which the Sun viſits, in his ordinary Courſe) and that he will have the Enjoyment of handſome young Women, great Store of Deer to hunt, never meet with Hunger, Cold or Fatigue, but every thing to anſwer his Expectation and Deſire. This is the Heaven they propoſe to themſelves; but, on the contrary,

Indian *Funeral Sermon.*

for

for those *Indians* that are lazy, thievish amongst themselves, bad Hunters, and no Warriours, nor of much Use to the Nation, to such they allot, in the next World, Hunger, Cold, Troubles, old ugly Women for their Companions, with Snakes, and all sorts of nasty Victuals to feed on. Thus is mark'd out their Heaven and Hell. After all this Harangue, he diverts the People with some of their Traditions, as when there was a violent hot Summer, or very hard Winter; when any notable Distempers rag'd amongst them; when they were at War with such and such Nations; how victorious they were; and what were the Names of their War-Captains. To prove the times more exactly, he produces the Records of the Country, which are a Parcel of Reeds, of different Lengths, with several distinct Marks, known to none but themselves; by which they seem to guess, very exactly, at Accidents that happen'd many Years ago; nay two or three Ages or more. The Reason I have to believe what they tell me, on this Account, is, because I have been at the Meetings of several *Indian* Nations; and they agreed, in relating the same Circumstances, as to Time, very exactly; as, for Example, they say, there was so hard a Winter in *Carolina*, 105 years ago, that the great Sound was frozen over, and the Wild Geese came into the Woods to eat Acorns, and that they were so tame, (I suppose, through Want) that they kill'd abundance in the Woods, by knocking them on the Head with Sticks.

Indian Traditions.

A hard Winter.

But, to return to the dead Man. When this long Tale is ended, by him that spoke first; perhaps, a second begins another long Story; so a third, and fourth, if there be so many Doctors present; which all tell one and the same thing. At last, the Corps is brought away from that Hurdle to the Grave, by four young Men, attended by the Relations, the King, old Men, and all the Nation. When they come to the Sepulcre, which is about six Foot deep, and eight Foot long, having at each end (that is, at the Head and Foot) a Light-Wood, or Pitch-Pine Fork driven close down the sides of the Grave, firmly into the Ground; (these two Forks are to contain a Ridge-Pole, as you shall understand presently) before they lay the Corps into the Grave, they cover the bottom two or three times over with Bark of Trees, then they let down the Corps (with two Belts, that the *Indians*

Interments in the Grave.

dians carry their Burdens withal) very leiſurely, upon the ſaid Barks; then they lay over a Pole of the ſame Wood, in the two Forks, and having a great many Pieces of Pitch-Pine Logs, about two Foot and a half long, they ſtick them in the ſides of the Grave down each End, and near the Top thereof, where the other Ends lie on the Ridge-Pole, ſo that they are declining like the Roof of a Houſe. Theſe being very thick-plac'd, they cover them (many times double) with Bark; then they throw the Earth thereon, that came out of the Grave, and beat it down very firm; by this Means, the dead Body lies in a Vault, nothing touching him; ſo that when I ſaw this way of Burial, I was mightily pleas'd with it, eſteeming it very decent and pretty, as having ſeen a great many Chriſtians buried without the tenth Part of that Ceremony and Decency. Now, when the Fleſh is rotted and moulder'd from the Bone, they take up the Carcaſs, and clean the Bones, and joint them together; afterwards, they dreſs them up in pure white dreſs'd Deer-Skins, and lay them amongſt their Grandees and Kings in the *Quiogozon*, which is their Royal Tomb or Burial-Place of their Kings and War-Captains. This is a very large magnificent Cabin, (according to their Building) which is rais'd at the Publick Charge of the Nation, and maintain'd in a great deal of Form and Neatneſs. About ſeven foot high, is a Floor or Loft made, on which lie all their Princes, and Great Men, that have died for ſeveral hundred Years, all attir'd in the Dreſs I before told you of. No Perſon is to have his Bones lie here, and to be thus dreſs'd, unleſs he gives a round Sum of their Money to the Rulers, for Admittance. If they remove never ſo far, to live in a Foreign Country, they never fail to take all theſe dead Bones along with them, though the Tediouſneſs of their ſhort daily Marches keeps them never ſo long on their Journey. They reverence and adore this *Quiogozon*, with all the Veneration and Reſpect that is poſſible for ſuch a People to diſcharge, and had rather loſe all, than have any Violence or Injury offer'd thereto. Theſe Savages differ ſome ſmall matter in their Burials; ſome burying right upwards, and otherwiſe, as you are acquainted withal in my Journal from South to North *Carolina*; Yet they all agree in their Mourning, which is, to appear every Night, at the Sepulcre, and howl and weep in a very diſmal manner, having their Faces

Quiogozon *Idols.*

Idols at the Beds.

Mourning for the Dead.

dawb'd

dawb'd over with Light-wood Soot, (which is the ſame as Lamp-black) and Bears Oil. This renders them as black as it is poſſible to make themſelves, ſo that theirs very much reſemble the Faces of Executed Men boil'd in Tar. If the dead Perſon was a Grandee, to carry on the Funeral Ceremonies, they hire People to cry and lament over the dead Man. Of this ſort there are ſeveral, that practiſe it for a Livelihood, and are very expert at Shedding abundance of Tears, and howling like Wolves, and ſo diſcharging their Office with abundance of Hypocriſy and Art. The Women are never accompanied with theſe Ceremonies after Death; and to what World they allot that Sex, I never underſtood, unleſs, to wait on their dead Husbands; but they have more Wit, than ſome of the Eaſtern Nations, who ſacrifice themſelves to accompany their Husbands into the next World. It is the dead Man's Relations, by Blood, as his Uncles, Brothers, Siſters, Couſins, Sons, and Daughters, that mourn in good earneſt, the Wives thinking their Duty is diſcharg'd, and that they are become free, when their Husband is dead; ſo, as faſt as they can, look out for another, to ſupply his Place.

Indians *hired to mourn.*

As for the *Indian* Women, which now happen in my Way; when young, and at Maturity, they are as fine-ſhap'd Creatures (take them generally) as any in the Univerſe. They are of a tawny Complexion; their Eyes very brisk and amorous; their Smiles afford the fineſt Compoſure a Face can poſſeſs; their Hands are of the fineſt Make, with ſmall long Fingers, and as ſoft as their Cheeks; and their whole Bodies of a ſmooth Nature. They are not ſo uncouth or unlikely, as we ſuppoſe them; nor are they Strangers or not Proficients in the ſoft Paſſion. They are moſt of them mercenary, except the married Women, who ſometimes beſtow their Favours alſo to ſome or other, in their Husbands Abſence. For which they never ask any Reward. As for the Report, that they are never found unconſtant, like the *Europeans*, it is wholly falſe; for were the old World and the new one put into a Pair of Scales (in point of Conſtancy) it would be a hard Matter to diſcern which was the heavier. As for the Trading Girls; which are thoſe deſign'd to get Money by their Natural Parts, theſe are diſcernable, by the Cut of their Hair; their Tonſure differing from all others, of that Nation,

Indian *Women handſome.*

Married Women unconſtant.

Trading Girls.

on, who are not of their Profeſſion; which Method is intended to prevent Miſtakes; for the Savages of *America* are deſirous (if poſſible) to keep their Wives to themſelves, as well as thoſe in other Parts of the World. When any Addreſſes are made to one of theſe Girls, ſhe immediately acquaints her Parents therewith, and they tell the King of it, (provided he that courts her be a Stranger) his Majeſty commonly being the principal Bawd of the Nation he rules over, and there ſeldom being any of theſe *Wincheſter*-Weddings agreed on, without his Royal Conſent. He likewiſe adviſes her what Bargain to make, and if it happens to be an *Indian* Trader that wants a Bed-fellow, and has got Rum to ſell, be ſure, the King muſt have a large Dram for a Fee, to confirm the Match. Theſe *Indians*, that are of the elder ſort, when any ſuch Queſtion is put to them, will debate the Matter amongſt themſelves with all the Sobriety and Seriouſneſs imaginable, every one of the Girl's Relations arguing the Advantage or Detriment that may enſue ſuch a Night's Encounter; all which is done with as much Steadineſs and Reality, as if it was the greateſt Concern in the World, and not ſo much as one Perſon ſhall be ſeen to ſmile, ſo long as the Debate holds, making no Difference betwixt an Agreement of this Nature, and a Bargain of any other. If they comply with the Men's Deſire, then a particular Bed is provided for them, either in a Cabin by themſelves, or elſe all the young people turn out, to another Lodging, that they may not ſpoil Sport; and if the old People are in the ſame Cabin along with them all Night, they lie as unconcern'd, as if they were ſo many Logs of Wood. If it be an *Indian* of their own Town or Neighbourhood, that wants a Miſtreſs, he comes to none but the Girl, who receives what ſhe thinks fit to ask him, and ſo lies all Night with him, without the Conſent of her Parents.

Indian *Traders what.*

The *Indian* Traders are thoſe which travel and abide amongſt the *Indians* for a long ſpace of time; ſometimes for a Year, two, or three. Theſe Men have commonly their *Indian* Wives, whereby they ſoon learn the *Indian* Tongue, keep a Friendſhip with the Savages; and, beſides the Satisfaction of a She-Bed-Fellow, they find theſe *Indian* Girls very ſerviceable to them, on Account of dreſſing their Victuals, and inſtructing 'em in the Affairs and Cuſtoms of the Country.

Indian *Wives.*

More-

Moreover, ſuch a Man gets a great Trade with the Savages; for when a Perſon that lives amongſt them, is reſerv'd from the Converſation of their Women, 'tis impoſſible for him ever to accompliſh his Deſigns amongſt that People.

But one great Misfortune which oftentimes attends thoſe that converſe with theſe Savage Women, is, that they get Children by them, which are ſeldom educated any otherwiſe than in a State of Infidelity; for it is a certain Rule and Cuſtom, amongſt all the Savages of *America*, that I was ever acquainted withal, to let the Children always fall to the Woman's Lot; for it often happens, that two *Indians* that have liv'd together, as Man and Wife, in which Time they have had ſeveral Children; if they part, and another Man poſſeſſes her, all the Children go along with the Mother, and none with the Father. And therefore, on this Score, it ever ſeems impoſſible for the Chriſtians to get their Children (which they have by theſe *Indian* Women) away from them; whereby they might bring them up in the Knowledge of the Chriſtian Principles. Nevertheleſs, we often find, that *Engliſh* Men, and other *Europeans* that have been accuſtom'd to the Converſation of theſe ſavage Women, and their Way of Living, have been ſo allur'd with that careleſs ſort of Life, as to be conſtant to their *Indian* Wife, and her Relations, ſo long as they liv'd, without ever deſiring to return again amongſt the *Engliſh*, although they had very fair Opportunities of Advantages amongſt their Countrymen; of which ſort I have known ſeveral. *Children go with the Women.*

As for the *Indian* Marriages, I have read and heard of a great deal of Form and Ceremony uſed, which I never ſaw, nor yet could learn in the Time I have been amongſt them, any otherwiſe than I ſhall here give you an Account of; which is as follows.

When any young *Indian* has a Mind for ſuch a Girl to his Wife, he, or ſome one for him, goes to the young Woman's Parents, if living; if not, to her neareſt Relations; where they make Offers of the Match betwixt the Couple. The Relations reply, they will conſider of it, which ſerves for a ſufficient Anſwer, till there be a ſecond Meeting about the Marriage, which is generally brought into Debate before all the Relations (that are old People) on both Sides; and ſometimes the King, with all his great Men, give their Opinions there- *Indian Marriages.*

therein. If it be agreed on, and the young Woman approve thereof, (for theſe Savages never give their Children in Marriage, without their own Conſent) the Man pays ſo much for his Wife; and the handſomer ſhe is, the greater Price ſhe bears. Now, it often happens, that the Man has not ſo much of their Money ready, as he is to pay for his Wife; but if they know him to be a good Hunter, and that he can raiſe the Sum agreed for, in ſome few Moons, or any little time, they agree, ſhe ſhall go along with him, as betroth'd, but he is not to have any Knowledge of her, till the utmoſt Payment is diſcharg'd; all which is punctually obſerv'd. Thus, they lie together under one Covering for ſeveral Months, and the Woman remains the ſame as ſhe was when ſhe firſt came to him. I doubt, our *Europeans* would be apt to break this Cuſtom, but the *Indian* Men are not ſo vigorous and impatient in their Love as we are. Yet the Women are quite contrary, and thoſe *Indian* Girls that have convers'd with the *Engliſh* and other *Europeans*, never care for the Converſation of their own Countrymen afterwards.

Indians *buy their Wives.*

Indian *Men not vigorous.*

They never marry ſo near as a firſt Couſin; and although there is nothing more coveted amongſt them, than to marry a Woman of their own Nation, yet when the Nation conſiſts of a very few People (as now adays it often happens) ſo that they are all of them related to one another, then they look out for Husbands and Wives amongſt Strangers. For if an *Indian* lies with his Siſter, or any very near Relation, his Body is burnt, and his Aſhes thrown into the River, as unworthy to remain on Earth; yet an *Indian* is allow'd to marry two Siſters, or his Brothers Wife. Although theſe People are call'd Savages, yet Sodomy is never heard of amongſt them, and they are ſo far from the Practice of that beaſtly and loathſome Sin, that they have no Name for it in all their Language.

The Marriages of theſe *Indians* are no farther binding, than the Man and Woman agree together. Either of them has Liberty to leave the other, upon any frivolous Excuſe they can make; yet whoſoever takes the Woman that was another Man's before, and bought by him, as they all are, muſt certainly pay to her former Husband, whatſoever he gave for her. Nay, if ſhe be a Widow, and her Husband died in Debt, whoſoever takes her to Wife, pays all her Husband's Obligations,

tions, though never so many; yet the Woman is not required to pay any thing (unless she is willing) that was owing from her Husband, so long as she keeps Single. But if a Man courts her for a Nights Lodging, and obtains it, the Creditors will make him pay her Husband's Debts, and he may, if he will, take her for his Money, or sell her to another for his Wife. I have seen several of these Bargains driven in a day; for you may see Men selling their Wives as Men do Horses in a Fair, a Man being allow'd not only to change as often as he pleases, but likewise to have as many Wives as he is able to maintain. I have often seen, that very old *Indian* Men (that have been Grandees in their own Nation) have had three or four very likely young *Indian* Wives, which I have much wondered at, because to me they seem'd incapacitated to make good Use of one of them.

Selling Wives.

Indian *many Wives.*

The young Men will go in the Night from one House to another, to visit the young Women, in which sort of Rambles they will spend the whole Night. In their Addresses they find no Delays, for if she is willing to entertain the Man, she gives him Encouragement and grants him Admittance; otherwise she withdraws her Face from him, and says, I cannot see you, either you or I must leave this Cabin, and sleep somewhere else this Night.

Night Rambles.

They are never to boast of their Intrigues with the Women. If they do, none of the Girls value them ever after, or admit of their Company in their Beds. This proceeds not on the score of Reputation, for there is no such thing (on that account) known amongst them; and although we may reckon them the greatest Libertines and most extravagant in their Embraces, yet they retain and possess a Modesty that requires those Passions never to be divulged.

The Trading Girls, after they have led that Course of Life, for several Years, in which time they scarce ever have a Child; (for they have an Art to destroy the Conception, and she that brings a Child in this Station, is accounted a Fool, and her Reputation is lessen'd thereby) at last they grow weary of so many, and betake themselves to a married State, or to the Company of one Man; neither does their having been common to so many any wise lessen their Fortunes, but rather augment them.

Trading Girls marry at last.

The

Women not punish'd for Adultery. The Woman is not punish'd for Adultery, but 'tis the Man that makes the injur'd Person Satisfaction, which is the Law of Nations practis'd amongst them all; and he that strives to evade such Satisfaction as the Husband demands, lives daily in Danger of his Life; yet when discharg'd, all Animosity is laid aside, and the Cuckold is very well pleased with his Bargain, whilst the Rival is laugh'd at by the whole Nation, for carrying on his Intrigue with no better Conduct, than to be discover'd and pay so dear for his Pleasure.

The *Indians* say, that the Woman is a weak Creature, and easily drawn away by the Man's Persuasion; for which Reason, they lay no Blame upon her, but the Man (that ought to be Master of his Passion) for persuading her to it.

Never Love-mad. They are of a very hale Constitution; their Breaths are as sweet as the Air they breathe in, and the Woman seems to be of that tender Composition, as if they were design'd rather for the Bed then Bondage. Yet their Love is never of that Force and Continuance, that any of them ever runs Mad, or makes away with themselves on that score. They never love beyond Retrieving their first Indifferency, and when slighted, are as ready to untie the Knot at one end, as you are at the other.

Yet I knew an *European* Man that had a Child or two by one of these *Indian* Women, and afterwards married a Christian, after which he came to pass away a Night with his *Indian* Mistress; but she made Answer that she then had forgot she ever knew him, and that she never lay with another Woman's Husband, so fell a crying, and took up the Child she had by him, and went out of the Cabin (away from him) in great Disorder.

Indian Women what they do. The *Indian* Womens Work is to cook the Victuals for the whole Family, and to make Mats, Baskets, Girdles of Possum-Hair, and such-like. They never plant the Corn amongst us, as they do amongst the *Iroquois*, who are always at War and Hunting; therefore, the Plantation Work is left for the Women and Slaves to perform, and look after; whilst they are wandring all over the Continent betwixt the two Bays of *Mexico* and St. *Laurence*.

Iroquois great Warriours.

Mats how made. The Mats the *Indian* Women make, are of Rushes, and about five Foot high, and two Fathom long, and sew'd double, that is, two together; whereby they become very commodious

dious to lay under our Beds, or to ſleep on in the Summer Seaſon in the Day-time, and for our Slaves in the Night.

There are other Mats made of Flags, which the *Tuskeruro Indians* make, and ſell to the Inhabitants.

The Baskets our Neighbouring *Indians* make, are all made of a very fine ſort of Bulruſhes, and ſometimes of Silk-graſs, which they work with Figures of Beaſts, Birds, Fiſhes, *&c.* *Baskets.*

A great way up in the Country, both Baskets and Mats are made of the ſplit Reeds, which are only the outward ſhining Part of the Cane. Of theſe I have ſeen Mats, Baskets, and Dreſſing-Boxes, very artificially done.

The Savage Women of *America*, have very eaſy Travail with their Children; ſometimes they bring Twins, and are brought to bed by themſelves, when took at a Diſadvantage; not but that they have Midwives amongſt them, as well as Doctors, who make it their Profeſſion (for Gain) to aſſiſt and deliver Women, and ſome of theſe Midwives are very knowing in ſeveral Medicines that *Carolina* affords, which certainly expedite, and make eaſy Births. Beſides, they are unacquainted with thoſe ſevere Pains which follow the Birth in our *European* Women. Their Remedies area great Cauſe of this Eaſineſs in that State; for the *Indian* Women will run up and down the Plantation, the ſame day, very briskly, and without any ſign of Pain or Sickneſs; yet they look very meager and thin. Not but that we muſt allow a great deal owing to the Climate, and the natural Conſtitution of theſe Women, whoſe Courſe of Nature never viſits them in ſuch Quantities, as the *European* Women have. And tho' they never want Plenty of Milk, yet I never ſaw an *Indian* Woman with very large Breaſts; neither does the youngeſt Wife ever fail of proving ſo good a Nurſe, as to bring her Child up free from the Rickets and Diſaſters that proceed from the Teeth, with many other Diſtempers which attack our Infants in *England*, and other Parts of *Europe*. They let their Children ſuck till they are well grown, unleſs they prove big with Child ſooner. They always nurſe their own Children themſelves, unleſs Sickneſs or Death prevents. I once ſaw a Nurſe hired to give Suck to an *Indian* Woman's Child, which you have in my Journal. After Delivery, they abſent the Company of a Man for forty days. As ſoon as the Child is born, they waſh it in cold Water at the next Stream, and *Indian Wives.* *Nurſe Children how.*

Cradle. then bedawb it, as I have mention'd before. After which, the Husband takes care to provide a Cradle, which is ſoon made, conſiſting of a Piece of flat Wood, which they hew with their Hatchets to the Likeneſs of a Board; it is about two Foot long, and a Foot broad; to this they brace and tie the Child down very cloſe, having, near the middle, a Stick faſten'd about two Inches from the Board, which is for the Child's Breech to reſt on, under which they put a Wad of Moſs, that receives the Child's Excrements, by which means they can ſhift the Moſs, and keep all clean and ſweet. Some Nations have very flat Heads, as you have heard in my Journal, which is made whilſt tied on this Cradle, as that Relation informs you. Theſe Cradles are apt to make the Body flat; yet they are the moſt portable things that can be invented; for there is a String which goes from one Corner of the Board to the other, whereby the Mother ſlings her Child on her Back; ſo the Infant's Back is towards hers, and its Face looks up towards the Sky. If it rains, ſhe throws her Leather or Woollen Match-coat, over her Head, which covers the Child all over, and ſecures her and it from the Injuries of rainy Weather. The Savage Women quit all Company, and dreſs not their own Victuals, during their Purgations.

After they have had ſeveral Children, they grow ſtrangely out of Shape in their Bodies; As for Barrenneſs, I never knew any of their Women, that have not Children when marry'd.

Indian *Womens Habit.* The Womens Dreſs is, in ſevere Weather, a hairy Match-coat in the Nature of a Plad, which keeps out the Cold, and (as I ſaid before) defends their Children from the Prejudices of the Weather. At other times, they have only a ſort of Flap or Apron containing two Yards in Length, and better than half a Yard deep. Sometimes, it is a Deer-Skin dreſs'd white, and pointed or ſlit at the bottom, like Fringe. When this is clean, it becomes them very well. Others wear blue or red Flaps made of Bays and Plains, which they buy of the *Engliſh*, of both which they tuck in the Corners, to faſten the Garment, and ſometimes make it faſt with a Belt. All of them, when ripe, have a ſmall String round the Waſte, to which another is tied and comes between their Legs, where always is a Wad of Moſs againſt the *Os pubis*; but never any Hair

Hair is there to be found: Sometimes, they wear *Indian* Shooes, or Moggizons, which are made after the ſame manner, as the Mens are.

The Hair of their Heads is made into a long Roll like a Horſes Tail, and bound round with *Ronoak* or *Forcelan*, which is a ſort of Beads they make of the Conk-Shells. Others that have not this, make a Leather-String ſerve.

The *Indian* Men have a Match-Coat of Hair, Furs, Feathers, or Cloth, as the Women have. Their Hair is roll'd up, on each Ear, as the Womens, only much ſhorter, and oftentimes a Roll on the Crown of the Head, or Temples, which is juſt as they fancy; there being no Strictneſs in their Dreſs. Betwixt their Legs comes a Piece of Cloth, that is tuck'd in by a Belt both before and behind. This is to hide their Nakedneſs, of which Decency they are very ſtrict Obſervers, although never practiſed before the Chriſtians came amongſt them. They wear Shooes, of Bucks, and ſometimes Bears Skin, which they tan in an Hour or two; with the Bark of Trees boil'd, wherein they put the Leather whilſt hot, and let it remain a little while, whereby it becomes ſo qualify'd, as to endure Water and Dirt, without growing hard. Theſe have no Heels, and are made as fit for the Feet, as a Glove is for the Hand, and are very eaſie to travel in, when one is a little us'd to them. When theſe Savages live near the Water, they frequent the Rivers in Summer-time very much, where both Men and Women very often in a day go in naked to waſh themſelves, though not both Sexes together. *Indian Men's Habit.* *Indians waſhing in the River.*

Their Feather Match-Coats are very pretty, eſpecially ſome of them, which are made extraordinary charming, containing ſeveral pretty Figures wrought in Feathers, making them ſeem like a fine Flower Silk-Shag; and when new and freſh, they become a Bed very well, inſtead of a Quilt. Some of another ſort are made of Hare, Raccoon, Bever, or Squirrel-Skins, which are very warm. Others again are made of the green Part of the Skin of a Mallard's Head, which they ſew perfectly well together, their Thread being either the Sinews of a Deer divided very ſmall, or Silk-Graſs. When theſe are finiſh'd, they look very finely, though they muſt needs be very troubleſome to make. Some of their great Men, as Rulers and ſuch, that have Plenty of Deer Skins *Match-Coats how made.*

by them, will often buy the *Engliſh*-made Coats, which they wear on Feſtivals and other Days of Viſiting. Yet none ever buy any Breeches, ſaying, that they are too much confin'd in them, which prevents their Speed in running, *&c.*

We have ſome *Indians*, that are more civilized than the reſt, which wear Hats, Shooes, Stockings, and Breeches, with very tolerable Linnen Shirts, which is not common amongſt theſe Heathens. The *Paſpitank Indians* did formerly keep Cattle, and make Butter.

Civiliz'd Indians. Theſe are them that wear the *Engliſh* Dreſs. Whether they have Cattle now or no, I am not certain; but I am of the Opinion, that ſuch Inclinations in the Savages ſhould meet with Encouragement, and every *Engliſhman* ought to do them Juſtice, and not defraud them of their Land, which has been allotted them formerly by the Government; for if we do not ſhew them Examples of Juſtice and Vertue, we can never bring them to believe us to be a worthier Race of Men than themſelves.

Hatteras Indians.

The Dreſſes of theſe People are ſo different. according to the Nation that they belong to, that it is impoſſible to recount all the whimſical Figures that they ſometimes make by their Antick Dreſſes. Beſides, *Carolina* is a warm Country, and very mild in its Winters, to what *Virginia*, *Maryland*, *Penſylvania*, *New-York*, the *Jerſeys*, and *New-England* are; wherefore, our *Indians* Habit very much differs from the Dreſſes that appear amongſt the Savages who inhabit thoſe cold Countries; in regard their chiefeſt Cloathing for the Winter-Seaſon is made of the Furs of Bever, Raccoon, and other Northern Furs, that our Climate is not acquainted withal, they producing ſome Furs, as the *Monack*, Moor, Marten, Black Fox, and others to us unknown.

Painting for War. Their Dreſs in Peace and War, is quite different. Beſides, when they go to War, their Hair is comb'd out by the Women, and done over very much with Bears Greaſe, and red Root; with Feathers, Wings, Rings, Copper, and *Peak*, or *Wampum* in their Ears. Moreover, they buy Vermillion of the *Indian* Traders, wherewith they paint their Faces all over red, and commonly make a Circle of Black about one Eye, and another Circle of White about the other, whilſt others bedawb their Faces with Tobacco-Pipe Clay, Lamp-black, black Lead, and divers other Colours, which they make

make with the ſeveral ſorts of Minerals and Earths that they get in different Parts of the Country, where they hunt and travel. When theſe Creatures are thus painted, they make the moſt frightful Figures that can be imitated by Men, and ſeem more like Devils than Humane Creatures. You may be ſure, that they are about ſome Miſchief, when you ſee them thus painted; for in all the Hoſtilities which have ever been acted againſt the *Engliſh* at any time, in ſeveral of the Plantations of *America*, the Savages always appear'd in this Diſguize, whereby they might never after be diſcover'd, or known by any of the Chriſtians that ſhould happen to ſee them after they had made their Eſcape; for it is impoſſible, ever to know an *Indian* under theſe Colours, although he has been at your Houſe a thouſand times, and you know him, at other times, as well as you do any Perſon living. As for their Women, they never uſe any Paint on their Faces; neither do they ever carry them along with them into the Field, when they intend any Expedition, leaving them at home with the old Men and Children.

Some of the *Indians* wear great Bobs in their Ears, and ſometimes in the Holes thereof they put Eagles and other Birds, Feathers, for a Trophy. When they kill any Fowl, they commonly pluck off the downy Feathers, and ſtick them all over their Heads. Some (both Men and Women) wear great Necklaces of their Money made of Shells. They often wear Bracelets made of Braſs, and ſometimes of Iron Wire. *Ear Bobs.*

Their Money is of different ſorts, but all made of Shells, which are found on the Coaſt of *Carolina*, which are very large and hard, ſo that they are very difficult to cut: Some *Engliſh* Smiths have try'd to drill this ſort of Shell-Money, and thereby thought to get an Advantage; but it prov'd ſo hard, that nothing could be gain'd. They often times make, of this Shell, a ſort of Gorge, which they wear about their Neck in a ſtring; ſo it hangs on their Collar, whereon ſometimes is engraven a Croſs, or ſome odd ſort of Figure, which comes next in their Fancy. There are other ſorts valued at a Doe-Skin, yet the Gorges will ſometimes ſell for three or four Buck-Skins ready dreſt. There be others, that eight of them go readily for a Doe Skin; but the general and current Species of all the *Indians* in *Carolina*, and, I believe, all over the *Indian Money.*

the

the Continent, as far as the Bay of *Mexico*, is that which we call *Peak*, and *Ronoak*; but *Peak* more eſpecially. This is that which at *New-York*, they call *Wampum*, and have uſed it as current Money amongſt the Inhabitants for a great many Years. This is what many Writers call *Porcelan*, and is made at *New-York* in great Quantities, and with us in ſome meaſure. Five Cubits of this purchaſe a dreſs'd Doe-Skin, and ſeven or eight purchaſe a dreſs'd Buck-Skin. An *Engliſh*-man could not afford to make ſo much of this *Wampum* for five or ten times the Value; for it is made out of a vaſt great Shell, of which that Country affords Plenty; where it is ground ſmaller than the ſmall End of a Tobacco-Pipe, or a large Wheat-Straw. Four or five of theſe make an Inch, and every one is to be drill'd through, and made as ſmooth as Glaſs, and ſo ſtrung, as Beds are, and a Cubit of the *Indian* Meaſure contains as much in Length, as will reach from the Elbow to the End of the little Finger. They never ſtand to queſtion, whether it is a tall Man, or a ſhort one, that meaſures it; but if this *Wampum Peak* be black or purple, as ſome Part of that Shell is, then it is twice the Value. This the *Indians* grind on Stones and other things, till they make it current, but the Drilling is the moſt difficult to the *Engliſh*-men, which the *Indians* manage with a Nail ſtuck in a Cane or Reed. Thus they roll it continually on their Thighs, with their Right-hand, holding the Bit of Shell with their Left, ſo in time they drill a Hole quite through it, which is a very tedious Work; but eſpecially in making their *Ronoak*, four of which will ſcarce make one Length of *Wampum*. The *Indians* are a People that never value their time, ſo that they can afford to make them, and never need to fear the *Engliſh* will take the Trade out of their Hands. This is the Money with which you may buy Skins, Furs, Slaves, or any thing the *Indians* have; it being the Mammon (as our Money is to us) that entices and perſuades them to do any thing, and part with every thing they poſſeſs, except their Children for Slaves. As for their Wives, they are often ſold, and their Daughters violated for it. With this they buy off Murders; and whatſoever a Man can do that is ill, this *Wampum* will quit him of, and make him, in their Opinion, good and vertuous, though never ſo black before.

All

All the *Indians* give a Name to their Children, which is not the ſame as the Father or Mother, but what they fancy. This Name they keep, (if Boys) till they arrive to the Age of a Warriour, which is ſixteen or ſeventeen Years; then they take a Name to themſelves, ſometimes, *Eagle*, *Panther*, *Allegator*, or ſome ſuch wild Creature; eſteeming nothing on Earth worthy to give them a Name, but theſe Wild-Fowl, and Beaſts. Some again take the Name of a Fiſh, which they keep as long as they live. *Indians how named.*

The King is the Ruler of the Nation, and has others under him, to aſſiſt him, as his War-Captains, and Counſellors, who are pick'd out and choſen from among the ancienteſt Men of the Nation he is King of. Theſe meet him in all general Councils and Debates, concerning War, Peace, Trade, Hunting, and all the Adventures and Accidents of Humane Affairs, which appear within their Verge; where all Affairs are diſcourſed of and argued *pro* and *con*, very deliberately (without making any manner of Parties or Diviſions) for the Good of the Publick; for, as they meet there to treat, they diſcharge their Duty with all the Integrity imaginable, never looking towards their Own Intereſt, before the Publick Good. After every Man has given his Opinion, that which has moſt Voices, or, in Summing up, is found the moſt reaſonable, that they make uſe of without any Jars and Wrangling, and put it in Execution, the firſt Opportunity that offers. *Indian King and Counſellors.* *Every Town a Ruler, yet one over all the Nation.*

The Succeſſion falls not to the King's Son, but to his Siſter's Son, which is a ſure way to prevent Impoſtors in the Succeſſion. Sometimes they poiſon the Heir to make way for another, which is not ſeldom done, when they do not approve of the Youth that is to ſucceed them. The King himſelf is commonly chief Doctor in that Cure. *Succeſſion how.*

They are ſo well verſed in Poiſon, that they are often found to poiſon whole Families; nay, moſt of a Town; and which is moſt to be admired, they will poiſon a running Spring, or Fountain of Water, ſo that whoſoever drinks thereof, ſhall infallible die. When the Offender is diſcover'd, his very Relations urge for Death, whom nothing will appeaſe, but the moſt cruel Torment imaginable, which is executed in the moſt publick Manner that it's poſſible to act ſuch a Tragedy in. For all the whole Nation, and all the

In-

Indians within a hundred Mile (if it is poſſible to ſend for them) are ſummon'd to come and appear at ſuch a Place and Time, to ſee and rejoyce at the Torments and Death of ſuch a Perſon, who is the common and profeſs'd Enemy to all the friendly *Indians* thereabouts, who now lies under the Condemnation of the whole Nation, and accordingly is to be put to Death. Then all appear (young and old) from all the adjacent Parts, and meet, with all the Expreſſions of Joy, to conſummate this horrid and barbarous Feaſt, which is carried on after this diſmal Manner. Firſt, they bring the Priſoner to the Place appointed for the Execution, where he is ſet down on his Breech on the Ground. Then they all get about him, and you ſhall not ſee one ſorrowful or dejected Countenance amongſt them, but all very merrily diſpos'd, as if ſome Comedy was to be acted, inſtead of a Tragedy. He that is appointed to be the chief Executioner, takes a Knife, and bids him hold out his Hands, which he does, and then cuts round the Wriſt through the Skin, which is drawn off like a Glove, and flead quite off at the Fingers Ends; then they break his Joints and Bones, and buffet and torment him after a very inhumane Manner, till ſome violent Blow perhaps ends his Days; then they burn him to Aſhes, and throw them down the River. Afterwards they eat, drink and are merry, repeating all the Actions of the Tormentors and the Priſoner, with a great deal of Mirth and Satisfaction. This Accuſation is laid againſt an *Indian* Heroe ſometimes wrongfully, or when they have a mind to get rid of a Man that has more Courage and Conduct than his neighbouring Kings or great Men; then they alledge the Practice of poiſoning *Indians* againſt him, and make a Rehearſal of every *Indian* that died for a year or two, and ſay, that they were poiſon'd by ſuch an *Indian*; which Reports ſtir up all the Relations of the deceaſed againſt the ſaid Perſon, and by ſuch means make him away preſently. In ſome Affairs, theſe Savages are very reſerv'd and politick, and will attend a long time with a great deal of Patience, to bring about their Deſigns; they being never impatient or haſty in executing any of their Deſigns of Revenge.

Poiſoning Indians *how puniſhed.*

Now I am gone ſo far in giving an Account of the *Indians* Temper, I will proceed; and can give you no other Character of them, but that they are a very wary People, and are never

never hasty or impatient. They will endure a great many Misfortunes, Losses, and Disapointments without shewing themselves, in the least, vex'd or uneasy. When they go by Water, if there proves a Head-Wind, they never vex and fret, as the *Europeans* do, and let what Misfortune come to them, as will or can happen, they never relent. Besides, there is one Vice very common every where, which I never found amongst them, which is Envying other Mens Happiness, because their Station is not equal to, or above, their Neighbours. Of this Sin I cannot say I ever saw an Example, though they are a People that set as great a Value upon themselves, as any sort of Men in the World; upon which Account they find something Valuable in themselves above Riches. Thus, he that is a good Warriour, is the proudest Creature living; and he that is an expert Hunter, is esteem'd by the People and himself; yet all these are natural Vertues and Gifts, and not Riches, which are as often in the Possession of a Fool as a Wise-man. Several of the *Indians* are possess'd of a great many Skins, *Wampum*, Ammunition, and what other things are esteem'd Riches amongst them; yet such an *Indian* is no more esteem'd amongst them, than any other ordinary Fellow, provided he has no personal Endowments; which are the Ornaments that must gain him an Esteem among them; for a great Dealer, amongst the *Indians*, is no otherwise respected and esteemed, than as a Man that strains his Wits, and fatigues himself, to furnish others with Necessaries of Life, that live much easier and enjoy more of the World, than he himself does, with all his Pelf. If they are taken Captives, and expect a miserable Exit, they sing; if Death approach them in Sickness, they are not afraid of it; nor are ever heard to say, Grant me some time. They know by Instinct, and daily Example, that they must die; wherefore, they have that great and noble Gift, to submit to every thing that happens, and value nothing that attacks them.

Indians not afraid to die.

Their Cruelty to their Prisoners of War is what they are seemingly guilty of an Error in, (I mean as to a natural Failing) because they strive to invent the most inhumane Butcheries for them, that the Devils themselves could invent, or hammer out of Hell; they esteeming Death no Punishment, but rather an Advantage to him, that is exported out of this into another World.

Therefore, they inflict on them Torments, wherein they prolong Life in that miserable state as long as they can, and never miss Skulping of them, as they call it, which is, to cut off the Skin from the Temples, and taking the whole Head of Hair along with it, as if it was a Night-cap. Sometimes, they take the Top of the Skull along with it; all which they preserve, and carefully keep by them, for a Trophy of their Conquest over their Enemies. Others keep their Enemies Teeth, which are taken in War, whilst others split the Pitch-Pine into Splinters, and stick them into the Prisoners Body yet alive. Thus they light them, which burn like so many Torches; and in this manner, they make him dance round a great Fire, every one buffeting and deriding him, till he expires, when every one strives to get a Bone or some Relick of this unfortunate Captive. One of the young Fellows, that has been at the Wars, and has had the Fortune to take a Captive, returns the proudest Creature on Earth, and sets such a Value on himself, that he knows not how to contain himself in his Senses. The *Iroquois*, or *Sinnagars*, are the most Warlike *Indians* that we know of, being always at War, and not to be persuaded from that Way of Living, by any Argument that can be used. If you go to persuade them to live peaceably with the *Tuskeruros*, and let them be one People, and in case those *Indians* desire it, and will submit to them, they will answer you, that they cannot live without War, which they have ever been used to; and that if Peace be made with the *Indians* they now war withal, they must find out some others to wage War against; for, for them to live in Peace, is to live out of their Element, War, Conquest, and Murder, being what they delight in, and value themselves for. When they take a Slave, and intend to keep him to Work in their Fields, they flea the Skin from the Setting on of his Toes to the middle of his Foot, so cut off one half of his Feet, wrapping the Skin over the Wounds, and healing them. By this cruel Method, the *Indian* Captive is hinder'd from making his Escape, for he can neither run fast or go any where, but his Feet are more easily traced and discover'd. Yet I know one Man who made his Escape from them, tho' they had thus disabled him, as you may see in my Journal.

Indians Cruelty to Prisoners of War.

Indians flea and cut off part of the Feet.

The

The *Indians* ground their Wars on Enmity, not on Intereſt, as the *Europeans* generally do; for the Loſs of the meaneſt Perſon in the Nation, they will go to War and lay all at Stake, and proſecute their Deſign to the utmoſt; till the Nation they were injur'd by, be wholly deſtroy'd, or make them that Satisfaction which they demand. They are very politick, in waging, and carrying on their War, firſt by adviſing with all the ancient Men of Conduct and Reaſon, that belong to their Nation; ſuch as ſuperannuated War-Captains, and thoſe that have been Counſellors for many Years, and whoſe Advice has commonly ſucceeded very well. They have likewiſe their Field Counſellors, who are accuſtomed to Ambuſcades, and Surprizes, which Methods are commonly uſed by the Savages; for I ſcarce ever heard of a Field-Battle fought amongſt them.

One of their Expeditions afforded an Inſtance, worthy mention, which was thus; Two Nations of *Indians* here in *Carolina* were at War together, and a Party of each were in the Foreſt ranging to ſee what Enemies they could take. The leſſer Number found they were diſcover'd, and could not well get over a River (that lay betwixt them and their home) without engaging the other Party, whoſe Numbers were much the greater; ſo they call'd a Council, which met, and having weigh'd their preſent Circumſtances with a great deal of Argument and Debate, for a conſiderable time, and found their Enemies Advantage, and that they could expect no Succeſs in Engaging ſuch an unequal Number; they, at laſt, concluded on this Stratagem, which, in my Opinion, carried a great deal of Policy along with it. It was, That the ſame Night, they ſhould make a great Fire, which they were certain would be diſcover'd by the adverſe Party, and there dreſs up Logs of Wood in their Cloaths, and make them exactly ſeem like *Indians*, that were aſleep by the Fire-ſide; (which is their Way, when in the Woods) ſo, *ſaid they*, our Enemies will fire upon theſe Images, ſuppoſing them to be us, who will lie in Ambuſcade, and, after their Guns are unloaded, ſhall deal well enough with them. This Reſult was immediately put in Execution, and the Fire was made by the ſide of a Valley, where they lay perdu very advantageouſly. Thus, a little before Break of Day, (which commonly is the Hour they ſurprize their Enemies in) the *Indi-*

Indian Politicks.

ans came down to their Fire, and at once fired in upon those Logs in the *Indians* Cloaths, and run up to them, expecting they had kill'd every Man dead; but they found themselves mistaken, for then the other *Indians*, who had lain all the Night stark-naked in the Bottom, attack'd them with their loaded Pieces, which so surprized them, that every Man was taken Prisoner, and brought in bound to their Town.

Another Instance was betwixt the *Machapunga Indians*, and the *Coranine's*, on the Sand-Banks; which was as follows. The *Machapungas* were invited to a Feast, by the *Coranines*; (which two Nations had been a long time at War together, and had lately concluded a Peace.) Thereupon, the *Machapunga Indians* took the Advantage of coming to the *Coranines* Feast, which was to avoid all Suspicion, and their King, who, of a Savage, is a great Politician and very stout, order'd all his Men to carry their *Tamahauks* along with them, hidden under their Match-Coats, which they did; and being acquainted when to fall on, by the Word given, they all (upon this Design) set forward for the Feast, and came to the *Coranine* Town, where they had gotten Victuals, Fruit, and such things as make an *Indian* Entertainment, all ready to make these new Friends welcome, which they did; and, after Dinner, towards the Evening, (as it is customary amongst them) they went to Dancing, all together; so when the *Machapunga* King saw the best Opportunity offer, he gave the Word, and his Men pull'd their *Tamahauks* or Hatchets from under their Match-Coats, and kill'd several, and took the rest Prisoners, except some few that were not present, and about four or five that escap'd. The Prisoners they sold Slaves to the *English*. At the time this was done, those *Indians* had nothing but Bows and Arrows, neither side having Guns.

Machapunga *King Charles.*

The *Indians* are very revengeful, and never forget an Injury done, till they have receiv'd Satisfaction. Yet they are the freest People from Heats and Passions (which possess the *Europeans*) of any I ever heard of. They never call any Man to account for what he did, when he was drunk; but say, it was the Drink that caused his Misbehaviour, therefore he ought to be forgiven: They never frequent a Christian's House that is given to Passion, nor will they ever buy or sell with him, if they can get the same Commodities of any other

Drunkenness in Indians.

ther Perſon; for they ſay, ſuch Men are mad Wolves, and no more Men.

They know not what Jealouſy is, becauſe they never think their Wives are unconſtant, unleſs they are Eye-witneſſes thereof. They are generally very baſhful, eſpecially the young Maids, who when they come into a ſtrange Cabin, where they are not acquainted, never ask for any thing, though never ſo hungry or thirſty, but ſit down, without ſpeaking a Word (be it never ſo long) till ſome of the Houſe asks them a Queſtion, or falls into Diſcourſe, with the Stranger. I never ſaw a Scold amongſt them, and to their Children they are extraordinary tender and indulgent; neither did I ever ſee a Parent correct a Child, excepting one Woman, that was the King's Wife, and ſhe (indeed) did poſſeſs a Temper that is not commonly found amongſt them. They are free from all manner of Compliments, except Shaking of Hands, and Scratching on the Shoulder, which two are the greateſt Marks of Sincerity and Friendſhip, that can be ſhew'd one to another. They cannot expreſs *fare you well*; but when they leave the Houſe, will ſay, *I go ſtraightway*, which is to intimate their Departure; and if the Man of the Houſe has any Meſſage to ſend by the going Man, he may acquaint him therewith. Their Tongue allows not to ſay, *Sir, I am your Servant*; becauſe they have no different Titles for Man, only King, War-Captain, Old Man, or Young Man, which reſpect the Stations and Circumſtances Men are employ'd in, and arriv'd to, and not Ceremony. As for Servant, they have no ſuch thing, except Slave, and their Dogs, Cats, tame or domeſtick Beaſts, and Birds, are call'd by the ſame Name: For the *Indian* Word for Slave includes them all. So when an *Indian* tells you he has got a Slave for you, it may (in general Terms, as they uſe) be a young Eagle, a Dog, Otter, or any other thing of that Nature, which is obſequiouſly to depend on the Maſter for its Suſtenance.

Indians not Jealous.

Indians Complements.

They are never fearful in the Night, nor do the Thoughts of Spirits ever trouble them; ſuch as the many Hobgoblins and Bugbears that we ſuck in with our Milk, and the Foolery of our Nurſes and Servants ſuggeſt to us; who by their idle Tales of Fairies, and Witches, make ſuch Impreſſions on our tender Years, that at Maturity, we carry Pigmies Souls, in Giants Bodies, and ever after are thereby

Indians not afraid of Spirits.

ſo

ſo much depriv'd of Reaſon, and unman'd, as never to be Maſters of half the Bravery Nature deſign'd for us.

Not but that the *Indians* have as many Lying Stories of Spirits and Conjurers, as any People in the World; but they tell it with no Diſadvantage to themſelves; for the great Eſteem which the Old Men bring themſelves to, is by making the others believe their Familiarity with Devils and Spirits, and how great a Correſpondence they have therewith, which if it once gains Credit, they ever after are held in the greateſt Veneration imaginable, and whatever they after impoſe upon the People, is receiv'd as infallible. They are ſo little ſtartled at the Thoughts of another World, that they not ſeldom murder themſelves; as for Inſtance, a *Bear*-River *Indian*, a very likely young Fellow, about twenty Years of Age, whoſe Mother was angry at his drinking of too much Rum, and chid him for it, thereupon reply'd, he would have her ſatisfied, and he would do the like no more; upon which he made his Words good; for he went aſide, and ſhot himſelf dead. This was a Son of the politick King of the *Machapunga*, I ſpoke of before, and has the moſt Cunning of any *Indian* I ever met withal.

Moſt of the Savages are much addicted to Drunkenneſs, a Vice they never were acquainted with, till the Chriſtians came amongſt them. Some of them refrain drinking ſtrong Liquors, but very few of that ſort are found amongſt them. Their chief Liquor is Rum, without any Mixture. This the *Engliſh* bring amongſt them, and buy Skins, Furs, Slaves and other of their Commodities therewith. They never are contented with a little, but when once begun, they muſt make themſelves quite drunk; otherwiſe they will never reſt, but ſell all they have in the World, rather than not have their full Doſe. In theſe drunken Frolicks, (which are always carried on in the Night) they ſometimes murder one another, fall into the Fire, fall down Precipices, and break their Necks, with ſeveral other Misfortunes which this drinking of Rum brings upon them; and tho' they are ſenſible of it, yet they have no Power to refrain this Enemy. About five years ago, when *Landgrave Daniel* was Governour, he ſummon'd in all the *Indian* Kings and Rulers to meet, and in a full Meeting of the Government and Council, with thoſe *Indians*, they agreed upon a firm Peace, and the *Indian* Rulers deſired

no

no Rum might be ſold to them, which was granted, and a Law made, that inflicted a Penalty on thoſe that ſold Rum to the Heathens; but it was never ſtrictly obſerv'd, and beſides, the young *Indians* were ſo diſguſted at that Article, that they threatned to kill the *Indians* that made it, unleſs it was laid aſide, and they might have Rum ſold them, when they went to the *Engliſhmens* Houſes to buy it.

Some of the Heathens are ſo very poor, that they have no Manner of Cloaths, ſave a Wad of Moſs to hide their Nakedneſs. Theſe are either luſty and will not work; otherwiſe, they are given to Gaming or Drunkenneſs; yet theſe get Victuals as well as the reſt, becauſe that is common amongſt them, If they are caught in theft they are Slaves till they repay the Perſon, (as Imention'd before) but to ſteal from the *Engliſh* they reckon no Harm. Not but that I have known ſome few Savages that have been as free from Theft as any of the Chriſtians. When they have a Deſign to lie with a Woman, which they cannot obtain any otherwiſe than by a larger Reward than they are able to give, they then ſtrive to make her drunk, which a great many of them will be; then they take the Advantage, to do with them what they pleaſe, and ſometimes in their Drunkenneſs, cut off their Hair and ſell it to the *Engliſh*, which is the greateſt Affront can be offer'd them. They never value Time; for if they be going out to hunt, fiſh, or any other indifferent Buſineſs, you may keep them in talk as long as you pleaſe, ſo you but keep them in Diſcourſe, and ſeem pleaſed with their Company; yet none are more expeditious and ſafer Meſſengers than they, when any extraordinary Buſineſs that they are ſent about requires it.

When they are upon travelling the Woods, they keep a conſtant Pace, neither will they ſtride over a Tree that lies croſs the Path, but always go round it, which is quite contrary to the Cuſtom of the *Engliſh*, and other *Europeans*. *Not paſs over a Tree.*

When they cut with a Knife, the Edge is towards them, whereas we always cut and whittle from us. Nor did I ever ſee one of them left-handed. Before the Chriſtians came amongſt them, not knowing the Uſe of Steel and Flints, they got their Fire with Sticks, which by vehement Colliſion, or Rubbing together, take Fire. This Method they will ſometimes *Cut with a Knife how.* *A Knife of Reed.* *Not left-handed.* *Get Fire how.*

times practise now, when it has happen'd thro' rainy Weather, or some other Accident, that they have wet their
Get Fire. Spunk, which is a sort of soft corky Substance, generally of a Cinnamon Colour, and grows in the concave part of an Oak, Hiccory, and several other Woods, being dug out with an Ax, and always kept by the *Indians*, instead of Tinder or Touch-wood, both which it exceeds. You are to understand, that the two Sticks they use to strike Fire withal, are never of one sort of Wood, but always differ from each other.

They are expert Travellers, and though they have not the Use of our artificial Compass, yet they understand the North-point exactly, let them be in never so great a Wilderness. One Guide is a short Moss, that grows upon some Trees, exactly on the North-Side thereof.

Indian Compass. Besides, they have Names for eight of the thirty two Points, and call the Winds by their several Names, as we do; but indeed more properly, for the North-West Wind is called the cold Wind; the North-East the wet Wind; the South the warm Wind; and so agreeably of the rest. Sometimes it happens, that they have a large River or Lake to pass over, and the Weather is very foggy, as it often happens in the Spring and Fall of the Leaf; so that they cannot see which Course to steer: In such a Case, they being on one side of the River, or Lake, they know well enough what Course such a Place (which they intend for) bears from them. Therefore, they get a great many Sticks and Chunks of Wood in their Canoe, and then set off directly for their Port, and now and then throw over a Piece of Wood, which directs them, by seeing how the Stick bears from the Canoes Stern, which they always observe to keep right aft; and this is the *Indian* Compass by which they will go over a broad Water of ten or twenty Leagues wide. They will find the Head of any River, though it is five, six or seven hundred miles off, and they never were there, in their Lives before; as is often prov'd, by their appointing to meet on the Head of such a River, where perhaps, none of them ever was before, but where they shall rendezvous exactly at the prefixt time; and if they meet with any Obstruction, they leave certain Marks in the Way, where they that come after will understand how many have pass'd by already, and which way they are gone.

Be-

Beſides, in their War-Expeditions, they have very certain Hieroglyphicks, whereby each Party informs the other of the Succeſs or Loſſes they have met withal; all which is ſo exactly perform'd by their Sylvian Marks and Characters, that they are never at a Loſs to underſtand one another. Yet there was never found any Letters amongſt the Savages of *Carolina*; nor, I believe, among any other Natives in *America*, that were poſſeſs'd with any manner of Writing or Learning throughout all the Diſcoveries of the New-World. They will draw Maps, very exactly, of all the Rivers, Towns, Mountains, and Roads, or what you ſhall enquire of them, which you may draw by their Directions, and come to a ſmall matter of Latitude, reckoning by their Days Journeys. Theſe Maps they will draw in the Aſhes of the Fire, and ſometimes upon a Mat or Piece of Bark. I have put a Pen and Ink into a Savage's Hand, and he has drawn me the Rivers, Bays, and other Parts of a Country, which afterwards I have found to agree with a great deal of Nicety: But you muſt be very much in their Favour, otherwiſe they will never make theſe Diſcoveries to you; eſpecially, if it be in their own Quarters. And as for Mines of Silver and other Metals, we are ſatisfied we have enow, and thoſe very rich, in *Carolina* and its adjacent Parts; ſome of which the *Indians* are acquainted withal, although no Enquirers thereafter, but what came, and were diſcover'd, by Chance; yet they ſay, it is this Metal that the *Engliſh* covet, as they do their *Peak* and *Ronoak*; and that we have gain'd Ground of them wherever we have come. Now, ſay they, if we ſhould diſcover theſe Minerals to the *Engliſh*, they would ſettle at or near theſe Mountains, and bereave us of the beſt Hunting-Quarters we have, as they have already done wherever they have inhabited; ſo by that means, we ſhall be driven to ſome unknown Country, to live, hunt, and get our Bread in. Theſe are the Reaſons that the Savages give, for not making known what they are acquainted withal, of that Nature. And indeed, all Men that have ever gone upon thoſe Diſcoveries, allow them to be good; more eſpecially, my ingenious Friend Mr. *Francis-Louis Mitchell*, of *Bern* in *Switzerland*, who has been, for ſeveral Years, very indefatigable and ſtrict in his Diſcoveries amongſt thoſe vaſt Ledges of Mountains, and ſpacious Tracts of Land, lying towards the Heads of the great Bays and

Indians *make Maps.*

No Diſcovery of Mines.

Mr. Mitchell.

Rivers of *Virginia*, *Maryland*, and *Penſylvania*, where he has diſcover'd a ſpacious Country inhabited by none but the Savages, and not many of them; who yet are of a very friendly Nature to the Chriſtians. This Gentleman has been employ'd by the Canton of *Bern*, to find out a Tract of Land in the *Engliſh America*, where that Republick might ſettle ſome of their People; which Propoſal, I believe, is now in a fair way towards a Concluſion, between her Majeſty of *Great-Britain* and that Canton. Which muſt needs be of great Advantage to both; and as for ourſelves, I believe, no Man that is in his Wits, and underſtands the Situation and Affairs of *America*, but will allow, nothing can be of more Security and Advantage to the Crown and Subjects of *Great-Britain*, than to have our Frontiers ſecured by a warlike People, and our Friends, as the *Switzers* are; eſpecially when we have more *Indians* than we can civilize, and ſo many Chriſtian Enemies lying on the back of us, that we do not know how long or ſhort a time it may be, before they viſit us. Add to theſe, the Effects and Product that may be expected from thoſe Mountains; which may hereafter prove of great Advantage to the *Britiſh* Monarchy, and none more fit than an induſtrious People, bred in a mountainous Country, and inur'd to all the Fatigues of War and Travel, to improve a Country. Thus we have no room to doubt, but as ſoon as any of thoſe Parts are ſeated by the *Switzers*, a great many *Britains* will ſtrive to live amongſt them, for the Benefit of the ſweet Air and healthful Climate, which that Country affords, were it only for the Cultivating of Hemp, Flax, Wine, and other valuable Staples, which thoſe People are fully acquainted withal: Not to mention the Advantages already diſcover'd by that worthy Gentleman I juſt now ſpoke of, who is highly deſerving of the Conduct and Management of ſuch an Affair, as that wiſe Canton has entruſted him withal.

Switzers *Settlement in* America.

When theſe Savages go a hunting, they commonly go out in great Numbers, and oftentimes a great many Days Journey from home, beginning at the coming in of the Winter; that is, when the Leaves are fallen from the Trees, and are become dry. 'Tis then they burn the Woods, by ſetting Fire to the Leaves, and wither'd Bent and Graſs, which they do with a Match made of the black Moſs that hangs on the Trees in *Carolina*, and is ſometimes above ſix Foot long. This, when dead

Hunting of the Savages.

dead, becomes black, (tho' of an Aſh-Colour before) and will then hold Fire as well as the beſt Match we have in *Europe*. In Places, where this Moſs is not found, (as towards the Mountains) they make Lintels of the Bark of Cypreſs beaten, which ſerve as well. Thus they go and fire the Woods for many Miles, and drive the Deer and other Game into ſmall Necks of Land and Iſthmus's, where they kill and deſtroy what they pleaſe. In theſe Hunting-Quarters, they have their Wives and Ladies of the Camp, where they eat all the Fruits and Dainties of that Country, and live in all the Mirth and Jollity, which it is poſſible for ſuch People to entertain themſelves withal. Here it is, that they get their Complement of Deer-Skins and Furs to trade with the *Engliſh*, (the Deer-Skins being in Seaſon in Winter, which is contrary to *England*.) All ſmall Game, as Turkeys, Ducks, and ſmall Vermine, they commonly kill with Bow and Arrow, thinking it not worth throwing Powder and Shot after them. Of Turkeys they have abundance; eſpecially, in Oak-Land, as moſt of it is, that lies any diſtance backwards. I have been often in their Hunting-Quarters, where a roaſted or barbakued Turkey, eaten with Bears Fat, is held a good Diſh; and indeed, I approve of it very well; for the Bears Greaſe is the ſweeteſt and leaſt offenſive to the Stomach (as I ſaid before) of any Fat of Animals I ever taſted. The Savage Men never beat their Corn to make Bread; but that is the Womens Work, eſpecially the Girls, of whom you ſhall ſee four beating with long great Peſtils in a narrow wooden Mortar; and every one keeps her Stroke ſo exactly, that 'tis worthy of Admiration. Their Cookery continues from Morning till Night. The Hunting makes them hungry; and the *Indians* are a People that always eat very often, not ſeldom getting up at Midnight, to eat. They plant a great many ſorts of Pulſe, Part of which they eat green in the Summer, keeping great Quantities for their Winter-Store, which they carry along with them into the Hunting-Quarters, and eat them.

Moſs Match.

Beating of Corn.

The ſmall red Peaſe is very common with them, and they eat a great deal of that and other ſorts boil'd with their Meat, or eaten with Bears Fat, which Food makes them break Wind backwards, which the Men frequently do, and laugh heartily at it, it being accounted no ill Manners amongſt the *Indians:* Yet the Women are more modeſt, than to follow that ill Cuſtom. At

their ſetting out, they have *Indians* to attend their Hunting-Camp, that are not good and expert Hunters; therefore are employ'd to carry Burdens, to get Bark for the Cabins, and other Servile Work; alſo to go backward and forward, to their Towns, to carry News to the old People, whom they leave behind them. The Women are forced to carry their Loads of Grain and other Proviſions, and get Fire-Wood; for a good Hunter, or Warriour in theſe Expeditions, is employ'd in no other Buſineſs, than the Affairs of Game and Battle. The wild Fruits which are dry'd in the Summer, over Fires, on Hurdles and in the Sun, are now brought into the Field; as are likewiſe the Cakes and Quiddonies of Peaches, and that Fruit and Bilberries dry'd, of which they ſtew and make Fruit-Bread and Cakes. In ſome parts, where Pigeons are plentiful, they get of their Fat enough to ſupply their Winter Stores. Thus they abide in theſe Quarters, all the Winter long, till the Time approach for planting their Maiz and other Fruits. In theſe quarters, at Spare-hours, the Women make Baskets and Mats to lie upon, and thoſe that are not extraordinary Hunters, make Bowls, Diſhes, and Spoons, of Gum-wood, and the Tulip-Tree; others (where they find a Vein of white Clay, fit for their purpoſe, make Tobacco-pipes, all which are often tranſported to other *Indians*, that perhaps have greater Plenty of Deer and other Game; ſo they buy (with theſe Manufactures) their raw Skins, with the Hair on, which our neighbouring *Indians* bring to their Towns, and, in the Summer-time, make the Slaves and ſorry Hunters dreſs them, the Winter-Sun being not ſtrong enough to dry them; and thoſe that are dry'd in the Cabins are black and naſty with the Lightwood Smoke, which they commonly burn. Their Way of dreſſing their Skins is by ſoaking them in Water, ſo they get the Hair off, with an Inſtrument made of the Bone of a Deer's Foot; yet ſome uſe a ſort of Iron Drawing-Knife, which they purchaſe of the *Engliſh*, and after the Hair is off, they diſſolve Deers Brains, (which beforehand are made in a Cake and baked in the Embers) in a Bowl of Water, ſo ſoak the Skins therein, till the Brains have ſuck'd up the Water; then they dry it gently, and keep working it with an Oyſter-Shell, or ſome ſuch thing, to ſcrape withal, till it is dry; whereby it becomes ſoft and pliable. Yet theſe ſo dreſs'd will not endure wet, but

Servile Indians.

Dry'd Fruits.

Pigeons Fat.

Bowls and Tobacco-Pipes to make.

Dreſs Skins.

but become hard thereby; which to prevent, they either cure them in the Smoke, or tan them with Bark, as before obſerv'd; not but that young *Indian* Corn, beaten to a Pulp, will effect the ſame as the Brains. They are not only good Hunters of the wild Beaſts and Game of the Foreſt, but very expert in taking the Fiſh of the Rivers and Waters near which they inhabit, and are acquainted withal. Thus they that live a great way up the Rivers practiſe Striking Sturgeon and Rock-fiſh, or Baſs, when they come up the Rivers to ſpawn; beſides the vaſt Shoals of Sturgeon which they kill and take with Snares, as we do Pike in *Europe*. The Herrings in *March* and *April* run a great way up the Rivers and freſh Streams to ſpawn, where the Savages make great Wares, with Hedges that hinder their Paſſage only in the Middle, where an artificial Pound is made to take them in; ſo that they cannot return. This Method is in uſe all over the freſh Streams, to catch Trout and the other Species of Fiſh which thoſe Parts afford. Their taking of Craw-fiſh is ſo pleaſant, that I cannot paſs it by without mention; When they have a mind to get theſe Shell-fiſh, they take a Piece of Veniſon, and half-barbakue or roaſt it; then they cut it into thin Slices, which Slices they ſtick through with Reeds about ſix Inches aſunder, betwixt Piece and Piece; then the Reeds are made ſharp at one end; and ſo they ſtick a great many of them down in the bottom of the Water (thus baited) in the ſmall Brooks and Runs, which the Craw-fiſh frequent. Thus the *Indians* ſit by, and tend thoſe baited Sticks, every now and then taking them up, to ſee how many are at the Bait; where they generally find abundance; ſo take them off, and put them in a Basket for the purpoſe, and ſtick the Reeds down again. By this Method, they will, in a little time, catch ſeveral Buſhels, which are as good, as any I ever eat. Thoſe *Indians* that frequent the Salt-Waters, take abundance of Fiſh, ſome very large, and of ſeveral ſorts, which to preſerve, they firſt barbakue, then pull the Fiſh to Pieces, ſo dry it in the Sun, whereby it keeps for Tranſportation; as for Scate, Oyſters, Cockles, and ſeveral ſorts of Shell-fiſh, they open and dry them upon Hurdles, having a conſtant Fire under them. The Hurdles are made of Reeds or Canes in the ſhape of a Gridiron. Thus they dry ſeveral Buſhels of theſe Fiſh, and keep them for their Neceſſities. At the time when they are on the

Fiſh to ſtrike.

Craw-fiſh to take.

Hatteras Indians.

Salts,

Salts, and Sea Coasts, they have another Fishery, that is for a little Shell-fish, which those in *England* call Blackmoors Teeth. These they catch by tying Bits of Oysters to a long String, which they lay in such places, as they know those Shell-Fish haunt. These Fish get hold of the Oysters, and suck them in, so that they pull up those long Strings, and take great Quantities of them, which they carry a great way into the main Land, to trade with the remote *Indians*, where they are of great Value; but never near the Sea, by reason they are common, therefore not esteem'd. Besides, the Youth and *Indian* Boys go in the Night, and one holding a Lightwood Torch, the other has a Bow and Arrows, and the Fire directing him to see the Fish, he shoots them with the Arrows; and thus they kill a great many of the smaller Fry, and sometimes pretty large ones. It is an establish'd Custom amongst all these Natives, that the young Hunter never eats of that Buck, Bear, Fish, or any other Game, which happens to be the first they kill of that sort; because they believe, if he should eat thereof, he would never after be fortunate in Hunting. The like foolish Ceremony they hold, when they have made a Ware to take Fish withal; if a big-belly'd Woman eat of the first Dish that is caught in it, they say, that Ware will never take much Fish; and as for killing of Snakes, they avoid it, if they lie in their way, because their Opinion is, that some of the Serpents Kindred would kill some of the Savages Relations, that should destroy him: They have thousands of these foolish Ceremonies and Beliefs, which they are strict Observers of. Moreover, several Customs are found in some Families, which others keep not; as for Example, two Families of the *Machapunga Indians*, use the *Jewish* Custom of Circumcision, and the rest do not; neither did I ever know any others amongst the *Indians*, that practis'd any such thing; and perhaps, if you ask them, what is the Reason they do so, they will make you no Manner of Answer; which is as much as to say, I will not tell you. Many other Customs they have, for which they will render no Reason or Account; and to pretend to give a true Description of their Religion, it is impossible; for there are a great many of their Absurdities, which, for some Reason, they reserve as a Secret amongst themselves; or otherwise, they are jealous of their Weakness in the practising them;

Blackmoor Teeth.

Indians *not eat of the first he kills.*

Big bellied Woman never eat of the first Fish caught in a Ware.

Indians *not kill Snakes why.*

Circumcision.

them; so that they never acquaint any Christian with the Knowledge thereof, let Writers pretend what they will; for I have known them amongst their Idols and dead Kings in their *Quiogozon* for several Days, where I could never get Admittance, to see what they were doing, though I was at great Friendship with the King and great Men; but all my Persuasions avail'd me nothing. Neither were any but the King, with the Conjurer, and some few old Men, in that House; as for the young Men, and chiefest Numbers of the *Indians*, they were kept as ignorant of what the Elders were doing, as myself.

Indian *Idols give an account of.*

They all believe, that this World is round, and that there are two Spirits; the one good, the other bad: The good one they reckon to be the Author and Maker of every thing, and say, that it is he, that gives them the Fruits of the Earth, and has taught them to hunt, fish, and be wise enough to overpower the Beasts of the Wilderness, and all other Creatures, that they may be assistant, and beneficial to Man; to which they add, that the *Quera*, or good Spirit, has been very kind to the *English* Men, to teach them to make Guns, and Ammunition, besides a great many other Necessaries, that are helpful to Man, all which, they say, will be deliver'd to them, when that good Spirit sees fit. They do not believe, that God punishes any Man either in this Life, or that to come; but that he delights in doing good, and in giving the Fruits of the Earth, and instructing us in making several useful and ornamental things. They say, it is a bad Spirit (who lives separate from the good one) that torments us with Sicknesses, Disappointments, Losses, Hunger, Travel, and all the Misfortunes, that Humane Life is incident to. How they are treated in the next World, I have already mention'd, and, as I said before, they are very resolute in dying, when in the Hands of Savage Enemies; yet I saw one of their young Men, a very likely Person, condemn'd, on a *Sunday*, for Killing a Negro, and burning the House. I took good Notice of his Behaviour, when he was brought out of the House to die, which was the next Morning after Sentence, but he chang'd his Countenance with Trembling, and was in the greatest Fear and Agony. I never saw any Person under his Circumstances, which, perhaps, might be occasion'd by his being deliver'd up by his own Nation (which was the *Tuskeruro's*)

The World is round.

What they believe of God. Their offering Idols.

Devil, what.

Indian *condemn'd.*

ruro's) and executed by us, that are not their common Enemies, though he met with more Favour than he would have receiv'd at the Hands of Savages; for he was only hang'd on a Tree, near the Place where the Murder was committed; and the three Kings, that but the day before shew'd such a Reluctancy to deliver him up, (but would have given another in his Room) when he was hang'd, pull'd him by the Hand, and said, *Thou wilt never play any more Rogues Tricks in this World; whither art thou gone to shew thy Tricks now?* Which shews these Savages to be what they really are, (*viz.*) a People that will save their own Men if they can, but if the Safety of all the People lies at Stake, they will deliver up the most innocent Person living, and be so far from Concern, when they have made themselves easy thereby, that they will laugh at their Misfortunes, and never pity or think of them more.

Indian *Conjurers.*

Their Priests are the Conjurers and Doctors of the Nation. I shall mention some of their Methods, and Practices; and so leave them to the Judgment of the Reader. As I told you before, the Priests make their Orations at every Feast, or other great Meeting of the *Indians*. I happen'd to be at one of these great Meetings, which was at the Funeral of a *Tuskeruro Indian*, that was slain with Lightning at a Feast, the day before, where I was amongst the rest; it was in *July*, and a very fair day, where, in the Afternoon, about six or seven a Clock, as they were dealing out their Victuals, there appear'd a little black Cloud to the North West, which spread and brought with it Rain, Wind and Lightning; so we went out from the Place where we were all at Victuals, and went down to the Cabins where I left the *Indians*, and went to lie in my Canoe, which was convenient enough to keep me dry. The Lightning came so terrible, and down in long Streams, that I was afraid it would have taken hold of a Barrel of Powder I had in my Vessel, and so blown me up; but it pleas'd God, that it did me no Harm; yet the Violence of the Wind had blown all the Water away, where I rid at Anchor, so that my Canoe lay dry, and some *Indian* Women came with Torches in their Hands to the side of the Canoe, and told me, an *Indian* was kill'd with Lightning. The next day, (I think) he was buried, and I stay'd to see the Ceremony, and was very tractable to help the *Indians* to trim their Reeds, and make the Coffin, which pleased them very much,

Indian *Lightning at* Chattooka, *at a Feast for rebuilding a King's House burnt.*

being

becauſe I had a mind to ſee the Interment. Before he was Interr'd according to their Cuſtom, they dealt every one ſome hot Victuals, which he took and did what he would with: Then the Doctor began to talk, and told the People what Lightning was, and that it kill'd every thing that dwelt upon the Earth; nay, the very Fiſhes did not eſcape; for it often reach'd the Porpoiſes and other Fiſh, and deſtroy'd them; that every thing ſtrove to ſhun it, except the Mice, who, he ſaid, were the buſieſt in eating their Corn in the Fields, when it lightned the moſt. He added, that no Wood or Tree could withſtand it, except the black Gum, and that it would run round that Tree a great many times, to enter therein, but could not effect it. Now you muſt underſtand, that ſort of Gum will not ſplit or rive; therefore, I ſuppoſe, the Story might ariſe from thence. At laſt, he began to tell the moſt ridiculous abſurd Parcel of Lyes about Lightning, that could be; as that an *Indian* of that Nation had once got Lightning in the Likeneſs of a Partridge; That no other Lightning could harm him, whilſt he had that about him; and that after he had kept it for ſeveral Years, it got away from him; ſo that he then became as liable to be ſtruck with Lightning, as any other Perſon. There was preſent at the ſame time, an *Indian* that had liv'd from his Youth, chiefly in an *Engliſh* Houſe; ſo I call'd to him, and told him, what a Parcel of Lyes the Conjurer told, not doubting but he thought ſo, as well as I, but I found to the contrary; for he reply'd, that I was much miſtaken, for that old Man (who, I believe was upwards of an hundred Years old) did never tell Lyes; and as for what he ſaid, it was very true, for he knew it himſelf to be ſo. Thereupon, ſeeing the Fellow's Ignorance, I talk'd no more about it. Then the Doctor proceeded to tell a long Tale of a great Rattle-Snake, which, a great while ago, liv'd by a Creek in that River (which was *Neus*) and that it kill'd abundance of *Indians*; but at laſt, a bald Eagle kill'd it, and they were rid of a Serpent, that us'd to devour whole Canoes full of *Indians*, at a time. I have been ſomething tedious upon this Subject, on purpoſe to ſhew what ſtrange ridiculous Stories theſe Wretches are inclinable to believe. I ſuppoſe, theſe Doctors underſtand a little better themſelves, than to give Credit to any ſuch Fooleries; for I reckon them the cunningeſt Knaves in all the Pack. I will

How hard it is to bring the Indians from their Superſtition.

Rattle-Snake kill Indians in Canoes.

Eagles kill it.

therefore begin with their Phyſick and Surgery, which is next: You muſt know, that the Doctors or Conjurers, to gain a greater Credit amongſt theſe People, tell them, that all Diſtempers are the Effects of evil Spirits, or the bad Spirit, which has ſtruck them with this or that Malady; therefore, none of theſe Phyſicians undertakes any Diſtemper, but that he comes to an Exorciſm, to effect the Cure, and acquaints the ſick Party's Friends, that he muſt converſe with the good Spirit, to know whether the Patient will recover or not; if ſo, then he will drive out the bad Spirit, and the Patient will become well. Now, the general way of their Behaviour in curing the Sick, (a great deal of which I have ſeen, and ſhall give ſome Account thereof, in as brief a manner as poſſible) is, when an *Indian* is ſick, if they think there is much Danger of Life, and that he is a great Man or hath good Frieds, the Doctor is ſent for. As ſoon as the Doctor comes into the Cabin, the ſick Perſon is ſat on a Mat or Skin, ſtark-naked, lying on his Back, and all uncover'd, except ſome ſmall Trifle that covers their Nakedneſs when ripe, otherwiſe in very young Children, there is nothing about them. In this manner, the Patient lies, when the Conjurer appears; and the King of that Nation comes to attend him with a Rattle made of a Gourd with Peaſe in it. This the King delivers into the Doctor's Hand, whilſt another brings a Bowl of Water, and ſets it down: Then the Doctor begins, and utters ſome few Words very ſoftly; afterwards he ſmells of the Patient's Navel and Belly, and ſometimes ſcarifies him a little with a Flint, or an Inſtrument made of Rattle-Snakes Teeth for that purpoſe; then he ſucks the Patient, and gets out a Mouthful of Blood and *Serum*, but *Serum* chiefly; which, perhaps, may be a better Method in many Caſes, than to take away great Quantities of Blood, as is commonly practis'd; which he ſpits in the Bowl of Water. Then he begins to mutter, and talk apace, and, at laſt, to cut Capers, and clap his Hands on his Breech and Sides, till he gets into a Sweat, ſo that a Stranger would think he was running mad; now and then ſucking the Patient, and ſo, at times, keeps ſucking. till he has got a great Quaatity of very ill-coloured Matter out of the Belly, Arms, Breaſt, Forehead, Temples, Neck, and moſt Parts, ſtill continuing his Grimaces, and antick Poſtures, which are not to be match'd in *Bedlam*: At laſt, you will ſee the Doctor all over of a dropping Sweat, and ſcarce

Indian *Phyſick and Surgery.*

Conjuring over the Sick.

ſcarce able to utter one Word, having quite ſpent himſelf; then he will ceaſe for a while, and ſo begin again, till he comes in the ſame Pitch of Raving and ſeeming Madneſs, as before, (all this time the ſick Body never ſo much as moves, although, doubtleſs, the Lancing and Sucking muſt be a great Puniſhment to them; but they, certainly, are the patienteſt and moſt ſteady People under any Burden, that I ever ſaw in my Life.) At laſt, the Conjurer makes an end, and tells the Patient's Friends, whether the Perſon will live or die; and then one that waits at this Ceremony, takes the Blood away, (which remains in a Lump, in the middle of the Water) and buries it in the Ground, in a Place unknown to any one, but he that inters it. Now, I believe a great deal of Impoſture in theſe Fellows; yet I never knew their Judgment fail, though I have ſeen them give their Opinion after this Manner, ſeveral times: Some affirm, that there is a ſmell of Brimſtone in the Cabins, when they are Conjuring, which I cannot contradict. Which way it may come, I will not argue, but proceed to a Relation or two, which I have from a great many Perſons, and ſome of them worthy of Credit.

Whether live or die.

Bury the Serum.

The firſt is, of a certain *Indian*, that one rainy Night, undermin'd a Houſe made of Logs, (ſuch as the *Swedes* in *America* very often make, and are very ſtrong) which belong'd to *Seth Southwell*, Eſq; Governor of *North-Carolina*, and one of the Proprietors. There was but one place the *Indian* could get in at, which was very narrow; the reſt was ſecur'd, by having Barrels of Pork and other Proviſions ſet againſt the ſide of the Houſe, ſo that if this *Indian* had not exactly hit the very Place he undermin'd, it had been impoſſible for him to have got therein, becauſe of the full Barrels that ſtood round the Houſe, and barricadoed it within. The *Indian* ſtole ſixty or eighty dreſs'd Deer-Skins, beſides Blankets, Powder, Shot and Rum, (this being the *Indian* Store-Houſe, where the Trading Goods were kept.) Now, the *Indian* had made his Eſcape, but dropt ſome of the Skins by the way, and they track'd his Foot-ſteps, and found him to be an *Indian*; then they gueſs'd who it was, becauſe none but that *Indian* had lately been near the Houſe. Thereupon, the Governor ſent to the *Indian* Town that he belong'd to, which was the *Tuskerura*'s, and acquainted them that if they did not deliver up the *Indian*, who had committed the

Indian Robbery.

Robbery, he would take a Course with them, that would not be very agreeable. Upon this, the *Indians* of the Town he belong'd to, brought him in bound, and deliver'd him up to the Governor, who laid him in Irons. At the same time, it happen'd, that a Robbery was committed amongst themselves, at the *Indian* Town, and this Prisoner was one of their Conjurers; so the *Indians* came down to the Governor's House, and acquainted him with what had happen'd amongst them, and that a great Quantity of *Peak*, was stoln away out of one of their Cabins, and no one could find out the Thief, unless he would let the Prisoner conjure for it, who was the only Man they had at making such Discoveries. The Governor was content he should try his Skill for them, but not to have the Prisoners Irons taken off, which was very well approved of. The *Indian* was brought out in his Fetters, where were the Governor's Family, and several others of the Neighbourhood, now living, to see this Experiment; which he perform'd thus:

Conjuring for stoln Goods.

The Conjurer order'd three Fires to be made in a triangular Form, which was accordingly done; then he was hoodwink'd very securely, with a dress'd Deer-Skin, two or three doubles, over his Face. After he had made some Motions, as they always do, he went directly out of one of the three Gaps, as exactly as if he had not been blindfolded, and kept muttering to himself, having a Stick in his Hand, with which, after some time, he struck two Strokes very hard upon the Ground, and made thereon a Cross, after which he told the *Indian*'s Name that had stoln the Goods, and said, that he would have a Cross on his Back; which prov'd true; for when they took and search'd him, there appear'd two great Wheals on his Back, one cross the other; for the Thief was at Governor *Southwell*'s House, and was under no Apprehension of being discover'd. The *Indians* proffer'd to sell him as a Slave to the Governor, but he refused to buy him; so they took him bound away.

Another Instance, of the like Nature, happen'd at the same House. One of the *Tuskeruro* Kings had brought in a Slave to the same Governor, to whom he had sold him; and before he return'd, fell sick at the Governor's House; upon which, the Doctor that belong'd to this King's Nation, was sent for, being a Man that was held to be the greatest Conju-

rer

rer amongſt them. It was three Days, before he could arrive, and he appear'd (when he came) to be a very little Man, and ſo old, that his Hair was as white as ever was ſeen. When he approach'd the ſick King, he order'd a Bowl of Water to be brought him, and three Chunks of Wood, which was immediately done. Then he took the Water, and ſet it by him, and ſpurted a little on him, and with the three Pieces of Wood, he made a Place to ſtand on, whereby he was rais'd higher; (he being a very low ſtatur'd Man) then he took a String of *Ronoak*, which is the ſame as a String of ſmall Beads; this he held by one End, between his Fingers; the other End touch'd the King's Stomach, as he ſtood on the Logs. Then he began to talk, and at length, the By-ſtanders thought really, that they heard ſomebody talk to him, but ſaw no more than what firſt came in. At laſt, this String of Beads, which hung thus perpendicular, turn'd up as an Eel would do, and without any Motion of his, they came all up (in a lump) under his Hand, and hung ſo for a conſiderable time, he never cloſing his Hand, and at length return'd to their priſtine Length and Shape, at which the Spectators were much frightned. Then he told the Company, that he would recover, and that his Diſtemper would remove into his Leg, all which happen'd to be exactly as the *Indian* Doctor had told. Theſe are Matters of Fact, and I can, at this day, prove the Truth thereof by ſeveral ſubſtantial Evidences, that are Men of Reputation, there being more than a dozen People preſent, when this was perform'd; moſt of whom are now alive.

There are a great many other Stories, of this Nature, which are ſeemingly true, being told by Perſons that affirm they were Eye-Witneſſes thereof; as, that they have ſeen one *Roncommock* (a *Chowan Indian*, and a great Conjurer) take a Reed about two Foot long in his Mouth, and ſtand by a Salmon-Creek-ſide, where he call'd twice or thrice with the Reed in his Mouth; and, at laſt, has open'd his Arms, and fled over the Creek, which might be near a quarter of a Mile wide or more; but I ſhall urge no Man's Belief, but tell my own; which is, that I believe the two firſt Accounts, which were acted at Mr. *Southwell*'s Plantation, as firmly as any Man can believe any thing of that which is told him by honeſt Men, and he has not ſeen; not at all doubting the Credit of my Authors. Salmon-Creek.

The

The Cures I have ſeen perform'd by the *Indians*, are too many to repeat here; ſo I ſhall only mention ſome few, and their Method. They cure Scald-heads infallibly, and never miſs. Their chief Remedy as I have ſeen them make uſe of, is, the Oil of Acorns, but from which ſort of Oak I am not certain. They cure Burns beyond Credit. I have ſeen a Man burnt in ſuch a manner, (when drunk) by falling into a Fire, that I did not think he could recover; yet they cur'd him in ten Days, ſo that he went about. I knew another blown up with Powder, that was cured to Admiration. I never ſaw an *Indian* have an Ulcer, or foul Wound in my Life; neither is there any ſuch thing to be found amongſt them. They cure the Pox, by a Berry that ſalivates, as *Mercury* does; yet they uſe Sweating and Decoctions very much with it; as they do, almoſt on every Occaſion; and when they are thoroughly heated, they leap into the River. The Pox is frequent in ſome of theſe Nations; amongſt which I knew one Woman die of it; and they could not, or would not, cure her. Before ſhe died, ſhe was worn away to a Skeleton, yet walk'd up and down to the laſt. We had a Planter in *Carolina*, who had got an Ulcer in his Leg, which had troubled him a great many Years; at laſt, he apply'd himſelf to one of theſe *Indian* Conjurers, who was a *Pampticough Indian*, and was not to give the Value of fifteen Shillings for the Cure. Now, I am not poſitive, whether he waſh'd the Ulcer with any thing, before he uſed what I am now going to ſpeak of, which was nothing but the rotten doated Grains of *Indian* Corn, beaten to Powder, and the ſoft Down growing on a Turkey's Rump. This dry'd the Ulcer up immediately, and no other Fontanel was made to diſcharge the Matter, he remaining a healthful Man, till the time he had the Misfortune to be drown'd, which was many Years after. Another Inſtance (not of my own Knowledge, but I had it confirm'd by ſeveral Dwellers in *Maryland*, where it was done) was, of an honeſt Planter that had been poſſeſs'd with a ſtrange Lingring Diſtemper, not uſual amongſt them, under which he emaciated, and grew every Month worſe than another, it having held him ſeveral Years, in which time he had made Tryal of ſeveral Doctors, as they call them, which, I ſuppoſe, were Ship-Surgeons. In the beginning of this Diſtemper, the Patient was very well to paſs, and was poſſeſs'd of ſeveral Slaves,

Scald Head cured.

Noulcerated Wounds.

Pox to cure.

Indian *cure an Ulcer.*

Cure in Maryland.

Slaves, which the Doctors purged all away, and the poor Man was so far from mending, that he grew worse and worse every day. But it happen'd, that, one day, as his Wife and he were commiserating his miserable Condition, and that he could not expect to recover, but look'd for Death very speedily, and condoling the Misery he should leave his Wife and Family in, since all his Negro's were gone. At that time, I say, it happen'd, that an *Indian* was in the same Room, who had frequented the House for many Years, and so was become as one of the Family, and would sometimes be at this Planter's House, and at other times amongst the *Indians*.

This Savage, hearing what they talk'd of, and having a great Love for the Sick Man, made this Reply to what he had heard. *Brother, you have been a long time Sick; and, I know, you have given away your Slaves to your* English *Doctors: What made you do so, and now become poor? They do not know how to cure you; for it is an* Indian *Distemper, which your People know not the Nature of. If it had been an* English *Disease, probably they could have cured you; and had you come to me at first, I would have cured you for a small matter, without taking away your Servants that made Corn for you and your Family to eat; and yet, if you will give me a Blanket to keep me warm, and some Powder and Shot to kill Deer withal, I will do my best to make you well still.* The Man was low in Courage and Pocket too, and made the *Indian* this Reply. *Jack, my Distemper is past Cure, and if our* English *Doctors cannot cure it, I am sure, the* Indians *cannot.* But his Wife accosted her Husband in very mild terms, and told him, he did not know, but God might be pleased to give a Blessing to that *Indian's* Undertaking more than he had done to the *English*; and farther added; *if you die, I cannot be much more miserable, by giving this small matter to the* Indian; *so I pray you, my Dear, take my Advice, and try him*; to which, by her Persuasions, he consented. After the Bargain was concluded, the *Indian* went into the Woods, and brought in both Herbs and Roots, of which he made a Decoction, and gave it the Man to drink, and bad him go to bed, saying, it should not be long, before he came again, which the Patient perform'd as he had ordered; and the Potion he had administred made him sweat after the most violent manner that could be, whereby he smell'd very offensively both to himself, and they.

they that were about him; but in the Evening, towards Night, *Jack* came, with a great Rattle-Snake in his Hand alive, which frightned the People almoſt out of their Senſes; and he told his Patient, that he muſt take that to Bed to him; at which the Man was in a great Conſternation, and told the *Indian*, he was reſolv'd, to let no Snake come into his Bed, for he might as well die of the Diſtemper he had, as be kill'd with the Bite of that Serpent. To which the *Indian* reply'd, he could not bite him now, nor do him any Harm; for he had taken out his Poiſon-teeth, and ſhew'd him, that they were gone. At laſt, with much Perſuaſion, he admitted the Snake's Company, which the *Indian* put about his Middle, and order'd nobody to take him away upon any account, which was ſtrictly obſerv'd, although the Snake girded him as hard for a great while) as if he had been drawn in by a Belt, which one pull'd at, with all his ſtrength. At laſt, the Snake's Twitches grew weaker and weaker, till, by degrees, he felt him not; and opening the Bed, he was found dead, and the Man thought himſelf better. The *Indian* came in the Morning, and ſeeing the Snake dead, told the Man, that his Diſtemper was dead along with that Snake, which prov'd ſo as he ſaid; for the Man ſpeedily recover'd his Health, and became perfectly well.

Cure by a Snake.

They cure the Spleen (which they are much addicted to) by burning with a Reed. They lay the Patient on his Back, ſo put a hollow Cane into the Fire, where they burn the End thereof, till it is very hot, and on Fire at the end. Then they lay a Piece of thin Leather on the Patient's Belly, between the Pit of the Stomach and the Navel, ſo preſs the hot Reed on the Leather, which burns the Patient ſo that you may ever after ſee the Impreſſion of the Reed where it was laid on, which Mark never goes off ſo long as he lives. This is uſed for the Belly-Ach ſometimes. They can colour their Hair black, though ſometimes it is reddiſh, which they do with the Seed of a Flower that grows commonly in their Plantations. I believe this would change the reddeſt Hair into perfect black. They make uſe of no Minerals in their Phyſick, and not much of Animals; but chiefly rely on Vegetables. They have ſeveral Remedies for the Tooth-ach, which often drive away the Pain; but if they fail, they have Recourſe to punching out the Tooth, with a ſmall Cane ſet againſt

Spleen how cure.

Colouring of the Hair.

Not many Tears, Rorins.

againſt the ſame, on a Bit of Leather. Then they ſtrike the Reed, and ſo drive out the Tooth; and howſoever it may ſeem to the *Europeans*, I prefer it before the common way of drawing Teeth by thoſe Inſtruments than endanger the Jaw, and a Flux of Blood often follows, which this Method of a Punch never is attended withal; neither is it half the Pain. The Spontaneous Plants of *America* the Savages are well acquainted withal; and a Flux of Blood never follows any of their Operations. They are wholly Strangers to Amputation, and for what natural Iſſues of Blood happen immoderately, they are not to ſeek for a certain and ſpeedy Cure. Tears, Rozins, and Gums, I have not diſcover'd that they make much uſe of; And as for Purging and Emeticks, ſo much in faſhion with us, they never apply themſelves to, unleſs in drinking vaſt Quantities of their *Yaupon* or Tea, and vomiting it up again, as clear as they drink it. This is a Cuſtom amongſt all thoſe that can procure that Plant, in which manner they take it every other Morning, or oftner; by which Method they keep their Stomachs clean, without pricking the Coats, and ſtraining Nature, as every Purge is an Enemy to. Beſides, the great Diuretick Quality of their Tea carries off a great deal, that perhaps might prejudice their Health, by Agues, and Fevers, which all watry Countries are addicted to; for which reaſon, I believe, it is, that the *Indians* are not ſo much addicted to that Diſtemper, as we are, they preventing its ſeizing upon them, by this Plant alone. Moreover, I have remark'd, that it is only thoſe Places bordering on the Ocean and great Rivers, that this Diſtemper is frequent in, and only on and near the ſame Places this Evergreen is to be found; and none up towards the Mountains, where theſe Agues ſeldom or never appear; Nature having provided ſuitable Remedies, in all Countries, proper for the Maladies that are common thereto. The Savages of *Carolina* have this Tea in Veneration, above all the Plants they are acquainted withal, and tell you, the Diſcovery thereof was by an infirm *Indian*, that labour'd under the Burden of many rugged Diſtempers, and could not be cured by all their Doctors; ſo, one day, he fell aſleep, and dreamt, that if he took a Decoction of the Tree that grew at his Head, he would certainly be cured; upon which he awoke, and ſaw the *Yaupon* or *Caſſena*-Tree, which was not

Yaupon.

there when he fell asleep. He follow'd the Direction of his Dream, and became perfectly well in a short time. Now, I suppose, no Man has so little Sense as to believe this Fable; yet it lets us see what they intend thereby, and that it has, doubtless, work'd Feats enough, to gain it such an Esteem amongst these Savages, who are too well versed in Vegetables, to be brought to a continual use of any one of them, upon a meer Conceit or Fancy, without some apparent Benefit they found thereby; especially, when we are sensible, they drink the Juices of Plants, to free Nature of her Burdens, and not out of Foppery and Fashion, as other Nations are oftentimes found to do. Amongst all the Discoveries of *America*, by the Missionaries of the *French* and *Spaniards*, I wonder none of them was so kind to the World, as to have kept a Catalogue of the Distempers they found the Savages capable of curing, and their Method of Cure; which might have been of some Advantage to our *Materia Medica* at home, when deliver'd by Men of Learning, and other Qualifications, as most of them are. Authors generally tell us, that the Savages are well enough acquainted with those Plants which their Climate affords, and that some of them effect great Cures, but by what Means, and in what Form, we are left in the dark.

Sassafras. The Bark of the Root of the Sassafras-Tree, I have observ'd, is much used by them. They generally torrefy it in the Embers, so strip off the Bark from the Root, beating it to a Consistence fit to spread, so lay it on the griev'd Part; which both cleanses a fowl Ulcer; and after Scarrification, being apply'd to a Contusion, or Swelling, draws forth the Pain, and reduces the Part to its pristine State of Health, as I have often seen effected. Fats and Unguents never appear in their Chirurgery, when the Skin is once broke. The Fats of Animals are used by them, to render their Limbs pliable, and when wearied, to relieve the Joints, and this not often, because they approve of the Sweating-House (in such cases) above all things. The Salts they mix with their Bread and Soupe, to give them a Relish, are *Alkalis*, (viz.) Ashes, and calcined Bones of Deer, and other Animals. Sallads, they never eat any; as for Pepper and Mustard, they reckon us little better than Madmen, to make use of it amongst our Victuals. They are never troubled with the Scurvy, Dropsy, nor Stone. The Phthisick, Asthma, and Diabetes,

Make Bread, how Alkali *Salts.*

No Sallads, Pepper, or Mustard.

Diabetes, they are wholly Strangers to; neither do I remember I ever saw one Paralytick amongst them. The Gout, I cannot be certain whether they know what it is, or not. Indeed, I never saw any Nodes or Swellings, which attend the Gout in *Europe*; yet they have a sort of Rhumatism or Burning of the Limbs, which tortures them grievously, at which time their Legs are so hot, that they employ the young People continually to pour Water down them. I never saw but one or two thus afflicted. The Struma is not uncommon amongst these Savages, and another Distemper, which is, in some respects, like the Pox, but is attended with no *Gonorrhœa*. This not seldom bereaves them of their Nose. I have seen three or four of them render'd most miserable Spectacles by this Distemper. Yet, when they have been so negligent, as to let it run on so far without curbing of it; at last, they make shift to patch themselves up, and live for many years after; and such Men commonly turn Doctors. I have known two or three of these no-nose Doctors in great Esteem amongst these Savages. The Juice of the Tulip-Tree is used as a proper Remedy for this Distemper. What Knowledge they have in Anatomy, I cannot tell, neither did I ever see them employ themselves therein, unless, as I told you before, when they make the Skeletons of their Kings and great Mens Bones.

Rhumatick Pains.

The *Indians* are very careless and negligent of their Health; as, by Drunkenness, Wading in the Water, irregular Diet and Lodging, and a thousand other Disorders, (that would kill an *European*) which they daily use. They boil and roast their Meat extraordinary much, and eat abundance of Broth, except the Savages whom we call the naked *Indians*, who never eat any Soupe. They travel from the Banks of the *Messiasippi*, to war against the *Sinnagars* or *Iroquois*, and are (if equal Numbers) commonly too hard for them. They will lie and sleep in the Woods without Fire, being inur'd thereto. They are the hardiest of all *Indians*, and run so fast, that they are never taken, neither do any *Indians* outrun them, if they are pursu'd. Their Savage Enemies say, their Nimbleness and Wind proceeds from their never eating any Broth. The Small-Pox has been fatal to them; they do not often escape, when they are seiz'd with that Distemper, which is a contrary Fever to what they ever knew.

Naked Indians.

Small-Pox.

Moſt certain, it had never viſited *America*, before the Diſcovery thereof by the Chriſtians. Their running into the Water, in the Extremity of this Diſeaſe, ſtrikes it in, and kills all that uſe it. Now they are become a little wiſer; but formerly it deſtroy'd whole Towns, without leaving one *Indian* alive in the Village. The Plague was never known amongſt them, that I could learn by what Enquiry I have made: Theſe Savages uſe Scarrification almoſt in all Diſtempers. Their chief Inſtruments for that Operation is the Teeth of Rattle-Snakes, which they poiſon withal. They take them out of the Snake's Head, and ſuck out the Poiſon with their Mouths, (and ſo keep them for uſe) and ſpit out the Venom, which is green, and are never damag'd thereby. The Small-Pox and Rum have made ſuch a Deſtruction amongſt them, that, on good grounds, I do believe, there is not the ſixth Savage living within two hundred Miles of all our Settlements, as there were fifty Years ago. Theſe poor Creatures have ſo many Enemies to deſtroy them, that it's a wonder one of them is left alive near us. The Small-pox I have acquainted you withal above, and ſo I have of Rum, and ſhall only add, that they have got a way to carry it back to the Weſtward *Indians*, who never knew what it was, till within very few Years. Now they have it brought them by the *Tuskeruro's*, and other Neighbour-*Indians*, but the *Tuskeruro's* chiefly, who carry it in Rundlets ſeveral hundred Miles, amongſt other *Indians*. Sometimes they cannot forbear breaking their Cargo, but ſit down in the Woods, and drink it all up, and then hollow and ſhout like ſo many *Bedlamites*. I accidentally once met with one of theſe drunken Crews, and was amaz'd to ſee a Parcel of drunken Savages ſo far from any *Engliſhman*'s Houſe; but the *Indians* I had in Company inform'd me, that they were Merchants, and had drunk all their Stock, as is very common for them to do. But when they happen to carry it ſafe, (which is ſeldom, without drinking ſome part of it, and filling it up with Water) and come to an *Indian* Town, thoſe that buy Rum of them have ſo many Mouthfuls for a Buck-Skin, they never uſing any other Meaſure; and for this purpoſe, the Buyer always makes Choice of his Man, which is one that has the greateſt Mouth, whom he brings to the Market with a Bowl to put it in. The Seller looks narrowly to the Man's Mouth

that

that measures it, and if he happens to swallow any down, either through Wilfulness or otherwise, the Merchant or some of his Party, does not scruple to knock the Fellow down, exclaiming against him for false Measure. Thereupon, the Buyer finds another Mouthpiece to measure the Rum by; so that this Trading is very agreeable to the Spectators, to see such a deal of Quarrelling and Controversy, as often happens, about it, and is very diverting.

Another Destroyer of them, is, the Art they have, and often practise, of poisoning one another; which is done by a large, white, spungy Root, that grows in the Fresh-Marshes, which is one of their Poisons; not but that they have many other Drugs, which they poison one another withal. *Poisoning of Taylor.*

Lastly, the continual Wars these Savages maintain, one Nation against another, which sometimes hold for some Ages, killing and making Captives, till they become so weak thereby, that they are forced to make Peace for want of Recruits, to supply their Wars; and the Difference of Languages, that is found amongst these Heathens, seems altogether strange. For it often appears, that every dozen Miles, you meet with an *Indian* Town, that is quite different from the others you last parted withal; and what a little supplies this Defect is, that the most powerful Nation of these Savages scorns to treat or trade with any others (of fewer Numbers and less Power) in any other Tongue but their own, which serves for the *Lingua* of the Country, with which we travel and deal; as for Example, we see that the *Tuskeruro's* are most numerous in *North-Carolina*, therefore their Tongue is understood by some in every Town of all the *Indians* near us. And here I shall insert a small Dictionary of every Tongue, though not Alphabetically digested. *How the Indians war.*

English.	Tuskeruro.	Pampticough.	Woccon.
One	*Unche*	*Weembot*	*Tonne*
Two	*Nectè*	*Neshinnauh*	*Num-perre*
Three	*Ohs-sah*	*Nish-wonner*	*Nam-mee*
Four	*Untoc*	*Tau-Ooner*	*Punnum-punne*
Five	*Ouch-whe*	*Umperren*	*Webtau*
Six	*Houeyoc*	*Who-yeoc*	*Is-sto*
Seven	*Chauh-noc*	*Top-po-osh*	*Nommis-sau*
Eight	*Nec-kara*	*Nau-haush-shoo*	*Nupsau*

English

Engliſh.	Tuskeruro.	Pampticough.	Woccon.
Nine	*Wearah*	*Pach-ic-conk*	*Weihere*
Ten	*Wartſauh*	*Coſh*	*Soone noponne*
Eleven	*Unche ſcauwhau*		*Tonne hauk pea*
Twelve	*Nectec ſcaukhau*		*Soone nomme*
Twenty	*Wartſau ſcauhau*		*Winnop*
Thirty	*Oſſa te wartſau*		
Hundred	*Touch ſe*		
Thouſand	*Ki you ſe*		
Rum	*Oonaquod*	*Weeſaccon*	*Yup-ſe*
Blankets	*Oorewa*	*Mattoſh*	*Roo-iune*
White	*Ware-occa*	*Wop-poſhaumoſh*	*Waurraupa*
Red	*Cotcoo-rea*	*Miſh-cosk*	*Yauta*
Black or Blue, *idem*	*Caw-hunſhe*	*Mow-cottowoſh*	*Yah-teſtea*
Gunpowder	*Ou-kn*	*Pungue*	*Rooeyam*
Shot	*Cauna*	*Ar-rounſer*	*Week*
Axe	*Au-nuka*	*Tomma-hick*	*Tau-unta winnik*
Knife	*Ooſocke nauh*	*Rig-coſq*	*Wee*
Tobacco	*Charho*	*Hooh-pau*	*Uu-coone*
Shirt	*Ough-tre's*		*Tacca pitteneer*
Shoes	*Oo-roſs-ſoo*		*Wee-keſſoo*
Hat	*Troſſa*	*Mottau-quahan*	*Intome-poſſwa*
Fire	*Utchar*	*Tinda*	*Yau*
Water	*Awoo*	*Umpe*	*Ejau*
Coat	*Ouſwox Kawhitchra*	*Taus-won*	*Rummiſſau*
Awl or Needle	*Ooſe-waure*	*Moc-coſe*	*Wonſh-ſhee*
A Hoe	*Wauche-wocnoc*	*Roſh-ſhocquon*	*Rooe-pau*
Salt	*Cheek-ha*		
Paint	*Quaunt*	*Chuwon*	*Whooyeonne*
Ronoak	*Nauh-houreot*	*Mif-kiſ-'ſu*	*Rummaer*
Peak	*Chu-teche*	*Ronoak*	*Erroco*
Gun	*Auk-noc*	*Gau hooptop*	*Wittape*
Gun-Lock	*Oo-teſte*	*Gun tock Seike*	*Noonkoſſo*
Flints	*Ou-negh-ra*	*Hinds*	*Matt-teer*
A Flap	*Oukhaure*	*Rappatoc*	*Rhooeyau*
Belt	*Oona-teſte*	*Maachone*	*Wee-kau*

Engliſh

English.	Tuskeruro.	Pampticough.	Waccon.
Sciſſors and Tobacco-Tongues	*Cheh-ra*		*Toc-koor*
A Kettle	*Ocwaiana*		*Tooſeawau*
A Pot	*Ocnock*		
Acorns	*Kooawa*		*Rooſomme*
A Pine-Tree	*Heigta*	*Oonoſſa*	*Hooheh*
Engliſhman	*Nickreruroh*	*Toſh ſhonte*	*Wintſohore*
Indians	*Unqua*	*Nuppin*	*Tauh-he*

English.	Tuskeruro.	Woccon.
A Horſe	*A hots*	*Tenwetoa*
Swine	*Watſquerre*	*Nommewarraupan*
Moſs	*Auoona hau*	*Itto*
Raw skin un-Buckskin [dreſt	*Ootahawa*	*Teep*
	Ocques	*Rookau*
Fawn-skin	*Ottea*	*Wiſto*
Bear-skin	*Oochehara*	*Ourka*
Fox-skin	*Che-chou*	*Hannatockore*
Raccoon-skin	*Roo-ſotto*	*Auher*
Squirrel-skin	*Soſt*	*Tehau*
Wildcat-skin	*Cauhauweana*	
Panther-skin	*Caunerex*	*Wattau*
Wolf	*Squarrena*	*Tire kiro*
Min	*Chac-kauene*	*Soccon*
Otter	*Chaunoc*	*Wetkes*
A Mat	*Ooyethue*	*Soppepepor*
Basket	*Ooyaura*	*Rookeppa*
Feathers	*Ooſnooqua*	*Soppe*
Dreſt-skin	*Cotcoo*	*Rauhau*
A Turkey	*Coona*	*Tauta*
A Duck	*Sooeau*	*Welka*
A King	*Teethha*	*Roamore*
Fat	*Ootſaure*	*Tendare*
Soft	*Utſauwanne*	*Rooſomme*
Hard or heavy	*Waucots ne*	*Itte teraugh*
A Rope	*Utſera*	*Trauhe*
A Poſſum	*Che-ra*	
Day	*Ootauh-ne*	
A Peſtel	*Tic-caugh-ne*	*Miyau*

Engliſh.	Turkeruro.	Waccon.
A Mortar	*Ootic caugh-ne*	*Yoſſoe*
Stockings	*Way hauſhe*	
A Creek	*Wackena*	
A River	*Abunt wackena*	
A Man	*Entequos*	
Old Man	*Occooahawa*	
Young Man	*Quottis*	
Woman	*Con-noowa*	
Old Woman	*Cuſquerre*	*Yicau*
Wife	*Kateocca*	*Yecauau*
A Child	*Woccanookne*	
A Boy	*Wariaugh*	
Infant	*Utſeroſta*	
Ears	*Ooethnat*	
Fiſhgig	*Ootoſne*	*Weetipſa*
A Comb	*Oonaquitchra*	*Sacketoome poſſwa*
A Cake bak't	*Ooneck*	
A Head	*Ootaure*	*Poppe*
Hair	*Oowaara*	*Tumme*
Brother	*Caunotka*	*Yenrauhe*
I	*Ee*	
Thou	*Eets*	
There	*Ka*	
Homine	*Cotquerre*	*Roocauwa*
Bread	*Ootocnare*	*Ikettau*
Broath	*Ook-hoo*	
Corn	*Oonaha*	*Coſe*
	Oonave	
	Ooſare	
	Ooſha	
Peaſe	*Saugh-he*	*Cooſauk*
A Bag	*Uttaqua*	*Ekoocromon*
Fiſh	*Cunſhe*	*Yacunne*
A Louſe	*Cheecq;*	*Eppeſyau*
A Flea	*Nauocq;*	
Potato's	*Untone*	*Wauk*
A Stick	*Chinqua*	
Wood	*Ouyunkgue*	*Yonne*
Houſe	*Oinouſe*	*Ouke*
A Cow	*Ovs-ſarunt*	*Noppinjure*

Engliſh.	Tuskeruro.	Woccon.
A Snake	*Us-quauh-ne*	*Yau-hauk*
A Rat	*Ruſquiane*	*Wittau*
A Gooſe	*Au-hoohaha*	*Auhaun*
A Swan	*Oorhaſt*	*Atter*
Allegator	*Utſererauh*	*Monwittetau*
A Crab	*Rouarê cou*	*Wunneau*
A Canoe	*Ooſhunnawa*	*Watt*
A Box	*Ooanoo*	*Yopoonitſa*
A Bowl	*Ortſe*	*Cotſoo*
A Spoon	*Oughquere*	*Cotſau*
A Path	*Wauh-hauhne*	*Yauh*
Sun or Moon	*Heita*	*Wittapare*
Wind	*Hoonoch*	*Yuncor*
A Star	*Uttewiraratſe*	*Wattapi untakeer*
Rain	*Untuch*	*Yawowa*
	Auhuntwood	
Night	*Ooſottoo*	*Yantoha*
A Rundlet	*Oohunawa*	*Ynpyupſeunne*
An Eel	*Cuhn-na*	
A T---d	*Utquera*	*Pulawa*
A F---t	*Uttena*	*Pautyau*
A Cable	*Utquichra*	
Small Ropes	*Utſera utquichra*	
A Button	*Tic-hah*	*Rummiſſauwoune*
Breeches	*Wahunſhe*	*Rooeyaukitte*
Stockings	*Oowiſſera*	*Rooeſoo poſſoo*
Day	*Wauwoc-hook*	*Waukhaway*
Mad	*Coſſerunte*	*Rockcumne*
Angry	*Cotcheroore*	*Roocheha*
Afraid	*Werricauna*	*Rehеſhiwau*
Smoak	*Oo-teighne*	*Too-ſhe*
A Thief or Rogue	*Katichhei*	
A Dog	*Cheeth*	*Tauh-he*
A Reed	*Cauna*	*Weekwonne*
Lightwood	*Kakoo*	*Sek*
To morrow	*Jureha*	*Kittape*
Now	*Kahunk*	
To day	*Kawa*	
A little while ago	*Kakoowa*	*Yauka*

Engliſh.	Tuskeruro.	Woccon.
Yeſterday	*Ooufotto*	*Yottoha*
How many	*Ut-temots*	*Tontarinte*
How far	*Untateawa*	
Will you go a-long with me	*Unta hah*	*Quauke*
Go you	*Its warko*	*Yuppa me*
Give it me	*Cotſhau*	*Mothei*
That's all	*Ut chat*	*Cuttaune*
A Cubit length	*Kihooſocca*	*Iſhewoonaup*
Dead	*Whaharia*	*Caure*
A Gourd or Bottle	*Utchaawa*	*Wattape*
A lazy Fellow	*Wattattoo watſe*	*Tontaunete*
Engliſhman is thirſty	*Oukwockaninniwock*	
I will ſell you Goods very cheap	*Waufthanocha*	*Nauhau hoore-ene*
All the *Indians* are drunk	*Connaugh joſt twane*	*Nonnupper*
Have you got any thing to eat	*Utta-ana-wox*	*Noccoo Eraute*
I am ſick	*Connauwox*	*Waurepa*
A Fiſh-Hook	*Oos-skinna*	
Don't loſe it	*Oon eſt nonne it quoſt*	
A Tobacco-pipe	*Ooſquaana*	*Intom*
I remember it	*Oonutſauka*	*Aucummato*
Let it alone	*Tnotſaurauweek*	*Sauhau*
Peaches	*Roo-ooe*	*Yonne*
Walnuts	*Rootau-ooe*	
Hickery Nuts	*Rootau*	*Nimmia*
A *Jew*'s-Harp	*Ooratſa*	*Wottiyau*
I forget it	*Merrauka*	
Northweſt-Wind	*Hothooka*	
Snow.	*Acaunque.*	*Wawawa*

To

To repeat more of this *Indian* Jargon, would be to trouble the Reader; and as an Account how imperfect they are in their Moods and Tenses, has been given by several already, I shall only add, that their Languages or Tongues are so deficient, that you cannot suppose the *Indians* ever could express themselves in such a Flight of Stile, as Authors would have you believe. They are so far from it, that they are but just able to make one another understand readily what they talk about. As for the two Consonants *L* and *F*, I never knew them in any *Indian* Speech I have met withal; yet I must tell you, that they have such a Way of abbreviating their Speech, when in their great Councils and Debates, that the young Men do not understand what they treat about, when they hear them argue. It is wonderful, what has occasion'd so many different Speeches as the Savages have. The three Nations I now mention'd, do not live above ten Leagues distant, and two of them, *viz.* the *Tuskeruro's* and the *Woccon*, are not two Leagues asunder; yet their Speech differs in every Word thereof, except one, which is *Tsaure*, *Cockles*, which is in both Tongues the same, and nothing else. Now this Difference of Speech causes Jealousies and Fears amongst them, which bring Wars, wherein they destroy one another; otherwise the Christians had not (in all Probability) settled *America* so easily, at they have done, had these Tribes of Savages united themselves into one People or general Interest, or were they so but every hundred Miles. In short, they are an odd sort of People under the Circumstances they are at present, and have some such uncouth Ways in their Management and Course of Living, that it seems a Miracle to us, how they bring about their Designs, as they do, when their Ways are commonly quite contrary to ours. I believe, they are (as to this Life) a very happy People; and were it not for the Feuds amongst themselves, they would enjoy the happiest State (in this World) of all Mankind. They met with Enemies when we came amongst them; for they are no nearer Christianity now, than they were at the first Discovery, to all Appearance. They have learnt several Vices of the *Europeans*, but not one Vertue, as I know of. Drunkenness was a Stranger, when we found them out, and Swearing their Speech cannot express; yet those that speak *English*, learn to swear the first thing they talk

Indian *Speech.*

Tartarian *Hurds.*

Indians *learn of the* Europeans.

talk of. It's true, they have ſome Vertues and ſome Vices; but how the Chriſtians can bring theſe People into the Boſom of the Church, is a Propoſal that ought to be form'd and follow'd by the wiſeſt Heads and beſt Chriſtians. After I have given one Remark or two farther, of ſome of their ſtrange Practices and Notions, I will give my Opinion, how I think, in probability, it may be (if poſſible) effected, and ſo ſhall conclude this Treatiſe of *Carolina*.

They are a very craving People, and if a Man give them any thing of a Preſent, they think it obliges him to give them another; and ſo on, till he has given them all he has; for they have no Bounds of Satisfaction in that way; and if they give you any thing, it is to receive twice the Value of it. They have no Conſideration that you will want what you give them; for their way of Living is ſo contrary to ours, that neither we nor they can fathom one anothers Deſigns and Methods. They call Rum and Phyſick by one Name, which implies that Rum make People ſick, as when they have taken any poiſonous Plant; yet they cannot forbear Rum. They make Offerings of their Firſt-Fruits, and the more ſerious ſort of them throw into the Aſhes, near the Fire, the firſt Bit or Spoonful of every Meal they ſit down to, which, they ſay, is the ſame to them, as the pulling off our Hats, and talking, when we go to Victuals, is to us. They name the Months very agreeably, as one is the Herring-Month, another the Strawberry-Month, another the Mulberry-Month. Others name them by the Trees that bloſſom; eſpecially, the Dogwood-Tree; or they ſay, we will return when Turkey-Cocks gobble, that is in *March* and *April*. The Age of the Moon they underſtand, but know no different Name for Sun and Moon. They can gueſs well at the time of the Day, by the Sun's Height. Their Age they number by Winters, and ſay, ſuch a Man or Woman is ſo many Winters old. They have no Sabbath, or Day of Reſt. Their Slaves are not over-burden'd with Work, and ſo not driven by Severity to ſeek for that Relief. Thoſe that are acquainted with the *Engliſh*, and ſpeak the Tongue, know when *Sunday* comes; beſides, the *Indians* have a diſtinct Name for *Chriſtmas* which they call *Winnick Keſhuſe*, or the *Engliſhmans Gods Moon*. There is one moſt abominable Cuſtom amongſt them, which they call *Husquenawing* their young Men; which I have not made

made any Mention of as yet, ſo will give you an Account of it here. You muſt know, that moſt commonly, once a Year, or, at fartheſt, once in two Years, theſe People take up ſo many of their young Men, as they think are able to undergo it, and *huſquenaugh* them, which is to make them obedient and reſpective to their Superiors, and (as they ſay) is the ſame to them, as it is to us to ſend our Children to School, to be taught good Breeding and Letters. This Houſe of Correction is a large ſtrong Cabin, made on purpoſe for the Reception of the young Men and Boys, that have not paſſed this Graduation already; and it is always at *Chriſtmas* that they *huſquenaugh* their Youth, which is by bringing them into this Houſe, and keeping them dark all the time, where they more than half-ſtarve them. Beſides, they give them Pellitory-Bark, and ſeveral intoxicating Plants, that make them go raving mad as ever were any People in the World; and you may hear them make the moſt diſmal and helliſh Cries, and Howlings, that ever humane Creatures expreſs'd; all which continues about five or ſix Weeks, and the little Meat they eat, is the naſtieſt, loathſome ſtuff, and mixt with all manner of Filth it's poſſible to get. After the Time is expired, they are brought out of the Cabin, which never is in the Town, but always a diſtance off, and guarded by a Jaylor or two, who watch by Turns. Now, when they firſt come out, they are as poor as ever any Creatures were; for you muſt know ſeveral die under this diabolical Purgation. Moreover, they either really are, or pretend to be dumb, and do not ſpeak for ſeveral Days; I think, twenty or thirty; and look ſo gaſtly, and are ſo chang'd, that it's next to an Impoſſibility to know them again, although you was never ſo well acquainted with them before. I would fain have gone into the mad Houſe, and have ſeen them in their time of Purgatory, but the King would not ſuffer it, becauſe, he told me, they would do me, or any other white Man, an Injury, that ventured in amongſt them; ſo I deſiſted. They play this Prank with Girls as well as Boys, and I believe it a miſerable Life they endure, becauſe I have known ſeveral of them run away, at that time, to avoid it. Now, the Savages ſay, if it was not for this, they could never keep their Youth in Subjection, beſides that it hardens them ever after to the Fatigues of War, Hunting, and all manner of Hardſhip,

ſhip, which their way of living expoſes them to. Beſides, they add, that it carries off thoſe infirm weak Bodies, that would have been only a Burden and Diſgrace to their Nation, and ſaves the Victuals and Cloathing for better People, that would have been expended on ſuch uſeleſs Creatures. Theſe Savages are deſcribed in their proper Colours, but by a very few; for thoſe that generally write Hiſtories of this new World, are ſuch as Intereſt, Preferment, and Merchandize, drew thither, and know no more of that People than I do of the *Laplanders*, which is only by Hear-ſay. And if we will make juſt Remarks, how near ſuch Relations generally approach Truth and Nicety, we ſhall find very few of them worthy of Entertainment; and as for the other part of the Volume, it is generally ſtufft with Invectives againſt the Government they lived under, on which Stage is commonly acted greater Barbarities, in Murdering worthy Mens Reputations, than all the Savages in the new World are capable of equalizing, or ſo much as imitating.

And ſince I hinted at a Regulation of the Savages, and to propoſe a way to convert them to Chriſtianity, I will firſt particularize the ſeveral Nations of *Indians* that are our Neighbours, and then proceed to what I promis'd.

Tuskeruro Indians are fifteen Towns, *viz. Haruta, Waqui, Contah-nah, Anna Ooka, Conauh-Kare Harooka, Una Nauhan, Kentanuska, Chunaneets, Kenta, Eno, Naur-hegh-ne, Oonoſſoora, Toſneoc, Nonawharitſe, Nurſoorooka*; Fighting Men 1200. *Waccon*. Towns 2, *Tupwauremau, Tooptatmeer*, Fighting Men 120. *Machapunga*, Town 1, *Maramiskeet*, Fighting Men 30. *Bear* River, Town 1, *Raudauqua-quank*, Fighting Men 50. *Maherring Indians*, Town 1, *Maherring* River, Fighting Men 50. *Chuwon Indians*, Town 1, *Bennets* Creek, Fighting Men 15. *Paſpatank Indians*, Town 1, *Paſpatank* River, Fighting Men 10. *Poteskeit*, Town 1, *North* River, Fighting Men 30. *Nottaway Indians*, Town 1, *Winoack* Creek, Fighting Men 30. *Hatteras* Town 1, Sand Banks, Fighting Men 16. *Connamox Indians*, Towns 2, *Coranine, Raruta*, Fighting Men 25. *Neus Indians*, Towns 2, *Chattooka, Rouconk*, Fighting Men 15. *Pampticough Indians*, Town 1, *Iſland*, Fighting Men 15. *Jaupim Indians*, 6 People. Theſe five Nations of the *Totero's, Sapona's, Keiauwee's, Aconechos*, and *Schoccories*, are lately come amongſt us, and may contain, in all, about 750 Men, Women and Children. Total 4780.

Now

Now, there appears to be one thouſand ſix hundred and twelve Fighting Men, of our Neighbouring *Indians*; and probably, there are three Fifths of Women and Children, not including Old Men, which amounts to four thouſand and thirty Savages, beſides the five Nations lately come. Now, as I before hinted, we will ſee what grounds there are to make theſe People ſerviceable to us, and better themſelves thereby.

On a fair Scheme, we muſt firſt allow theſe Savages what really belongs to them, that is, what good Qualities, and natural Endowments, they poſſeſs, whereby they being in their proper Colours, the Event may be better gueſs'd at, and fathom'd.

Firſt, they are as apt to learn any Handicraft, as any People that the World affords; I will except none; as is ſeen by their Canoes and Stauking Heads, which they make of themſelves; but to my purpoſe, the *Indian* Slaves in South *Carolina*, and elſewhere, make my Argument good.

Secondly, we have no diſciplin'd Men in *Europe*, but what have, at one time or other, been branded with Mutining, and Murmuring againſt their Chiefs. Theſe Savages are never found guilty of that great Crime in a Soldier; I challenge all Mankind to tell me of one Inſtance of it; beſides, they never prove Traitors to their Native Country, but rather chuſe Death than partake and ſide with the Enemy.

They naturally poſſeſs the Righteous Man's Gift; they are Patient under all Afflictions, and have a great many other Natural Vertues, which I have ſlightly touch'd throughout the Account of theſe Savages.

They are really better to us, than we are to them; they always give us Victuals at their Quarters, and take care we are arm'd againſt Hunger and Thirſt: We do not ſo by them (generally ſpeaking) but let them walk by our Doors Hungry, and do not often relieve them. We look upon them with Scorn and Diſdain, and think them little better than Beaſts in Humane Shape, though if well examined, we ſhall find that, for all our Religion and Education, we poſſeſs more Moral Deformities, and Evils than theſe Savages do, or are acquainted withal.

We reckon them Slaves in Compariſon to us, and Intruders, as oft as they enter our Houſes, or hunt near our Dwel-

Dwellings. But if we will admit Reaſon to be our Guide, ſhe will inform us, that theſe *Indians* are the freeſt People in the World, and ſo far from being Intruders upon us, that we have abandon'd our own Native Soil, to drive them out, and poſſeſs theirs; neither have we any true Balance, in Judging of theſe poor Heathens, becauſe we neither give Allowance for their Natural Diſpoſition, nor the Sylvian Education, and ſtrange Cuſtoms, (uncouth to us) they lie under and have ever been train'd up to; theſe are falſe Meaſures for Chriſtians to take, and indeed no Man can be reckon'd a Moraliſt only, who will not make choice and uſe, of better Rules to walk and act by: We trade with them, it's true, but to what End? Not to ſhew them the Steps of Vertue, and the Golden Rule, to do as we would be done by. No, we have furniſhed them with the Vice of Drunkenneſs, which is the open Road to all others, and daily cheat them in every thing we ſell, and eſteem it a Gift of Chriſtianity, not to ſell to them ſo cheap as we do to the Chriſtians, as we call our ſelves. Pray let me know where is there to be found one Sacred Command or Precept of our Maſter, that counſels us to ſuch Behaviour? Beſides, I believe it will not appear, but that all the Wars, which we have had with the Savages, were occaſion'd by the unjuſt Dealings of the Chriſtians towards them. I can name more than a few, which my own Enquiry has given me a right Underſtanding of, and I am afraid the remainder (if they come to the teſt) will prove themſelves Birds of the ſame Feather.

Indians *Averſion to Chriſtianity.*

As we are in Chriſtian Duty bound, ſo we muſt act and behave ourſelves to theſe Savages, if we either intend to be ſerviceable in converting them to the Knowledge of the Goſpel, or diſcharge the Duty which every Man, within the Pale of the Chriſtian Church, is bound to do. Upon this Score, we ought to ſhew a Tenderneſs for theſe Heathens under the weight of Infidelity; let us cheriſh their good Deeds, and, with Mildneſs and Clemency, make them ſenſible and forwarn them of their ill ones; let our Dealings be juſt to them in every Reſpect, and ſhew no ill Example, whereby they may think we adviſe them to practiſe that which we will not be conformable to ourſelves: Let them have cheap Penniworths (without Guile in our Trading with them) and learn them the Myſteries of our Handicrafts, as well as our

Re-

Religion, otherwise we deal unjustly by them. But it is highly necessary to be brought in Practice, which is, to give Encouragement to the ordinary People, and those of a lower Rank, that they might marry with these *Indians*, and come into Plantations, and Houses, where so many Acres of Land and some Gratuity of Money, (out of a publick Stock) are given to the new-married Couple; and that the *Indians* might have Encouragement to send their Children Apprentices to proper Masters, that would be kind to them, and make them Masters of a Trade, whereby they would be drawn to live amongst us, and become Members of the same Ecclesiastical and Civil Government we are under; then we should have great Advantages to make daily Conversions amongst them, when they saw that we were kind and just to them in all our Dealings. Moreover, by the *Indians* Marrying with the Christians, and coming into Plantations with their *English* Husbands, or Wives, they would become Christians, and their Idolatry would be quite forgotten, and, in all probability, a better Worship come in its Stead; for were the *Jews* engrafted thus, and alienated from the Worship and Conversation of *Jews*, their Abominations would vanish, and be no more.

Thus we should be let into a better Understanding of the *Indian* Tongue, by our new Converts; and the whole Body of these People would arrive to the Knowledge of our Religion and Customs, and become as one People with us. By this Method also, we should have a true Knowledge of all the *Indians* Skill in Medicine and Surgery; they would inform us of the Situation of our Rivers, Lakes, and Tracts of Land in the Lords Dominions, where by their Assistance, greater Discoveries may be made than has been hitherto found out, and by their Accompanying us in our Expeditions, we might civilize a great many other Nations of the Savages, and daily add to our Strength in Trade, and Interest; so that we might be sufficiently enabled to conquer, or maintain our Ground, against all the Enemies to the Crown of *England* in *America*, both Christian and Savage.

What Children we have of theirs, to learn Trades, *&c.* ought to be put into those Hands that are Men of the best Lives and Characters, and that are not only strict Observers of their Religion, but also of a mild, winning and sweet Disposition, that these *Indian* Parents may often go and see how

well their Children are dealt with, which would much win them to our Ways of Living, Mildneſs being a Vertue the *Indians* are in love withal, for they do not practiſe beating and correcting their Children, as we do. A general Complaint is, that it ſeems impoſſible to convert theſe People to Chriſtianity, as, at firſt ſight, it does; and as for thoſe in *New Spain*, they have the Prayer of that Church in Latin by Rote, and know the external Behaviour at Maſs and Sermons; yet ſcarce any of them are ſteady and abide with conſtancy in good Works, and the Duties of the Chriſtian Church. We find that the *Fuentes* and ſeveral other of the noted *Indian* Families about *Mexico*, and in other parts of *New Spain*, had given ſeveral large Gifts to the Altar, and outwardly ſeem'd fond of their new Religion; yet thoſe that were the greateſt Zealots outwards, on a ſtrict Enquiry, were found guilty of Idolatry and Witchcraft; and this ſeems to proceed from their Cohabiting, which, as I have noted before, gives Opportunities of Cabals to recal their ancient priſtine Infidelity and Superſtitions. They never argue againſt our Religion, but with all imaginable Indifference own, that it is moſt proper for us that have been brought up in it.

In my opinion, it's better for Chriſtians of a mean Fortune to marry with the Civiliz'd *Indians*, than to ſuffer the Hardſhips of four or five years Servitude, in which they meet with Sickneſs and Seaſonings amidſt a Crowd of other Afflictions, which the Tyranny of a bad Maſter lays upon ſuch poor Souls, all which thoſe acquainted with our Tobacco Plantations are not Strangers to.

This ſeems to be a more reaſonable Method of converting the *Indians*, than to ſet up our Chriſtian Banner in a Field of Blood, as the *Spaniards* have done in *New Spain*, and baptize one hundred with the Sword for one at the Font. Whilſt we make way for a Chriſtian Colony through a Field of Blood, and defraud, and make away with thoſe that one day may be wanted in this World, and in the next appear againſt us, we make way for a more potent Chriſtian Enemy to invade us hereafter, of which we may repent, when too late.

THE

THE SECOND

CHARTER

Granted by

King *CHARLES* II.

TO THE

PROPRIETORS

OF

CAROLINA.

CHARLES II. by the Grace of God, *&c.* Whereas by Our Letters Patents, bearing Date the Four and Twentieth Day of *March*, in the Fifteenth Year of Our Reign, We were Graciously Pleas'd to Grant unto Our right Trusty, and right Well-beloved Cousin and Counsellor *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, our High Chancellor of *England*, Our right Trusty, and right entirely Beloved Cousin and Counsellor, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, Master of our Horse, Our right Trusty and Well Beloved *William*, now Earl of *Craven*, our right Trusty and well-beloved Counsellor, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, our right Trusty, and well-beloved Counsellor, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Chancellor of our Exchequer, our right Trusty and Well-beloved Counsellor Sir *George Carteret* Knight and Baronet, Vice-Chamberlain of

our Houſhold, Our right Truſty and well-beloved, Sir *John Colleton* Knight and Baronet, and Sir *William Berkeley* Knight, all that Province, Territory, or Tract of Ground, called *Carolina*, ſituate, lying and being within our Dominions of *America*, Extending from the *North* End of the Iſland, called *Luke Iſland*, which lyeth in the *Southern Virginia* Seas, and within ſix and thirty Degrees of the *Northern* Latitude; and to the *Weſt*, as far as the *South* Seas; and ſo reſpectively as far as the River of *Mathias*, which bordereth upon the Coaſt of *Florida*, and within One and Thirty Degrees of the *Northern* Latitude, and ſo *Weſt* in a direct Line, as far as the *South* Seas aforeſaid.

Now, know Ye, that We, at the Humble Requeſt of the ſaid Grandees in the aforeſaid Letters Patents named, and as a farther Mark of Our eſpecial Favour towards them, We are Graciouſly Pleaſed to Enlarge Our ſaid Grant unto them, according to the Bounds and Limits hereafter Specifyed, and in Favour to the Pious and Noble Purpoſe of the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, all that Province, Territory, or Tract of Ground, ſituate, lying, and being within Our Dominions of *America* aforeſaid, extending *North* and *Weſtward*, as far as the *North* End of *Carahtuke* River, or *Gulet*, upon a ſtreight *Weſterly* Line, to *Wyonoake* Creek, which lies within, or about the Degrees of Thirty Six, and Thirty Minutes *Northern* Latitude, and ſo *Weſt*, in a direct Line, as far as the *South* Seas, and *South* and *Weſtward*, as far as the Degrees of Twenty Nine Incluſive *Northern* Latitude, and ſo *Weſt* in a direct Line, as far as the *South* Seas; together with all and ſingular Ports, Harbours, Bays, Rivers and Iſlets, belonging unto the Province or Territory, aforeſaid. And alſo, all the Soil, Lands, Fields, Woods, Mountains, Ferms. Lakes, Rivers, Bays and Iſlets, ſituate, or being within the Bounds, or Limits, laſt before mentioned; with the Fiſhing of all ſorts of Fiſh, *Whales*, *Sturgeons*, and all other Royal Fiſhes in the Sea, Bays, Iſlets and Rivers, within the Premiſes, and the Fiſh therein taken; together with the Royalty of the Sea, upon the Coaſt within the Limits aforeſaid. And moreover, all Veins, Mines

and

and Quarries, as well diſcovered as not diſcover'd, of Gold, Silver, Gems and Precious Stones, and all other whatſoever; be it of Stones, Metal, or any other thing found, or to be found within the Province, Territory, Iſlets and Limits aforeſaid.

And furthermore, the Patronage and Advowſons of all the Churches and Chappels, which as the Chriſtian Religion ſhall encreaſe within the Province, Territory, Iſles and Limits aforeſaid, ſhall happen hereafter to be erected; together with Licence and Power to build and found Churches, Chappels and Oratories in convenient and fit places, within the ſaid Bounds and Limits; and to cauſe them to be Dedicated and Conſecrated, according to the Eccleſiaſtical Laws of Our Kingdom of *England*; together with all and ſingular, the like, and as ample Rights, Juriſdictions, Privileges, Prerogatives, Royalties, Liberties, Immunities and Franchiſes, of what Kind ſoever, within the Territory, Iſles, Iſlets and Limits aforeſaid. To have, hold, uſe, exerciſe and enjoy the ſame, as amply, fully, and in as ample Manner, as any Biſhop of *Durham* in Our Kingdom of *England*, ever heretofore had, held, uſed, or enjoyed, or of right ought, or could have, uſe, or enjoy; and them the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns; We do by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, make, create and conſtitute the true and abſolute Lords and Proprietors of the ſaid Province, or Territory, and of all other the Premiſes, ſaving always the Faith, Allegiance and Sovereign Dominion due to Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, for the ſame; to have, hold, poſſeſs and enjoy the ſaid Province, Territory, Iſlets, and all and ſingular, other the Premiſes, to them the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, for Ever, to be holden of Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, as of Our Mannor of *Eaſt Greenwich*, in *Kent*, in free and common Soccage, and not in *Capite*, or by *Knights Service*, yielding and paying yearly to Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, for the ſame, the fourth Part of all Goods and Silver Oar, which within the Limits hereby Granted, ſhall

ſhall from Time to Time, happen to be found, over and beſides the Yearly Rent of Twenty Marks and the fourth part of the Gold and Silver Oar, in and by the ſaid recited Letters Patents reſerved and payable.

And that the Province, or Territory hereby granted and deſcribed, may be dignifyed with as large Titles and Privileges, as any other Parts of our Dominions and Territories in that Region; Know ye, That We, of our farther Grace, certain Knowledge and meer Motion, have thought fit to annex the ſame Tract of Ground and Territory, unto the ſame Province of *Carolina*; and out of the Fulneſs of our Royal Power and Prerogative, We do for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, annex and unite the ſame to the ſaid Province of *Carolina*. And foraſmuch as We have made and ordained the aforeſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, the true Lords and Proprietors of all the Province or Territory aforeſaid; Know ye therefore moreover, that We repoſing eſpecial Truſt and Confidence in their Fidelity, Wiſdom, Juſtice and provident Circumſpection for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do grant full and abſolute Power, by virtue of theſe Preſents, to them the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Catterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, and their Heirs and Aſſigns, for the good and happy Government of the ſaid whole Province or Territory, full Power and Authority to erect, conſtitute, and make ſeveral Counties, Baronies, and Colonies, of and within the ſaid Provinces, Territories, Lands and Hereditaments, in and by the ſaid recited Letters Patents, and theſe Preſents, granted, or mentioned to be granted, as aforeſaid, with ſeveral and diſtinct Juriſdictions, Powers, Liberties and Privileges. And alſo, to ordain, make and enact, and under their Seals, to publiſh any Laws and Conſtitutions whatſoever, either appertaining to the publick State of the ſaid whole Province or Territory, or of any diſtinct or particular County, Barony or Colony, of or within the ſame, or to the private Utility of particular Perſons, according to their beſt Diſcretion, by and with the Advice, Aſſent and Approbation of the Freemen of the ſaid Province

vince or Territory, or of the Freemen of the County, Barony or Colony, for which such Law or Constitution shall be made, or the greatest Part of them, or of their Delegates or Deputies, whom for enacting of the said Laws, when, and as often as need shall require, We will that the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, and their Heirs or Assigns, shall from Time to Time, assemble in such Manner and Form as to them shall seem best: And the same Laws duly to execute upon all People within the said Province or Territory, County, Barony or Colony, and the Limits thereof, for the Time being, which shall be constituted under the Power and Government of them, or any of them, either sailing towards the said Province or Territory of *Carolina*, or returning from thence towards *England*, or any other of our, or foreign Dominions, by Imposition of Penalties, Imprisonment, or any other Punishment: Yea, if it shall be needful, and the Quality of the Offence require it, by taking away Member and Life, either by them, the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, and their Heirs, or by them or their Deputies, Lieutenants, Judges, Justices, Magistrates, or Officers whatsoever, as well within the said Province, as at Sea, in such Manner and Form, as unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, and their Heirs, shall seem most convenient: Also, to remit, release, pardon and abolish, whether before Judgment or after, all Crimes and Offences whatsoever, against the said Laws; and to do all and every other Thing and Things, which unto the compleat Establishment of Justice, unto Courts, Sessions and Forms of Judicature, and Manners of proceedings therein, do belong, altho' in these Presents, express Mention is not made thereof; and by Judges, to him or them delegated to award, process, hold Please, and determine in all the said Courts and Places of Judicature, all Actions, Suits and Causes whatsoever, as well criminal as civil, real, mixt, personal, or of any other Kind or Nature whatsoever:

ſoever: Which Laws ſo as aforeſaid, to be publiſhed, Our Pleaſure is, and We do enjoyn, require and command, ſhall be abſolutely firm and available in Law; and that all the Leige People of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, within the ſaid Province or Territory, do obſerve and keep the ſame inviolably in thoſe Parts, ſo far as they concern them, under the Pains and Penalties therein expreſſed; or to be expreſſed; provided nevertheleſs, that the ſaid Laws be conſonant to Reaſon, and as near as may be conveniently, agreeable to the Laws and Cuſtoms of this our Realm of *England*.

And becauſe ſuch Aſſemblies of Free-holders cannot be ſo ſuddenly called, as there may be Occaſion to require the ſame; We do therefore by theſe Preſents, give and grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, by themſelves or their Magiſtrates in that Behalf, lawfully authorized, full Power and Authority from Time to Time, to make and ordain fit and wholſome Orders and Ordinances, within the Province or Territory aforeſaid, or any County, Barony or Province, of or within the ſame, to be kept and obſerved, as well for the keeping of the Peace, as for the better Government of the People there abiding, and to publiſh the ſame to all to whom it may concern: Which Ordinances we do, by theſe Preſents, ſtreightly charge and command to be inviolably obſerved within the ſame Province, Counties, Territories, Baronies, and Provinces, under the Penalties therein expreſſed; ſo as ſuch Ordinances be reaſonable and not repugnant or contrary, but as near as may be agreeable to the Laws and Statutes of this our Kingdom of *England*; and ſo as the ſame Ordinances do not extend to the binding, charging or taking away of the Right or Intereſt of any Perſon or Perſons, in their freehold Goods, or Chattels, whatſoever.

And to the end the ſaid Province or Territory, may be the more happily encreaſed by the Multitude of People reſorting thither, and may likewiſe be the more ſtrongly defended from the Incurſions of Savages and other Enemies, Pirates, and Robbers.

There-

Therefore, We for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give and grant by theſe Preſents, Power, Licenſe and Liberty unto all the Leige People of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors in our Kingdom of *England*, or elſewhere, within any other our Dominions, Iſlands, Colonies or Plantations, (excepting thoſe who ſhall be eſpecially forbidden) to tranſport themſelves and Families into the ſaid Province or Territory, with convenient Shipping, and fitting Proviſions; and there to ſettle themſelves, dwell and inhabit, any Law, Act, Statute, Ordinance, or other Thing to the contrary in any wiſe, notwithſtanding.

And we will alſo, and of Our eſpecial Grace, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do ſtreightly enjoyn, ordain, conſtitute and demand, That the ſaid Province or Territory, ſhall be of our Allegiance; and that all and ſingular, the Subjects and Leige People of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, tranſported, or to be tranſported into the ſaid Province, and the Children of them, and ſuch as ſhall deſcend from them, there born, or hereafter to be born, be, and ſhall be Denizens and Lieges of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors of this our Kingdom of *England*, and be in all Things, held, treated and reputed as the Liege faithful People of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, born within this our ſaid Kingdom, or any other of our Dominions; and may inherit, or otherwiſe purchaſe and receive, take, hold, buy and poſſeſs any Lands, Tenements or Hereditaments, within the ſaid Places, and them may occupy, and enjoy, ſell, alien and bequeath; as likewiſe, all Liberties, Franchiſes and Privileges of this our Kingdom, and of other our Dominions aforeſaid, may freely and quietly have, poſſeſs and enjoy, as our Liege People born within the ſame, without the Moleſtation, Vexation, Trouble or Grievance of Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, any Act, Statute, Ordinance, or Proviſion to the contrary, notwithſtanding.

And furthermore, That Our Subjects of this Our ſaid Kingdom of *England*, and other our Dominions, may be the rather encouraged to undertake this Expedition, with ready and chearful Minds; Know Ye, That We, of Our eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge and meer Motion, do give and grant, by virtue of theſe Preſents, as well to the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carteret*,

Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, and their Heirs, as unto all others as ſhall, from time to time, repair unto the ſaid Province or Territory, with a Purpoſe to inhabit there, or to trade with the Natives thereof; Full Liberty and Licenſe to lade and freight in every Port whatſoever, of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors; and into the ſaid Province of *Carolina*, by them, their Servants and Aſſigns, to tranſport all and ſingular, their Goods, Wares and Merchandizes; as likewiſe, all ſort of Grain whatſoever, and any other Thing whatſoever, neceſſary for their Food and Cloathing, not prohibited by the Laws and Statutes of our Kingdom and Dominions, to be carried out of the ſame, without any Lett or Moleſtation of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, or of any other our Officers or Miniſters whatſoever; ſaving alſo to Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, the Cuſtoms, and other Duties and Payments due for the ſaid Wares and Merchandizes, according to the ſeveral Rates of the Place from whence the ſame ſhall be tranſported.

We will alſo, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give and grant Licenſe by this our Charter, unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, and to all the Inhabitants and Dwellers in the Province or Territory aforeſaid, both preſent and to come, full Power and Authority to import or unlade by themſelves, or their Servants, Factors or Aſſigns, all Merchandizes and Goods whatſoever, that ſhall ariſe of the Fruits and Commodities of the ſaid Province or Territory, either by Land or Sea, into any the Ports of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, in our Kingdom of *Engl. Scotl.* or *Ireland*, or otherwiſe, to diſpoſe of the ſaid Goods, in the ſaid Ports. And if need be, within one year next after the unlading, to lade the ſaid Merchandizes and Goods again in the ſame, or other Ships; and to export the ſame into any other Countries, either of our Dominins or foreign, being in Amity with Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, ſo as they pay ſuch Cuſtoms, Subſidies and other Duties for the ſame to Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, as the reſt of our Subjects of this our Kingdom, for the Time being, ſhall be bound to pay. Beyond which We will not that the Inhabitants of the ſaid Province or Territory, ſhall be any ways charged. Provided, nevertheleſs, and our Will and Pleaſure is, and we have further,

ther, for the Conſiderations aforeſaid, of our ſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge and meer Motion, given and granted, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give and grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, full and free Licenſe, Liberty, Power and Authority, at any Time or Times, from and after the Feaſt of St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, which ſhall be in the Year of our Lord Chriſt, One Thouſand, Six Hundred, Sixty and Seven; as well to import and bring into any our Dominions from the ſaid Province of *Carolina*, or any Part thereof, the ſeveral Goods and Commodities herein after mentioned; That is to ſay, Silks, Wines, Currants, Raiſons, Capers, Wax, Almonds, Oil and Olives, without paying or anſwering to Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, any Cuſtom, Impoſt, or other Duty, for, or in reſpect thereof, for and during the Time and Space of Seven Years to commence and be accompted from and after the firſt Importation of Four Tons of any the ſaid Goods, in any one Bottom Ship or Veſſel, from the ſaid Province or Territory, into any of our Dominions; as alſo, to export and carry out of any of our Dominions into the ſaid Province or Territory, Cuſtom-free, all ſorts of Tools, which ſhall be uſeful or neceſſary for the Planters there, in the Accommodation and Improvement of the Premiſes, any thing before in theſe Preſents contained, or any Law, Act, Statute, Prohibition, or other Matter or Thing, heretofore had, made, enacted or provided, or hereafter to be had, made, enacted or provided, in any wiſe notwithſtanding.

And furthermore, of our more ample and eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge and meer Motion, We do for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *Will. Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, full and abſolute Power and Authority to make, erect and conſtitute within the ſaid Province or Territory, and the Iſles and Iſlets aforeſaid, ſuch and ſo many Sea-Ports, Harbours, Creeks and other Places for diſcharge and unlading of Goods and Merchandizes out of Ships, Boats, and other Veſſels, and for lading of them in ſuch and ſo many Places, as with ſuch Juriſdictions,

Privileges and Franchiſes, unto the ſaid Ports belonging, as to them ſhall ſeem moſt expedient; And that all and ſingular, the Ships, Boats and other Veſſels, which ſhall come for Merchandizes, and trade into the ſaid Province or Territory, or ſhall depart out of the ſame, ſhall be laden and unladen at ſuch Ports only, as ſhall be erected and conſtitued by the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, and not elſewhere, any Uſe, Cuſtom, or any thing to the contrary in any wiſe notwithſtanding.

And we do furthermore will, appoint and ordain, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, That they the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, may from Time to Time, for ever, have and enjoy the Cuſtoms and Subſidies in the Ports, Harbours, Creeks and other Places, within the Province aforeſaid, payable for the Goods, Merchandizes and Wares there laded, or to be laded or unladed, the ſaid Cuſtoms to be reaſonably aſſeſſed upon any Occaſion by themſelves, and by and with the Conſent of the free People, or the greater Part of them, as aforeſaid; to whom We give Power by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, upon juſt Cauſe and in a due Proportion to aſſeſs and impoſe the ſame.

And further, of our eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge and meer Motion, we have given, granted and confirmed, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give, grant and confirm unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, full and abſolute Power, Licenſe and Authority, that they the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*,

Ashley, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, from Time to Time, hereafter for ever, at his and their Will and Pleasure, may assign, alien, grant, demise or enfeoff the Premises or any Part or Parcel thereof to him or them, that shall be willing to purchase the same; and to such Person and Persons, as they shall think fit, to have, and to hold to them the said Person or Persons, their Heirs and Assigns, in Fee simple or in Fee Tayle, or for the Term of Life or Lives, or Years to be held of them, the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, by such Rents, Services and Customs, as shall seem fit to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, and not of Us, our Heirs and Successors: And to the same Person and Persons, and to all and every of them, We do give and grant by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, License, Authority and Power, that such Person or Persons, may have and take the Premises, or any Parcel thereof, of the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, and the same to hold to themselves, their Heirs or Assigns, in what Estate of Inheritance soever, in Fee simple, or in Fee Tayle, or otherwise, as to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, shall seem expedient; The Statute in the Parliament of *Edward*, Son of King *Henry*, heretofore King of *England*, our Predecessor, commonly called, The Statute of *Quia Emptores Terrar*; or any other Statute, Act, Ordinance, Use, Law, Custom, any other Matter, Cause or Thing heretofore published or provided to the contrary, in any wise notwithstanding.

And because many Persons born and inhabiting in the said Province for their Deserts and Services may expect, and be capable of Marks of Honour and Favour, which, in respect of

of the great Distance cannot conveniently be conferred by Us; our Will and Pleasure therefore is, and We do by these Presents, give and grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, full Power and Authority to give and confer unto, and upon such of the Inhabitants of the said Province, or Territory, as they shall think, do, or shall merit the same, such Marks of Favour, and Titles of Honour, as they shall think fit, so as their Titles of Honours be not the same as are enjoyed by, or conferred upon any of the Subjects of this Our Kingdom of *England*.

And further also, We do by these Presents, for Us, Our Heirs and Successors, give and Grant, License to them the *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Assigns, full Power, Liberty and License, to Erect, Raise and Build within the said Province and Places aforesaid, or any Part or Parts thereof, such and so many Forts, Fortresses, Castles, Cities, Boroughs, Towns, Villages and other Fortifications whatsoever; and the same or any of them to Fortify and Furnish with Ordnance, Powder, Shot, Armour and all other Weapons, Ammunition and Habiliments of War, both Defensive and Offensive, as shall be thought fit and convenient for the Safety and Welfare of the said Province, and Places, or any Part thereof; and the same, or any of them, from Time to Time, as Occasion shall require, to Dismantle, Disfurnish, Demolish and Pull down; And also to Place, Constitute and Appoint in, or over all, or any of the said Castles, Forts, Fortifications, Cities, Towns and Places aforesaid, Governours, Deputy Governours, Magistrates, Sheriffs and other Officers, Civil and Military, as to them shall seem meet; and to the said Cities, Boroughs, Towns, Villages, or any other Place or Places, within the said Province or Territory, to Grant Letters or Charters of Incorporation, with all Liberties, Franchises and Privileges requisite, or usual, to, or within this our Kingdom of *England* granted, or belonging; And in the same Cities, Boroughs, Towns and other Places, to Constitute, Erect and Appoint such, and so many Markets, Marts and Fairs,

Fairs as shall in that Behalf be thought fit and necessary; And further also, to Erect and Make in the Province or Territory aforesaid, or any Part thereof, so many Mannors with such Signories as to them shall seem meet and convenient, and in every of the same Mannors to have and to hold a Court-Baron, with all Things whatsoever, which to a Court-Baron do belong, and to have and to hold Views of Frank Pledge, and Court-Leet, for the Conservation of the Peace, and better Government of those Parts, with such Limits, Jurisdiction and Precincts, as by the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, or their Heirs, shall be appointed for that purpose, with all things whatsoever, which to a Court-Leet, or view of Frank Pledge, do belong; the same Courts to be holden by Stewards, to be Deputed and Authorized by the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, or their Heirs, by the Lords of the Mannors and Leets, for the Time being, when the same shall be Erected.

And because that in so remote a Country, and Situate among so many Barbarous Nations, the Invasions as well of Savages as other Enemies, Pirates, and Robbers may probably be feared; Therefore We have Given, and for Us, Our Heirs and Successors do give Power by these Presents, unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs or Assigns by themselves, or their Captains, or their Officers to Levy, Muster and Train up all sorts of Men of what Condition soever, or wheresoever Born, whether in the said Province, or elsewhere, for the Time being; and to make War and pursue the Enemies aforesaid, as well by Sea, as by Land; yea, even without the Limits of the said Province, and by God's Assistance, to Vanquish and Take them, and being Taken, to put them to Death by the Law of War, and to save them at their Pleasure; And to do all and every other thing, which to the Charge and Office of a Captain General of an Army belongeth, or hath accustomed

ſtoned to belong, as fully and freely as any Captain General of an Army hath had the ſame.

Alſo, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by this Our Charter, We do give and grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, full Power, Liberty and Authority, in Caſe of Rebellion, Tumult, or Sedition (if any ſhould happen, which God forbid) either upon the Land within the Province aforeſaid, or upon the main Sea, in making a Voyage thither, or returning from thence, by him and themſelves, their Captains, Deputies or Officers, to be authorized under his or their Seals, for that purpoſe: To whom alſo for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do give and grant by theſe Preſents, full Power and Authority to exerciſe Martial Law againſt mutinous and ſeditious Perſons of thoſe Parts; ſuch as ſhall refuſe to ſubmit themſelves to their Government, or ſhall refuſe to ſerve in the Wars, or ſhall fly to the Enemy, or forſake their Colours or Enſigns, or be Loiterers or Stragglers, or otherwiſe howſoever offending againſt Law, Cuſtom, or Military Diſcipline, as freely, and in as ample Manner and Form as any Captain General of an Army, by virtue of his Office, might, or hath accuſtomed to uſe the ſame.

And Our further Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, and to the Tenants and Inhabitants of the ſaid Province, or Territory, both preſent and to come, and to every of them, that the ſaid Province, or Territory, and the Tenants and Inhabitants thereof, ſhall not from henceforth, be held or reputed any Member, or Part of any Colony whatſoever, in *America* or elſewhere, now tranſported or made, or hereafter to be tranſported or made; nor ſhall be depending on, or ſubject to their Government in any Thing, but be abſolutely ſeparated and divided from the ſame: And our Pleaſure is, by theſe Preſents, That they may be ſeparated, and that they be ſubject im-

immediately to our Crown of *England*, as depending thereof for ever. And that the Inhabitants of the ſaid Province or Territory, or any of them, ſhall at any Time hereafter, be compelled or compellible, or be any ways ſubject, or liable to appear or anſwer to any Matter, Suit, Cauſe, or Plaint whatſoever, out of the Province or Territory aforeſaid, in any other of our Iſlands, Colonies or Dominions in *America*, or elſewhere, other than in our Realm of *England* and Dominion of *Wales*.

And becauſe it may happen, That ſome of the People and Inhabitants of the ſaid Province, cannot in their private Opinions conform to the Publick Exerciſe of Religion according to the Liturgy, Forms and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, or take or ſubſcribe the Oaths and Articles made and eſtabliſhed in that Behalf: And for that the ſame, by reaſon of the remote Diſtances of thoſe Places, will, as we hope, be no Breach of the Unity, and Conformity, Eſtabliſhed in this Nation; Our Will and Pleaſure therefore is, and We do by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs, and Succeſſors, Give and Grant unto the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, full and free Licence, Liberty and Authority, by ſuch Ways and Means as they ſhall think fit, To Give and Grant unto ſuch Perſon any Perſons, Inhabiting, and being within the ſaid Province or Territory, hereby or by the ſaid recited Letters Patents, mentioned to be granted as aforeſaid, or any Part thereof, ſuch Indulgencies and Diſpenſations, in that Behalf, for, and during ſuch Time and Times, and with ſuch Limitations and Reſtrictions, as they the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs, or Aſſigns, ſhall in their Diſcretion think fit and reaſonable. And that no Perſon or Perſons, unto whom ſuch Liberty ſhall be given, ſhall be any way moleſted, puniſhed, diſquieted, or called in queſtion for any Differences in Opinion or Practice, in Matters of Religious Concernment, who do not actually diſturb the civil Peace of the Province, County or Colony, that they ſhall make their abode in. But all and every ſuch Perſon and

Perſons, may from Time to Time, and at all Times, freely and quietly have and enjoy his and their Judgment and Conſciences, in Matters of Religion, throughout all the ſaid Province, or Colony, they behaving themſelves peaceably, and not uſing this Liberty to Licentiouſneſs, nor to the Civil Injury or outward Diſturbance of others. Any Law, Statute or Clauſe contained, or to be contained, Uſage or Cuſtoms of our Realm of *England* to the contrary hereof in any wiſe, notwithſtanding.

And in Caſe it ſhall happen, that any Doubts or Queſtions ſhould ariſe concerning the True Senſe and Underſtanding of any Word, Clauſe, or Sentence, contained in this Our preſent Charter, We Will, Ordain, and Command, that at all Times, and in all Things, ſuch Interpretations be made thereof, and allow'd in all and every of Our Courts whatſoever, as Lawfully may be Adjudged moſt Advantageous and Favourable to the ſaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkeley*, their Heirs and Aſſigns, although Expreſs Mention, *&c.*

Witneſs our Self at *Weſtminſter*, the Thirtieth Day of *June*, in the Seventeenth Year of our Reign.

Per Ipſum Regem.

AN

AN ABSTRACT OF THE CONSTITUTION OF CAROLINA.

AS to the Government of *Carolina*, the Laws of *England* are there in Force; yet the Lords-Proprietors, by their Deputies, have Power, with the Consent of the Inhabitants, to make By-Laws for the better Government of the ſaid Province; ſo that no Law can be made, or Money rais'd, unleſs the Inhabitants, or their Repreſentatives, conſent thereto: One Law which they have in South-*Carolina* deſerves particular Mention, which is, their Method of chuſing Juries, it being done by making a conſiderable Number of Paper-Billets, on which are written the Names of as many of the moſt ſubſtantial Freeholders. Theſe Billets are put into a Hat, out of which Twenty-four are choſen by the next Child that appears. Then, out of thoſe Twenty-four, Twelve are choſen at the next Court, after the ſame manner; which is an infallible way to prevent all Manner of Fraud.

North and South-*Carolina* Settlements are diſtant from one another ſome hundreds of Miles; ſo that Neceſſity compels each Colony to keep to themſelves, a Governour, Council and Aſſembly. The Governor repreſents the Lord-Palatine; the reſt of the Counſellors are the Lord-Deputies; who, of themſelves, make a Palatines Court, and a Court of Chancery; wherein they paſs ſeveral Orders of Council, much of the Nature of the Prince's Proclamation; which continues no longer in Force, than the next Aſſembly. Likewiſe, they grant ſeveral ſorts of Commiſſions, Warrants, *&c.* yet Military Commiſſions lie wholly in the Governor's Power; but Making of War or Peace, in all, or the Majority of the Lords-Deputies; by whom (the Governor being one) it is determin'd, and by whoſe Commiſſions all other Magiſtrates act. On theſe Heads they have ſettled, and maintain an admirable Conſtitution of Government, for the laſting Peace, Security, and Well-being of all the Inhabitants. The way of any ones taking up his Land in *Carolina*, due to him either by Purchaſing it of the Lords Proprietors here in *England*, who keep their Board at *Craven-Houſe* in *Drury-Lane*, *London*, the firſt *Thurſday* in every Month; or if purchas'd in *Carolina*, is after this manner: He firſt looks out for a Place to his Mind, that is not already poſſeſs'd by any other; then applies himſelf to the Governor and Lords Proprietors Deputies, and ſhews what Right he hath to ſuch a Tract of Land, either by Purchaſe of the Lords in *England*, or by an Entry in the Surveyor-General's Office, in order to purchaſe of the Governor and Lords Deputies there in *Carolina*, who thereupon iſſue out their Warrant-Land as is due to him. Who making Certificate, that he had meaſured out ſo much Land and the Bounds, a Deed is prepared of Courſe, by the Secretary, which is ſign'd by the Governor and the Lords Proprietors Deputies, and the Proprietors Seal affix'd to it, and regiſter'd in the Secretaries Office, which is a good Coveyance in Law of the Land therein mention'd, to the Party and his Heirs for ever.

Thus have I given you as large and exact an Account of *Carolina*, as the Diſcovery of ſo few Years (in this great and

and extenſive Land) would permit. Which flouriſhing Country will, doubtleſs, in time, increaſe the Number of its Productions, and afford us plentifully thoſe Neceſſaries and rich Commodities, which the *Streights*, *Turky* and other Countries ſupply us withal at preſent, and not ſeldom in their own Shipping; whereas, were thoſe Merchandizes the Produce of an *Engliſh* Plantation, and brought us home by our own Hands and Bottoms, of what Advantage ſuch an Improvement would be to the Crown of *Great-Britain*, and the People in general, I leave to Men of Reaſon and Experience to judge. I do intend (if God permit) by future Voyages (after my Arrival in *Carolina*) to pierce into the Body of the Continent, and what Diſcoveries and Obſervations I ſhall, at any time hereafter, make, will be communicated to my Correſpondents in *England*, to be publiſh'd, having furniſh'd myſelf with Inſtruments and other Neceſſaries for ſuch Voyages.

For the better Underſtanding of this Country, I have already drawn a very large and exact Map thereof, as far as any Diſcoveries have been yet made, either by others or my ſelf, and have ſpared neither Coſt nor Pains, to procure the moſt correct Maps and Journals thereof, that are extant in Print, or in Manuſcript. This Map containing nine Sheets of Imperial Paper, and now fit for engraving, begins at Cape *Henry* in *Virginia*, 37 deg. N. Lat. and contains all the Coaſts of *Carolina*, or *Florida*, with the *Bahama* Iſlands, great Part of the Bay of *Mexico*, and the Iſland of *Cuba*, to the Southward, and ſeveral Degrees to the Weſtward of of the *Meſſiaſippi* River, with all the *Indian* Nations and Villages, and their Numbers, which of them are ſubject to *Carolina*, and trade with their People, what Places are convenient Factories and Forts, to increaſe and ſecure our Trade on the *Meſſiaſippi*, and what Forts and Factories the *French* and *Spaniards* have gain'd in thoſe Latitudes, eſpecially on the great River and the Neighbouring Streams; all which they illegally poſſeſs, ſince the very Mouth of the River *Meſſiaſippi* is in the King of *England*'s Grant to the Lords Proprietors of *Carolina*, it falling ſomething to the North-

Northward of 29 Degr. *North* Lat. whose Claim and Right I question not, but a Peace will adjust, and restore, which every *Englishman* is bound in Duty and Interest, to wish for; if we consider how advantageously they have seated themselves, whereby to disturb the Peace and Interest of all the *English* Plantations on the Continent of *America*.

FINIS.

Lately publiſh'd, in the Collections for *December*, *January*, *February*, and *March*,

THE *Diſcovery and Conqueſt of the* Molucco *and* Philippine *Iſlands*; *containing their Hiſtory, Ancient and Modern, Natural and Political: Their Deſcription, Product, Religion, Government, Laws, Languages, Cuſtoms, Manners, Habits, Shape, and Inclinations of the Natives. With an Account of many other adjacent Iſlands, and ſeveral remarkable Voyages through the Streights of* Magellan, *and in other Parts. Written in* Spaniſh *by* Bartholomew Leonardo Argenſola, *Chaplain to the Empreſs, and Rector of* Villahermoſa. *Now tranſlated into* Engliſh; *and illuſtrated with a Map and ſeveral Cuts.*

-15279-
Feb-1929

D16
L42
LP

Indian Institute Library 22